Dative with Adjectives;
Dative with Special Verbs;
Dative with Compounds

The dative case is in general employed to indicate a person or thing that some act or circumstance applies to or refers to "indirectly," as opposed to the accusative, which indicates the more immediate recipient or object of an action. The indirect object, e.g., is the person/thing toward which a direct object is "referred" by the subject + verb: "I am giving the book [direct object] to you [indirect object]" = "I am giving the book, not just to anyone anywhere, but in your direction, i.e., to you." Even in the passive periphrastic construction, the dative of agent indicates the person for whom a certain action is obligatory. A number of other dative case usages are distinguished by grammarians, but most are simply variants on this basic notion of reference or direction.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

The dative with adjectives construction is one example which you have already encountered in your readings, though it has not yet been formally introduced. Simply stated, a noun in the dative case is employed with many Latin adjectives—particularly those indicating attitude, quality, or relation—to indicate the direction (literally or metaphorically) in which the ad-
jective applies; such adjectives are normally followed by "to," "toward," or "for" in English (e.g., "friendly to/toward," "hostile to/toward," "suitable to/for," "useful to," "similar to," "equal to," etc.).

Mors est similis somnō, death is similar to sleep.
Sceībam tē mihi fidēlem esse, I knew that you were loyal to me.
Nōbīs est vir amīcus, he is a man friendly toward us.
Quisque sībi carūs est, each one is dear to himself.
Ille vidētur pār esse déō, that man seems to be equal to a god.

DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS

Conceptually similar is the dative with special verbs construction. Many of these verbs (the most important of which are listed below) are actually intransitive and, like the adjectives that take the dative, indicate attitude or relationship, e.g., nocēre, to be injurious to, parcō, to be lenient toward, etc. Although these verbs are often translated into English as though they were transitive and the dative nouns they govern as though they were direct objects (e.g., tībi parcit, he spares you; lit., he is lenient toward you), the datives again indicate the person (or thing) toward whom the attitude or quality applies.

Although a common rule for the dative with special verbs lists those meaning to favor, help, harm, please, displease, trust, distrust, believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, the list is cumbersome and involves some important exceptions (including iuvō, to help, and iubeō, to command, order, which take accusative objects). The best procedure at this point in your study of the language is simply to understand the concept and then to learn some of the commonest Latin verbs that take this construction.

In memorizing the following list, note carefully that the more literal translation, given first for each verb, includes English to and thus reminds you of the required dative; note as well that each verb conveys some notion of attitude toward a person or thing, again suggesting a dative, as discussed above.

crēdō + dat., entrust to; trust, believe (crēdō tībi, I believe you)
ignōscō + dat., grant pardon to; pardon, forgive (ignōscō virīs, I forgive the men)
imperō + dat., give orders to; command (imperō militibus, I command the soldiers)
noceō + dat., do harm to; harm (nocēō hostibus, I harm the enemy)
Dative with Adjectives; Dative with Special Verbs; Dative with Compounds

nubō + dat., be married to; marry (nubō illī virō, I am marrying that man)
parcō + dat., be lenient to; spare (parcō vōbis, I spare you)
pāreō + dat., be obedient to; obey (pāreō duēt, I obey the leader)
persuādeo + dat., make sweet to; persuade (persuādeo mihi, I persuade myself)
placeō + dat., be pleasing to; please (placeō patri, I please my father)
serviō + dat., be a slave to; serve (serviō patriae, I serve my country)
studeō + dat., direct one's zeal to; study (studeō litteris, I study literature)
Crede amīcis, believe (trust) your friends.
Ignōsce mihi, pardon me (forgive me).
Magistra discipulīs parcit, the teacher spares (is lenient toward) her pupils.
Hoc eis nōn placet, this does not please them.
Nōn possimn eI persuādere, I cannot persuade him.
Variae rēs hominibus nocent, various things harm men.
Cicero philosophiāe studēbat, Cicero used to study philosophy.
Philosophiāe servīre est libertās, to serve philosophy is liberty.

Some of these verbs, it should be noted, can also take a direct object (e.g., creō takes a dative for a person believed, mātrī crēdit, he believes his mother, but an accusative for a thing, id crēdit, he believes it); and some, like imperō and persuādeo, take a noun clause as an object, as we shall see in the next chapter.

**DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS**

A very similar dative usage occurs with certain verbs compounded with ad, ante, con- (=cum), in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, and sometimes circum and re- (in the sense of against). The dative is especially common when the meaning of a compound verb is significantly different from its simple form, whether transitive or intransitive; conversely, if the meaning of the compound is not essentially different from that of the simple verb, then the dative is ordinarily not employed:

Sequor eum, I follow him.
Obsequor ei, I obey him.
Sum amīcus eius, I am his friend.
Adsum amīdō, I support my friend (lit., I am next to my friend, i.e., at his side).
Vēnit ad nōs, he came to us.
Advēnit ad nōs, he came to us.
Often the dative appears to function essentially as a kind of object of the prepositional prefix, though the preposition would take another case if separate from the verb; thus adsum amicō above and the following examples:

Aliis præstant, they surpass the others (lit., they stand before the others).
Præserat exercitiū, he was in charge of the army (lit., he was in front of! before the army).

If the simple verb is transitive, then the compound may take an accusative as object of the root verb as well as a dative:

Praeponū eum exercitū, I put him in charge of the army (lit., I put him
[pósui eum] in front of the army [praec- + exercitū]).
Praeponū pecūniam amicitiae, I preferred money to friendship (lit., I put
money [posui pecūniam] before friendship [praec- + amicitiae]).

Since there is such variability in the rules for dative with special verbs and with compounds, the best procedure is to understand the concepts involved and then, when encountering a dative in a sentence, to be aware of these possible functions; just as with the other cases, you should be maintaining a list of the dative uses you have learned (there have been five thus far) in your notebook or computer file, including definitions and representative examples.

VOCABULARY

aēstās, aēstātis, f., summer (estival, estivate, estivation; cp. aestus, -ās,
heat, aēsturēre, to be hot, seethe, boil)
ianua, -ae, f., door (janitor, Janus, January)
pēctus, pectoris, n., breast, heart (pectoral, expectorate, parapet)
praeūnium, -ī, n. reward, prize (premium)
irātus, -a, -um, angry (irate; cp. ira, irāscor, to be angry)
antepōnō, -pōnerē, -pēsū, -pēsitum, to put before, prefer
fōveō, fovere, fōvī, fōtūm, to comfort, nurture, cherish (foment)
ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtum + dat., to grant pardon to, forgive
imperō (1) + dat., to give orders to, command (imperative, emperor; cp.
imperātor, imperium)
miro, mirāri, mirātus sum, to marvel at, admire, wonder (admire, marvel,
miracle, mirage, mirror; cp. mirabilis, Ch. 38, mīrācūnum, a marvel)
nōcēō, nōcere, nōcūi, nōcitum + dat., to do harm to, harm, injure (innocent, innocuous, noxious, nuisance, obnoxious; cp. innocēns, blameless)
ūbo, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum, to cover, veil; + dat. (of a bride) to be married to, marry (nubile, connubial, nuptials; cp. nūptiae, marriage)
pārcō, pācerē, pēpērcē, parsūrum + dat., to be lenient to, spare (parsimonious, parsimony)
pāreō, pārère, pārū + dat., to be obedient tu, obey (apparent, appear)
persuādeo, -sūdere, -sūāri, -sūāsum + dat., to succeed in urging, persuade, convince (assuage, dissuade, suasion, suave; cp. suāvis)
plācēo, placēre, plācū, plācitum + dat., to be pleasing to, please (complacent, placable, implacable, placate, placid, plea, plead, pleasure, displease; cp. placīdus, kindly, agreeable, calm)
sāpiō, sāperē, sapīō, to have good taste; have good sense, be wise (sapient, sapid, insipid, sage, savor; cp. sapiens, sapiency)
servīō, servīre, servīvi, servītum + dat., to be a slave to, serve (service, disservice, subservi, subservient, servile, servility, deserve, desert = reward, dessert; cp. servus, servitus; distinguish from servāre)
stūdeō, stūdēre, stūdiō + dat., to direct one's zeal to, be eager for, study (student; cp. studium, studiōsus, eager, diligent, scholarly)
subrīdeō, -ridēre, -rīsi, -rīsum, to smile (down) upon (cp. rīdeō, rīduculus)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Minerva, filia lovis, nāta est plēna scientiae et ingenii.
2. Custōdiæ sī cum duce nostrō līberō loquantur et huic tyrannum trāderea cōmentur, sine periculō ex moenis urbis ēgredi possint.
3. Pārēre lēgibus aequos melius est quam tyrannō servire.
4. Cum optimē honōribus ēsset et sibi cīvitātem semper antepōneret, etiam plēbēs eī crēdēbat et nōn invidēbat.
5. Dīu passa, māter vestra féliciter, sedēns apud amīcós, mortua est.
6. Philosophi cōnsilium spectāvérunt et recūsāvérunt tālem rem suscipere mōlīrve.
7. Cum dives sīs atque divitiae crēscant, tamen opibus tuīs parēre vīs et nēminē assem offereās.
8. Ab illā īnsulā repente prōfectus, ēadem noctē ad patriam nāve advēnit; tum, quaerēns remissiōnem animae, dīā rūsticābarūt.
9. Hic mīles, cum imperatōrī vestrō nōn placēret, heu, illa praemīa prōmissā ēmissīt.
10. Nisi mōrēs parēs scientiae sunt—id nōbis fatendum est—scientia nōbis magnopere nocēre potest.
12. Māter candida nātae ċārissimae subrīdet, quam maximē foveat, et eī plūrīma oscula suāvia dat.
13. Why does he now wish to hurt his two friends?
14. If he does not spare the plebeians, alas, we shall never trust him.
15. Since you are studying Roman literature, you are serving a very difficult but a very great master.
16. If they were truly willing to please us, they would not be using their wealth thus against the state.
SENTENTIAE ANTIQUAE

1. Nemo liber est qui corpori servit. (Seneca.)
2. Imperium habere vis magnum? Impera tibi! (Publilius Syrus.)
3. Boans nocet quisquis pepercit malis. (*Id.)
4. Cum tu omnia pecunia postponas, miraris si nemo tibi amorem praestat? (Horace.—post-pōnō.)
5. Frustra aut pecunia aut imperii aut opibus aut gloriae studias; potius studeant virtūtēs et honōri et scientiās ut alciār artīs. (Cicero.—frustrē, adv., in vain.—potius, adv., rather.)
6. Virtūtēs melius quam Fortūnae crēdamus; virtūs nōn nōvit calamitātēs cedere. (Publilius Syrus.—calamītās, -tātis.)
7. Et Deus ait: “Faciāmus hominem ad imaginem nostram et præsit piscibus maris bēstīisque terrae.” (Genesis.—imāgō, -ginis, f.—præ-sum.—piscis, piscīs, m., fish.—bēstia, -ae, beast.)
8. Omnēs arbitratī sunt tē dēbere mihi parcerē. (Cicero.)
9. Quid facere vellet, ostendit, et illī servō spē libertātīs magnūisque praemīs persuāsit. (Caesar.)
10. Sī cui libri Ciceronis placent, ille sciat sē proficisse. (Quintilian.—proficīō = prō + faciō, to progress, benefit.)
11. In urbe nostrā mihi contingit docērī quantum irātus Achillēs Graecīs nōcuit. (Horace.—contingō, -ere, -tigō, -tāctum, to touch closely, fall to the lot of.)
12. Alcui rogantī melius quam iubent pārēmus. (Publilius Syrus.)
13. Vivite fortiter fortiaque pectora tēbus adversīs oppōnite. (Horace.—oppōnō = ob + pōnō, to set against.)
14. Nōn ignāra mali, miseriā succurrere discō. (*Virgil.—ignārus, -a, -um, ignorant; ignāra is fem. because it agrees with Dido, exiled queen, who speaks these words to shipwrecked Aeneas.—succurrō = sub + currō, to help.)
15. Ignōsce saepe alterī, numquam tībi. (Publilius Syrus.)
16. Quandō tē, deum meum, quaerō, vitam beatam quaerō; quaeram tē ut vivat anima mea. (St. Augustine.)

OVID ASKS THE GODS TO INSPIRE HIS WORK

In nova fert animus mutātās dicere formās
corpora: di, coeptis—nam vōs mutāstis et illās—
adspiritāte meis primāque ab ortūine mundī
ad mea perpetuum dēducēte tempora carmen!

(*Ovid, Metamorphōsēs 1.1-4; meter: dactylic hexameter. Ovid’s Metamorphōsēs was an epic that recounted hundreds of stories of miraculous transformations, from the creation of the universe right down into his own times; the chal-
Dative with Adjectives; Dative with Special Verbs; Dative with Compounds

lengte in translating this brief excerpt, as with much of Latin verse, is to connect the adjectives with the nouns they modify, so watch the endings!—noua, with corpora.—fert, compels (me).—coepstis . . . mels, dat. with the compound ad­spirate, my beginnings, i.e., the inception of my work.—muitastis = muitivistis; such contractions, with v and the following vowel dropped, are common in certain perfect tense forms.—et = etiam.—illis, sc. formas.—adspire, to breathe upon, inspire.—origo, ginos, f.—Note the interlocked word order of mea . . . tempora and perpetuum . . . carmen.—de + ducæ.)

SORRY, NOBODY’S HOME!

Nāsīca ad poētam Ennimum vēnit. Cum ad iānum Enniun quaesivisset et serva respondisset eum in casā nōn esse, sēnsit illam domini iussī id dixisse et Ennium vērō esse in casā. Post paucōs diēs, cum Ennius ad Nāsi­cam venisset et eum ad iānum quaereret, Nāsīca ipse exclāμavit sē in casā nōn esse. Tum Ennius “Quid?” inquit, “Ego nōn cognōscō vōcem tuam?” Hic Nāsīca merō cum sale respondit: “Vae, homō es impudēns! Ego, cum tē quaererem, servae tuae crēdidī tē nōn in casā esse; nōnne tū mihi ipsī nunc crēdis?” (Cicero, Dē Œratōre 2.276.—Publius Cornelius Scipio Nasica was a celebrated jurist.—Quintus Ennius, a famous early Roman poet.—iussī, at the command of.—exclāμa, to shout out.—impudēns, gen. impudentis.)

“I DO.” “I DON’T!”

Nūhere vis Prīscō. Nōn mīror, Paula; sapīstī.
Dūcere tē nōn vult Prīscus: et ille sapit!

(*Martial 9.10; meter: elegiac couplet.—Priscus was an eligible bachelor, and probably a rich one; Paula was apparently not his type!—sapīstī = sapivisti; see on mūtastis above.—ducere, i.e., in mātrimōnium.—et here, as often, = etiam.)

MARONILLA HAS A COUGH

Petit Gemellus nuptiās Marōnillae
et cupit et insistet et precātur et dōnāt.
Adeōne pulchra est? Immō, foedius nil est.
Quid ergō in illā petītur et placet? Tussit!

(*Martial 1.10, meter: choliambic. Gemellus is a legacy-hunter, and Maronilla a rich old hag whose estate he hopes to inherit.—nuptiās, -ārum, f. pl., mar­riage.—insistare, to press, insist.—precōr, precāri, precātus sum, to beg, entreat.—dōnāt = dat.—adeō = tamen.—immo, adv., on the contrary.—foedius = turpius.—nil = nihil.—ergō = igitur.—tussire, to cough.)
**SUMMER VACATION**

Luci magister, parce simplici turbae:

aestāte puérī sunt valent, satis discunt.


**ETYMOLOGY**

*In the readings*


**LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ŬTILIS!**

Salvēte, discipuli discipulaeque! Or perhaps now that you have learned the meaning of studēre you should be termed studentēs, since it is clearly your zeal for learning that has brought you this far in your study of Latin! So, studentēs, here is your praemium, more delectables for your cena Latina, once more ex nova grammaticā (*grammar*) atque vocabulariō: if you remember that verbs signifying “favor . . . etc.” govern the dative, you can understand this first, fortuitously alliterative motto, fortūna favet fortibus; favēte linguis, lit. be favorable with your tongues, was an expression used in Roman religious rituals meaning “to avoid any ill-omened words, keep silent”; imperā obviously gives us “imperative,” but also the expression divide (from dividere, to separate, divide) et imperā; a placēt is an affirmative vote, a placētum a judicial decision, and a “placebo” is an unmedicated preparation meant to humor a patient (what, literally, does the “medicine” promise to do?); secret meetings are held iānus clausti (from claudō, claudere, clausi, clausum, to close, as in “recluse,” “closet,” etc.), but iānus mentis are the ones studying Latin will help you to open (aperiō, aperīre, aperūf, aperūt; aperūtum is to open, as in “aperture”). Studēte Latīnae, aperīte mentēs, et semper va-lēte, studentēs!
36

**Jussive Noun Clauses; Fīō**

**JUSSIVE NOUN CLAUSES**

The “jussive noun clause” may be regarded as a kind of indirect command. As in the case of indirect statements (Ch. 25) and indirect questions (Ch. 30), the actual command (or request, or entreaty, etc.) is not quoted verbatim, via an imperative or a jussive subjunctive (Ch. 28) in a main clause, but is reported indirectly in a subordinate clause, i.e., not “he ordered them, ‘Do this!’” but “he ordered them to do this.” In Latin such clauses are usually introduced by either ut or nē and employ a subjunctive verb (usually present or imperfect tense), whereas in English, and therefore in translation, we ordinarily employ a present infinitive with no introductory word and no auxiliary such as may or might:

2. Hoc faciant, *let them do this* (jussive subj.). Direct command.
3. Imperat vōbis ut hoc faciatis, *he commands you to do this.*
4. Imperāvit eīs ut hoc facerent, *he commanded them to do this.*
5. Persuādet eīs ut hoc faciant, *he persuades them to do this.*
6. Petīvit ab eīs nē hoc facerent, *he begged (from) them not to do this.*
7. Monuit eōs nē hoc facerent, *he warned them not to do this.*
8. Hortātus est eōs ut hoc facerent, *he urged them to do this.*

These clauses are often confused with purpose clauses because in appearance they are identical, but a study of the examples given above reveals their essentially jussive nature. In contrast to purpose clauses, which function adverbially (answering the question “why?”), the jussive clauses under discussion function as noun objects of the main verbs which introduce them (answering the question “what . . . was ordered, requested, advised, etc.?”). The
following list includes some of the more common verbs that can introduce jussive noun clauses and also indicates the case (dative, accusative, etc.) employed for the person being ordered or requested to act:

- hortor eum ut, I urge him to . . .
- impero eum ut, I order him to . . .
- monco eum ut, I advise him to . . .
- oro eum ut, I beg him to . . .
- persuadeo eum ut, I persuade him to . . . (or I persuade him that . . .)
- peto ab eo ut, I beg (from) him to . . .
- quaero ab eo ut, I request (from) him to . . .
- rogō eum ut, I ask him to . . .

Volo, nolo, and malō (Ch. 32) sometimes introduce such clauses (e.g., malō ut, I prefer that . . .), although they also commonly are followed by infinitives; iubeō nearly always takes the infinitive construction.

**IRREGULAR Fiō, fierī, factus sum, to occur, happen; be done, be made**

The common irregular verb fiō, fierī, meaning to occur, happen, was used by the Romans in place of the passive of the present system of faciō and so, although active in form, also has the passive meanings to be done, be made. Conversely, its own perfect system was supplied by the perfect passive system of faciō.

In effect, then, we have a composite verb with the principal parts fiō, fierī, factus sum and with the range of related meanings occur, happen, become, be made, be done. In translating, when you see the active present system forms of fiō remember the passive force options be done, be made, and when you see the passive perfect system forms factus est, factus erat, factus sit, etc., remember the options has become, had occurred, etc.

The only new forms to be learned are those listed below; note that: the stem vowel -i- is long in all places except fit, fierī, and the imperfect subjunctive; otherwise, the forms of the present, future, and imperfect indicative and the present subjunctive follow the pattern of audiō; the imperfect subjunctive follows a predictable pattern, given the infinitive fierī.

---

1 This is true of the basic verb faciō (e.g., fit was used instead of factur for it is done, is made); the practice with compounds varied, e.g., perficitur, is completed, but calefit instead of calefactur for is heated.
### Jussive Noun Clauses; Fio 255

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Impf.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. fiō</td>
<td>fiēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. fit</td>
<td>fiēbās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. fit</td>
<td>fiēbat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. fiōnus</td>
<td>fiēbāmūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. fitis</td>
<td>fiēbātīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. fitint</td>
<td>fiēbant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Imperatives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fierē</td>
<td>Sg. fi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Study carefully the following examples:

**Hoc facit** (faciet), *he is doing or making this (will do or make).*

**Hoc fit** (fiet), *this is done or made (will be done or made).*

**Hoc faciat**, *let him do or make this.*

**Hoc fiat**, *let this be done or made.*

**Dicunt eum hoc facere**, *they say that he is doing this.*

**Dicunt hoc fieri**, *they say that this is being done.*

**Periculum fit gravius**, *the danger is becoming graver.*

**Mox factī sunt fēlices**, *they soon became happy.*

### VOCABULARY

- **cupīdō, cupīdinis, f., desire, passion** (cupidity, Cupid; cp. cupīō, cupīditās, cupīdus, Ch. 39)
- **lēctor, lēctōris, m., and lēctrix, lēctricis, f., reader** (lector; cp. legō, lection, lectionary, lecture)
- **vinculum, -i, n., bond, chain, fetter** (vinculum; cp. vincō, to bind)
- **cūtidiē, adv., daily, every day** (quot + diēs; cotidian)
- **fortāsse, adv., perhaps** (cp. fortūna)
- **accēdē, -cēdere, -cēssū, -cēssum, to come (to), approach** (accede, access, accessible, accession, accessory; cp. cēdō, discēdō)
- **cārpō, cārperē, cārpsī, cārptum, to harvest, pluck, seize** (carp at, excerpt, carpet, scarce; carpe diēm: see Latina Est Gaudium, Ch. 22)
- **cōgū, cōgere, cōgēl, cōgēctum (cum + agō), to drive or bring together, force, compel** (cogent, coaction, coactive, coagulate; cp. cōgitō)
- **contēnnō, -tēnnere, -tēmpsī, -tēptum, to despise, scorn** (contemn, contempt, contemptible, contemptuous)
- **contundō, -tundere, -tudī, -tūsum, to beat, crush, bruise, destroy** (contuse, confusion; obtuse, from obtundō, to beat, make blunt)
cūrō (1), to care for, attend to; heal, cure; take care (cure, curator, procurer, proctor, accurate; cp. cūra)
decernō, -cērnerē, -cēvī, -cētum, to decide, settle, decree (decretal, decretory)
exīgū, -igere, -ēgū, -ēctum (ex + ēgō), to drive out, force out, exact; drive through, complete, perfect (exactitude, exigent, exigency, exigible)
fīō, fierī, fāctus sum, to occur, happen; become; be made, be done (fiāt)
oblectō (1), to please, amuse, delight; pass time pleasantly (cp. dēlectō, dēlectātiō)
ōrō (1), to speak, plead; beg, beseech, entreat, pray (orator, oration, oracle, orison, adore, inexorable, peroration; cp. ērōtor, ērūtiō, Ch. 38)
recreō (1), to restore, revive; refresh, cheer (recreate, recreation)
requīrō, -quīrere, -quīvī, -quīvītum, to seek, ask for; miss, need, require (requirement, requisite, requisition, prerequisite, request)
sērenō (1), to make clear, brighten; cheer up, soothe (serene, serenity, serenade)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Poterāsne etiam centum virīs persuādēre ut viam virtūtis sine praemiis sequerentur?
2. Haec fēmina vult ex urbe ēgreātī et ad illam īnsulam proficīscī ut sine morā īlli agricolaē nābat et semper rūsticātūr.
3. Petēbant ā nōbīs ut etiam in adversīs ēbus huic ducī pārērēmus et servīrēmus.
4. Haec ab fēminīs facta sunt nē tantam occāsīōnem āmitterent.
5. Rogāmus tē ut honōre et opibus sapientius ūtāris et hōs quīnque amīcōs semper loveās.
7. Rogāvit nōs ēus ērbam dīvitibus neque pauperibus placēre cōnātī esse mūnus.
8. Arbitrābātur tālem virām nōn ex dīvitibus sed ex Animō plēnō virtūtis nāscī.
10. Senātūs ducī imperāvit nē hostibus vīctūs nocērerē sed eīs parceret et remissionem poenae daret.
11. Iīlī orātor vulgum ērātissimum vōce potenti serēnāvit atque, ut omnībus subrēsit, ēōs objecēavit.
12. Ut parva pulēra per iānuam currēbat, subītō occidit et genua māle contudīt.
13. Dummodo sis aequus hīs virīs, sīent tībi fidēlēs.
14. That summer they urged that this be done better.
15. Provided that this is done, they will beg us to spare him.
16. That teacher wants to persuade her twenty pupils to study more good literature.
17. Since his hope is becoming very small, let him confess that he commanded (use imperō) those two men not to do it.

**SENTENTIAE ANTIQUAE**

1. Dīxitque Deus: "Fiat lūx." Et facta est lūx. (*Genesis.)
2. Fatendum est nihil dē nihilō posse fierī. (Lucretius.—nihilō, abl. of nihilum, -ī = nihil.)
3. Magnae rēs nōn sunt sine periculō. (Terence.)
4. Hīs rébus cognitis, ille suōs horātūs est nē timērent. (Caesar.)
5. Omnia fient quae fierī aequum est. (Terence.)
7. Dum loquimur, ògerit invida sætās: carpe diem! (*Horace.—invīdus, -ā, -ām, envious.)
8. Carpānus dulcis; post enim mortem cinis et fābula fēs. (Persius.—cīnis, -neris, m., ashes.)
9. Ante senectūtem cūrāvī ut bene vīverem; in senectūte cūrō ut bene moriar. (Seneca.)
10. Solōn dīxit sē senem fierī cotidē aliquid addīscerem. (Cicero.—Solōn, -ōnis.—ad-discō, -ere.)
11. Caret pectus tuum inānī ambitiōne? Caret ūnā et timōre mortis? Ignōscēs amīcis? Fīs lēnior et melior, accēdente senectūte? (Horace.—inānis, -e, empty, vain.—ambitiiō, -ōnis.—lēnis, -e, gentle, kind.)
12. Hoc dūrum est; sed levius fit patientiā quidquid corrigere est nefās. (Horace.—patientiā, -ae.—corrīgō, -ere.—est nefās, it is wrong, contrary to divine law.)
13. Sapiāmus et cēdāmus! Leve fīt onus quod bene fertūr. (Ovid.—onus, oneris, n., burden.)
14. Ego vōs horōrī ut amicitiam omnibus rébus hūmānīs antepōnātis—vaec illīs qui nūllōs amīcis habēnt! (Cicero.)
15. Petō a vōbīs ut pātiāmini mē dē studiis hūmānitātis ac litterārum loquī. (Cicero.—hūmānitās, -tātis, culture.)

**THE QUALITY OF MARTIAL'S BOOK**

Sunt bona, sunt quaedam mediocria, sunt mala plurā
quae legis hīc; aliter nōn fit, Avitus, liber.

(*Martial 1.16; meter, elegiac couplet.—aliter, adv., otherwise.—Avitus, -i, a friend of the poet.*)
I DON'T COOK FOR COOKS!

Lector et auditor nostrōs probat, Aule, libellōs,
sed quīdam exāctōs esse poēta negat.
Non nīmium cirō, nam cēnē fercula nostrae
mālim convīvīs quam placuisse cocīs!

(*Martial 9.81; meter: elegiac couplet.—quīdam, with poēta.—sc. eōs, = libellōs, as subject of the infin. in the indir. statement.—ferculum, -i, course [of a meal].—mālim, potential subj., I would prefer that.—The prose order would be: mālim fercula cēnæ nostrae placuisse convīvīs quam cocīs.—quam, i.e., unagis quam.—convīva, -ae, m., dinner-guest.—cocus, -i, cook.)

I LOVE HER... I LOVE HER NOT

Ödī et amō! Quārē id faciam fortasse requīris.
Nescio, sed fieri sentió et excrucior.

(*Catullus 85; meter: elegiac couplet.—excruciāre, to crucify, torment.)

OH, I'D LOVE TO READ YOU MY POEMS... NOT!

Ut recitem tibi nostra rogās epigrammata. Nōlō—
nōn audire, Celer, sed recitāre cupis!

(*Martial 1.63; meter: elegiac couplet.—epigramma, -matīs, n.)

WHO IS TRULY FREE?

Quis igitur vērō liber est? Tantum vir sapiēns, qui sibi imperat, quem neque fortūna adversa neque paupertās neque mors neque vincula terrant, qui potest cupidīnius fortiter respondēre honōrēsque contemnere, cuius virtūs cōtidiē crescit, qui in sē ipsō totus est.

(Horace, Sermonēs 2.7.83ff; prose adaptation.)

TESTIMONY AGAINST THE CONSPIRATORS


(Cicero; in this adaptation from his third oration against Catiline, Cicero informs the Roman citizenry of the evidence against Catiline and the actions of the senate. See the earlier readings on Catiline in Chs. 11, 14, 20, and 30.—
In the readings

intrō-dūcō, -ere.—Vortureius was a conspirator in Catiline’s band.—Gallus, -i, a Gaul; Lentulus, the leading conspirator at Rome in Catiline’s absence, had been seeking to stir into rebellion against the Roman state the Gallic Allobroges, who had a delegation at Rome.—secret: a subordinate clause that would ordinarily have an indicative verb often has instead a subjunctive when the clause occurs either within an indirect statement or, as here, within another subjunctive clause; in this latter instance the verb is often termed a “subjunctive by attraction.”—mandātum, -i, order.—quam primum, see Ch. 32.—equitātus, -us, cavalry.)

ETYMOLOGY

8. cinerary, incinerator, incinerate. 11. inane, inanity.—ambition; ambitiō literally meant a going around by a candidate to individual citizens in quest of political support.—lenient, leniency, lenity. 12. correct, incorrigible. 13. onerous. 15. humanity, the humanities; cp. homō, hūmānus. “I Love Her”: excruciate; cp. crux, crucial, from crux, crūces, f., cross. “I’d Love to Read”: epigrammatic. “Testimony”:—mandate, mandatory, command, countermand, demand, remand.—equitation.

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET UTILIS!

Salvete, studentēs! Here are some fīō items: if you’ve found it easier to write a speech than a poem, you’ll believe the old saying nascimur poētae, finus ōrātōrēs; a fiat (not the car) is a magisterial command, let it be done! From Publilius Syrus (the source of many of this book’s sententiae) comes repente dīvēs nēmō factus est bonus (like Juvenal’s nēmō repente fuit turpisimus, Ch. 30); also the legal expression regarding “consenting adults,” volentī nōn fīt iniūria, injury is not done to a willing person, and fiat ut petītur, let it be done as requested, the phrase used for granting a legal petition.

Et cētera ex hoc vocabulāriō: an accessit (lit., hēlshe approached, came close) is a recognition for second place or honorable mention in a competition; vinculum mātrimōnī is the bond of matrimony, and ā vinculō mātrimōnī is legal Lat. for an annulment; dē minimīs nōn cūrāt lex, the law does not concern itself with trivitiies, is another familiar legal maxim; there are numerous mottoes and familiar sayings from ōrāre, including ōrāre et spērāre and ōrā et labōrī; besides carpe diem, there is carpent tua pōma nepōtēs, your descendants will harvest your fruits. Carpāmus omnēs dīēs, lēctorēs et lēctricēs!
Conjugation of Eō; Constructions of Place and Time

**IRREGULAR Eō, īre, īī, ītum, to go**

The irregular fourth conjugation verb *eō, īre, īī, ītum, to go* is fully conjugated below; the verb is as common in Latin as “go” is in English, and so the conjugation should be learned thoroughly.

**INDICATIVE**

| 1. ēō  | ībam | ībō | ī | īeram | īerō |
| 2. īs  | ībās | ībis | īstī | īerās | īerīs |
| 3. īt  | ībat | ībit | īt | īerat | īerīt |
| 1. īmus | ībāmus | ībimūs | īmus | īerāmus | īerīmus |
| 2. ītis | ībātis | ībitis | īstis | īerātis | īerītis |
| 3. īunt | ībat | ībunt | īerunt | īerant | īerint |

**SUBJUNCTIVE**

| 1. ēam | īrem | īerīm | īsemm |
| 2. īās | īrēs | īerīs | īssēs |
| 3. īat | īret | īerīt | īsset |
Conjugation of Eō; Constructions of Place and Time

1. eāmus  Īremus  ierīmus  Issēmus
2. eātis  Īretīs  ierītīs  Issētīs
3. ēant  Īrent  ierīnt  Issēnt

IMPERATIVES

Sg. Īte  Pl. Īte

PARTICIPLES (in common use)

Pres. ēōns (euntis, euntī, etc.)  Fut. ītūrus, -a, -um

INFINITIVES

Pres. īre
Fut. ītūrus ēsse
Perf. īsse

OBSERVATIONS ON Eō

In the present system of Eō there are two major difficulties:

(1) The normal stem, ī-, as derived from the present infinitive, becomes ē- before a, o, and u; e.g., ēō, ēunt, ēam. Give particular attention to the present indicative and the present subjunctive above. A similar change from ī- to ē- is seen in all forms of the present participle, except the nominative singular, and in the gerund (a form whose use is explained in Ch. 39).

(2) The future of this fourth conjugation verb has the tense sign and endings of a first or second conjugation verb.

The perfect system is formed regularly except that īi- before s usually contracts to ī-; e.g., īstī, īsse. Forms with -v-, such as īvī, are rare and do not appear in this book.

Only the active forms are here presented; the rare impersonal passive (e.g., ītur, ībātūr) and the future and perfect passive participles (eundūm, ītūm) do not appear in this book. Transitive compounds such as adeō, to approach, commonly have passive endings (e.g., adeōr, adībātūr, etc.), but those forms likewise are not employed in this book.

PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS

You have already learned how to use the proper prepositions and cases in the regular place constructions, but they are repeated here for review and for contrast with the special rules for the names of cities, towns, and small islands and for domus, humus, and rīs.
I. Regular constructions: prepositions + proper case.

(1) Place where: *in* or *sub* + ablative.

In illā urbe visus est, *he was seen in that city.*
Nihil sub sole est novum, *there is nothing new under the sun.*

(2) Place to which: *in*, *ad*, or *sub* + accusative.

In illam urbem ibit, *he will go into that city.*
Sub hastam hostis occidit, *he fell under the enemy's spear.*

(3) Place from which: *ab*, *de*, or *ex* + ablative.

Ex illā urbe iit, *he went out of that city.*

II. With the actual names of cities, towns, and small islands, as well as the three nouns *domus*, *humus*, and *rus*, no prepositions were employed in Latin, though they usually must be supplied in English translation (cp., however, Eng. "he ran home" for "he ran to his home").

(1) For place *where* with these particular words a special case was used in Latin, the "locative." The locative is identical to the *genitive* for the singular of first and second declension nouns; elsewhere the locative is usually identical to the *ablative*.

Visus est Rōmae, Ephesī, Athēnīs, et Carthāgīne. *He was seen at Rome, Ephesus, Athens, and Carthage.*

(2) Place to which: accusative without a preposition.

Ībit Rōmam, Ephesum, Athēnas, et Carthāginem. *He will go to Rome, Ephesus, Athens, and Carthage.*

(3) Place from which: ablative without a preposition.

Iit Rōmā, Ephesō, Athēnās, et Carthāgīnē. *He went from Rome, Ephesus, Athens, and Carthage.*

*Domus*, as seen in the vocabulary below, is a slightly irregular feminine noun, having some second declension endings and some fourth. In place constructions the commonest forms are as follows:

- domī (locative), *at home*  
  Domī visus est, *he was seen at home.*
- domum (acc.), *home (= to home)*  
  Domum ībit, *he will go home.*
- domō (abl.), *from home*  
  Domō iit, *he went from home.*

The locative of *humus*, a feminine second declension noun, follows the rule: *humī, on the ground.* The locative of *rus* is either *rūfī* or *rūre, in the country.*
TIME CONSTRUCTIONS

(1) You are already familiar with the ablative of time when or within which (Ch. 15); no preposition is used in Latin, but in English translation you must supply in, within, at, on, etc., depending on the particular noun:

Eōdem die iit, he went on the same day.
Pauels hōrās domum ibit, he will go home in a few hours.

(2) Newly introduced here is the accusative of duration of time, which indicates, not the time at or within which an action occurs, but for how long a period of time the action occurs. No preposition is employed in Latin; in English translation, the preposition for is sometimes used, sometimes omitted. The construction also commonly occurs with nātus to indicate a person’s age.

Multōs annōs vīxit, he lived (for) many years.
Pauca hōrās domī manebit, he will stay at home (for) a few hours.
Quīnque et vīginī annōs nātus, imperātor factus est, At the age of 25 (lit., having been born for 25 years), he became commander.

VOCABULARY

Athenae, -arum, f. pl., Athens (cp. athenaeum)
dōmus, -ūs (-ī), f., house, home; dōmī, at home; dōmum, (to) home; dōmō, from home (domain, domicile, domestic, domesticate, dome, major-domo; cp. dominus, domina, Ch. 40)
hūmus, -ī, f., ground, earth; soil (humus, exhume, inhumie, inhumation, posthumous; cp. humiliare, humility, from humilis, -e, on the earth, down-to-earth, humble)
iter, itineris, n., journey; route, road (itinerant, itinerary; cp. eō below)
rūs, rūris, n., the country, countryside (rustic, rusticity; cp. rūsticor, rūsticus, rural)
Syrācūsa, -sae, -arum, f. pl., Syracuse
absēns, gen. absēntis, absent, away (absence, absentee, absenteeism, in absentia; from absēmus, abesse)
grātus, -a, -um, pleasing, agreeable; grateful (grace, gracious, grateful, gratitude, gratify, gratis, gratuitous, gratuity, ingrate, ingrati, agree, congratulate; cp. grātiās agō)
idōnēs, -a, -um, suitable, fit, appropriate
immotus, -a, -um, unmoved; unchanged; unrelenting (immobile; cp. movēō)
fōris, adv., out of doors, outside (foreclose, foreign, forest, forfeit)
eō, ire, ī, itum, to go (ambition, circuit, concomitant, exit, initial, initiate, initiative, obituary, perish, preterit, sedition, transient, transit,
transition, transitive, transitory: many of these derive from the several compounds of *eo*, including the seven listed below:

- *abeo*, -ire, -iī, -itum, to go away, depart, leave
- *adeo*, -ire, -iī, -itum, to go to, approach
- *exeo*, -ire, -iī, -itum, to go out, exit
- *meo*, -ire, -iī, -itum, to go in, enter
- *obeo*, -ire, -iī, -itum, to go up against, meet; die
- *pereo*, -ire, -iī, -itum, to pass away, be destroyed, perish
- *redeo*, -ire, -iī, -itum, to go back, return

*interficio*, -ficere, -fectum, to kill, murder

*licet*, licère, licuit, impersonal, it is permitted, one may; commonly with an infinitive as subject and a dative for the person permitted to act, e.g., *licet tibi abire*, you may leave, lit., it is permitted for you to leave (license, licentious, illicit, leisure, viz. = videlicet, sc. = scilicet)

*peregrinor*, peregrinari, peregrinatus sum, to travel abroad, wander (peregrine, peregrinate, pilgrim, pilgrimage; from per + ager)

*requiesco*, -quiescere, -quievi, -quiefum, to rest (requiescat, requiem)

*sóleo*, solere, sólitus sum, to be accustomed (insolent, obsolete)

**PRACTICE AND REVIEW**

1. Dehinc petet a fratre meā et sorōre ut occāsionem carpeant et in urbe quām celerrime inēant.
3. Nē levēs quidem timōrēs ferre poterātis; rūfī, igitur, nōn in urbe semper vivēbātīs.
4. Haec locūtā, lēctōribus et lēctūribus persuādēbunt nōpēs cupīdinēsque praemiās bonae vitae antepōnant.
5. Multōs annōs eōs civitātī servīre coēgit, sed animōs numquam contudit.
6. At nōs, ipsis multa mala passī, cōnātī sumus eōs inrātīs persuādere ut servōs vinculis liberāret et nē cui nocērent.
7. Si quis vult aliōs invāre, cūret ut ad eōs adeat plēsnum sapientiae.
8. Philosophi cōfidiē requīēbat utrum illī disciplīnā nātūrāe pārērent.
10. Omnēs solent mirārī ea pulcherrima quae Athēnās vident.

Impersonal verbs have only third person (and infinitive) forms because they have as their subject, not a person, but an infinitive phrase or a clause or an indefinite “it” or “one”; e.g., *licet abire* lit. means to leave is permitted, though the idiomatic translation is it is permissible to leave or one may leave.
12. Fēmina candida ante speculum immōta stetit, sed sē spectāre recū-
sāvit et animōs recreāre nōn potuit.
13. Paucās hōras duodecim puēri puellaeque humī sedēbant, ut ma-
gistra, subūdens et eōs serēnāns, plurīmās fābulās nārrābat.
14. Si sāpiēs et tībi imperāre potēris, fīs grātior iūstiorque, parcēs mi-
sērīs ac amīcōs lovēbīs.
15. They commanded that this be done in Rome for three days.
16. Unless he goes to Syracuse within five days, his father's fear will
become greater.
17. He thought that his brother would perhaps not go away from home
that summer.
18. Nobody may speak freely in that country, as we all know.

SENTENTIAE ANTIQUAE

1. Mortālia facta perībunt. (*Horace.)
2. Noctēs atque diēs patet atrī iānua Dītis. (*Virgil.—āter, ātra, ātrum,
dark, gloomy.—Dis, Dītis, Dīs, another name for Pluto, god of the
dead.)
3. Anni eunt mōre modōque fluentis aquae. Numquam hōra quae prae-
terit potest redīre; fītāmur aetiāte. (Ovid.—praeterire, to go by, pass.)
4. Heu, obiē! Quid ego egi! Fīlius nōn reidiē ē cēnā hāc nocte. (Terence.)
5. Frāter meus ōrāt ne abēas domō. (Terence.)
6. Dīcit patrem ab urbe abīsse sed frātrem esse domī. (Terence.)
7. Tertīā hōrā foris ibam Sacrā Viā, ut meus mōs est. (Horace.—Sacrā
Viā, abl. of means or way by which; the Sacred Way was the main
street through the Roman Forum.)

The Roman Forum with remains of the temple of Castor and Pollux in the foreground and beyond it the Sacra Via
Rome, Italy
8. Dēnique Dāmoclēs, cum sīc bēātus esse nōn posset, ōrāvit Dīonīsiōn tyrannum ut abīre ā cēnā līcēret. (Cīcero.)
9. Eō tempore, Syrācūsis captīs, Mārcellus multa Rōmam mīsīt; Syrācūsis autem multa atque pulcherrīma rēliquīt. (Cīcero.)
10. Diēs multōs in ea nāve fui; īta adversā tempestātē āsī sumūs. (Tērēncē.)
11. Īram populi fēre nōn poterō, sī īn exsilium ierīs. (Cīcero.)
12. Caeśare interfectō, Būtūs Rōmā Athenās fūgit. (Cīcero.)
13. Ipse Rōmam rēdīrem, sī satis cōnsiliē dē hāc rē habērem. (Cīcero.)
14. Nēmō est tam senēx ut nōn putet sē ānum annum posse vivēre. (Cīcero.)
15. Dum nōs ēa sinunt, oculōs sātiēmus amōre; nox tībi longa venīt, nec rēditūra diēs. (*Propertius.—sinō, -ere, to allow.—rēditūra, sc. est, fut. act. periphrastic for rēdībit; diēs is sometimes fem.)

**THANKS . . . BUT NO THANKS!**

Candidius nihil est tē, Caeciliāne. Notāvī:
sī quāndō ex nōstrīs distīchā pauca legō,
prōtīnas aut Mārsī rēcitās aut scriptā Catullī.
Hoc nīhi dās, tamquam dēterīōra legās,
5 ut collāta magis placeant mea? Črēdīmus īstūd:
mało tamen rēcitās, Caeciliāne, tua!

(*Martial 2.71; meter: elegiac couplet.—notāre, to note, notice.—with nōstrīs, sc. libellīs.—distīcha (a Gk. acc. ending), couplets, verses.—Domītius Marsus, like Catullus, was a popular Latin poet.—scriptūm, -i, writing, written works.—hoc . . . dās, i.e., as a favor.—tamquam here introduces an imagined comparison, something like a condition, hence the verb is subj.—dēterīōra, sc. scriptūa, worse poetry.—collāta, with mea, compared, in comparison.—mało [pri] rēcitās; the conj. is often omitted in a jussive noun clause.)

**TRIMALCHIO’S EPIPHAPH**


(*Petronius, Satyricon 71–72; the boorish, nouveau-riche host Trimalchio asks his dinner-guests their opinion of his proposed epitaph.—inscripțiō, -onis; the more usual order would be quoque vidē diligenter sī haec inscripțiō. . . . —C. = Galus.—Maecēnātiānus: Trimalchio, an ex-slave, takes this name to associate
himself with the famous Maecenas, a powerful and wealthy associate of Augustus. — *Huic ... absenti*, i.e., in absentia from Rome. — *sevīrātus*, -ās, *the post of sevīr Augustālis*, a member of the six-man commission that supervised the cult of the emperor. — *decūria*, -ae, *club*; these were groups of ten men organized for both business and social purposes. — *pius*, -a, -um, *devoted, dedicated*. — *ex parvo*, i.e., from humble beginnings. — *severtium ... trecentiēs*, 30 million sesterces; a VERY hefty sum! — *nec ... audivit*, i.e., he "never even went to college!" — *et tū, sc. valē*; epitaphs typically represented such "conversations": the deceased wishes the passerby "Farewell," and the passerby, reading the inscription, replies, "And you (likewise farewell)." — *Haec ut = Ut haec.* — *plēre, to weep* — *āberrim*, adv., *profusely*. — *et = etiam*. — *Fortunata* ("Lucky") and Habinnas were Trimalchio's wife and a guest. — *sēmus, -neris*, n., *funeral*. — *lamentātiō, -onis* — *triclinium, -ī, dining room*. — *impleō, -pleō, -plevi, -plevum, to fill*.

**Mārcus Quintō Frātrīs.**


(Cicero, *Epistulae ad Quintum Frātem 1.2.14*; Marcus Cicero wrote this letter to his brother Quintus, who was at the time governor of Asia. — *S. = salūtem dicit*, *says greetings*. — *Licinius*, -ī. — *Aesōpus*, -ī, the leading tragic actor of Rome. — *Patrō*, -trānīs. — *prō, as a*. — *Plato*, an Epicurean from Sardis. — *multum*, adv. — *Ephēsus*, -ī, a city in Asia Minor. — *re-dūcō, -rāscor, -rāscet, rātus sum, to be angry*; cp. *ira* and *rātus* — *recuperātiō, -onis, recovery*. — *fugītivus*, -ī.)

**ETYMOLOGY**

*Videlīcet*, namely, derives from *vidēre licet*, lit., *it is permitted to see*, i.e., *it is plain to see*. In medieval manuscripts this long word was often contracted to *vī-et*, and one abbreviation for *et* resembled a Z; hence the abbreviation *viz*. From another compound of *licet* is the much more common abbreviation *sc. for scélīcet*, namely, *clearly* (from *scīre licet*, *you may understand*), which we use as an instruction to supply some word or idea that has been omitted from a text but is readily understood (see the example above in the notes on "Trimalchio").
7. Another famous street in Rome was *Via Lata*. On the analogy of *Sacra Via* how is *Via Lata* (*latus, -a, -urn, broad*) to be translated? “Thanks”: note, notation, notary.—script; from the fourth principal part of *scribo*.—deteriorate, deterioration.—collate, collation. “Trimalchio”: funereal.—lament, lamentable. “Marcus”: irascible.—“Recover” and “recuperate” are cognates, both derived from *recuperare*, to regain.)

**LATINA EST GAUDIUM—ET UTILIS!**

*Salvete!* These familiar words and phrases from *eo* are certainly *going to* interest you (notice how colloquial Eng. employs “go” as an auxiliary verb to indicate futurity, and cp. Latin’s use of *of* in those rare future passive infinitive forms); *exit* and *exspect omnès* are stage directions; to “perish” is to be “thoroughly gone” (from *per* + *eo*), i.e., to make one’s final “exit” from life’s stage, an exodus often marked by *obiit* on old tombstones or by the abbreviation O.S.P. for *obiit sine próle* (*he/she died without offspring, from prólis, prólis, f., the source of “proletariate”); *pereant qui ante nós nostra dixérunt* is a proverbial curse on folks who had all our best ideas before we had them ourselves (!); *iter* (lit. *a going*) is related to *eo* and also to the adv. *obiter*, which gives us *obiter dictum*, something *said along the way* (or “in passing”), and likewise *obiter scriptum*; Monty Python fans will recall the *Romani*, *ite domum* routine from the “Life of Brian”; and finally *aut bibat aut abeat*, let him either *drink* or go away, is an old Roman toast and the motto of our local tavern!

*Et cetera*: *gratus* is related to *gratía, favor, kindness, gratitude, thanks*, as in *gratias agere*, to give thanks. *Dei gratia*, by the grace of God, and also Eng. “gratis,” something done “for thanks” (*grátis*), i.e., without a fee. R.I.P., also found on tombstones (though not Trimalchio’s!), stands for *requiēscat in pace* (remember the jussive subj.?); *rūs in urbe*, a phrase from Martial, refers to a city park or garden or some other rustic setting or view that reminds one of the countryside. Well, enough for today: *nunc domum eamus!*
Relative Clauses of Characteristic; Dative of Reference; Supines

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

The type of relative clause you have encountered thus far provides some factual description of its antecedent, an actual person or thing, and thus has an indicative verb (Ch. 17); e.g., *hic est discipulus qui Latinam amat*, *this is the student who loves Latin*. The “relative clause of characteristic,” by contrast, describes some general quality of an antecedent that is itself either general, indefinite, interrogative, or negative, and accordingly has its verb in the subjunctive; e.g., *hic est discipulus qui Latinam amat*, *this is a student (or the sort of student) who would love Latin.*

The relative clause of characteristic is easily recognized, since its verb is subjunctive and its antecedent is often obviously general, negative, etc. (typical examples are *sunt qui*, *there are people who*; *quis est qui*, *who is there who*; *nēmō est qui*, *there is no one who*); the auxiliary *would* is sometimes used in translating the subjunctive verb, and sometimes a phrase like *the sort of* or *the kind of* is employed in the main clause to make it clear that the antecedent is indefinite:

*Quis est qui huic crédat, who is there who trusts this man (of such a sort that he would trust this man)*?
*Nēmō erat qui hoc scīret, there was no one who knew this.*
*Sunt qui hoc faciant, there are some who do this (of such a sort as to do this).*
Is nōn est qui hoc faciat, *he is not a person who does (would do) this.*

*Hic est liber quem omnēs legunt,* *this is the kind of book which all read (a book which all would read).*

*Hic est liber quem omnēs legunt,* *this is the book which all are reading (= a fact, hence the indicative).*

Some relative clauses have the force of result (e.g., S.A. 4 below), purpose (see "Give Me a Figgy Sprig!" below), causal, or adversative clauses (i.e., clauses otherwise generally introduced by *ut, cum,* etc.) and so also have their verbs in the subjunctive.

**DATIVE OF REFERENCE OR INTEREST**

The dative case is often used to indicate a person (or a thing) to whom some statement refers, or from whose perspective it is true, or to whom it is of special interest. This "dative of reference or interest" (which should be compared to the dative uses discussed in Ch. 35) can sometimes be translated with "to" or "for," but often some more elaborate phrase is required, depending upon the context, as you will see from the following examples; occasionally the function seems to be simply possessive (as in the second example below), but the intended force is generally more emotional.

Si quis metuēns vivet, *līber mihi nōn erit unquam.*

*If anyone lives in fear, he will not ever be free—as I see it (mihi) or to my way of thinking.*

*Caret tibi pectus inānī ambitióne?*  
*Is your breast free from vain ambition—are you sure (tibi)?*

*Nūlius culpae mihi conscius sum.*  
*In my own heart (mihi), I am conscious of no fault.*

*Claudia est sapiēns multīs,* *to many people Claudia is wise.*

Remember to add the dative of reference or interest to your list of other dative case constructions (indirect object, dative of agent, dative with adjectives, dative with special verbs and compounds).

**SUPINES**

The "supine" is a defective fourth declension verbal noun, formed on the same stem as the perfect passive participle; only two forms were in common use, the accusative and ablative singular. The supines for our model
Relative Clauses of Characteristic; Dative of Reference; Supines

verbs are: acc. laudánum, abl. laudátum; mónitum, mónitü; áctum, áctü; audítum, audítü; cáptum, cáptü.

The ablative is used with the neuter of certain adjectives to indicate in what respect a particular quality is applicable: e.g., mūrābile dictä, amazing to say (lit., amazing in respect to saying); fācile factä, easy to do. The accusative (which must be carefully distinguished from the perfect passive participle) is used with verbs of motion to indicate purpose: e.g., ibant Rōmam rogātum pecūniam, they were going to Rome to ask for money; persuāsum amīcis vēnerunt, they came to persuade their friends (note that the supine can take a direct object, a dative, or any other construction the basic verb can govern).

VOCABULARY

ábor, áboris, f., tree (ábor, Arbor Day, arboraceous, arboreal, arboriculture)
dignitās, dignitātis, f., merit, prestige, dignity (indignity; cp. dignus, deign, dignify, dignitant, indignation)
dōlor, dōloris, m., pain, grief (doleful, dolorous, condole, condolences, indolent, indolence; cp. dolo)
ódium, -ō, n., hatred (ódium, odious, annoy, ennui, noisome; cp. ódi)
ópus, óperis, n., a work, task; deed, accomplishment (ópus, opera, operative, inoperative, operand, operose, co-operate, uncooperative, inure, hors d’œuvre, maneuver, manure)
óratiō, orationis, f., speech (oration; cp. orbō, orbātor)
pēs, pēdis, m., lower leg, foot (pedal, pedate, pedestal, pedestrian, pedicel, pedigree, piedmont, paw, peon, pioneer, biped, quadruped, impede, impediment, expedite, expedition, expeditious; cp. impediō below)
sātor, sātoris, m., sower, planter; begetter, father; founder (cp. sērō, to plant, sow; serial, series, assert, desert, exert, insert)
firmus, -a, -um, firm, strong; reliable (firmament, affirm, affirmation, affirmative, confirm, confirmation, farm, farmer)
infirmus, -a, -um, not strong, weak, feeble (infirm, infirmary, infirmity)
mūrābilis, mūrāble, amazing, wondrous, remarkable (mirabilia, admirable, marvel; cp. mīrōr, miracle, mirador, mirage, mirror)
prīstimus, -a, -um, ancient; former, previous (pristine)
sublimis, sublimē, elevated, lofty; heroic, noble (sublimate, sublime, sublimity; not subliminal)
étsi, conj. with ind. or subj. according to rules for si, even if (et-si), although
érgā, prep. + acc., toward
libēnter, adv., with pleasure, gladly (cp. the impersonal verb libet, it pleases, is pleasing; cognate with love)
PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Rægí persuási ut soróri frátírique tuó grátíria praemia libenter daret.
2. Deinde, ab eá Ínsulá náve profecta, visum amicós Athenás iniit.
3. Eum hortáti sumus ut ad Caesarem sinc timóre accédere cónrétur.
4. Soliti sunt ei crédere qui philosophiae servíret, virtútem sequerétur, et cupidínés superáret.
5. Sapiéns nóis órat né virís sententíarum adversárum noceámus.
6. In illís terrís nón licet litterís bonís vérisque studére, ut sub tyrannó saepe fit; débés, igitur, extré et peregrínári.
7. Cúrámus né civítátem eós tràdámus qui sǽ patriae antepónant.
8. Sunt inírmí qui leviá opera múrentur et semper sibi ignóscent.
9. Iste dux, diú abséns, tam stultís consílís civítáte útcbátur ut milia civían adversa pátì cógéruntur atque multitá boii perítrent.
10. Haec locútus, fassus est illos, qui odium immótem ergá civítátem multitás annós habébant, Rómae interfectós esse.
11. Inítiú operís nóis saepe impidit.
12. Sator sublímis hominum atque animálium omnibus nóbis animás dedit; cum corporá obeánt, animae numquam morténtur.
13. Cum rús rediímus, tum domi invénímus—mirábile visú!—quíntimos amícós.
14. Cicéro, qui was the greatest Roman orátor, was a consúl who would obey the senate.
15. 1 shall persuade him to become better and to return to Rome, I assure you.
16. We begged them not to trust a man whom a tyrant pleased.
17. Wherefore, let that man who hesitates to defend our country depart to another land.

SENTENTIAE ANTiquAE

1. Sée omnés Caesari ad pedés prósécérunt. (Caesar.—pró-iació.)
2. Hic in nostró numeró sunt qui légés contemnant ac dē exitió huius urbís cóffié cógitént. (Cicéro.)
3. Quis est cui haec rēs pūblica atque possessiō libertātis nōn sint cārae et dulcēs? (Id.—possessiō, -ōnis.)

4. Quae domus tam stabilis est, quae cūvītās tam firma est quae nōn odīs, invidiā, atque insidīis possit contundī? (Id.—stabilis, -e.—quae ... contundī; here the characteristic clause has the force of result.)

5. Quārē, quid est quod tibi iam in hāc urbe placēre possit, in quā nēmō est quī tē nōn metuat? (Id.)

6. Quis enim aut eum diligere potest quem metuat aut eum ā quō sē metuī pūret? (Id.)

7. Tībi sōlī necēs multōrum cūvīm ĭmpūnītæ ac īberae fuērunt. (Id.—nex, necis, f., murder:—impūnītus, -a, -um, unpunished.)

8. Habeītis autem eum cōnsulem quī exigere officium et pārēre vestrīs dēcrētīs nōn dubītēt atque vēs dēfendēre possīt. (Id.—dēcrētum, -i, decree.)

9. Ille mihi semper deus eri!. (Virgil.)

10. Nūllus dolor est quem nōn longinquītās temporis mimat ac molliat. (*Cicero.—longinquītās, -ātis, length.)

11. Paravisse dīvitīās fuit multīs homīnibus nōn finis sed mūtātiō malōrum. (Epicurus quoted by Seneca.—mūtātiō, -ōnis, change.)

12. Nīhil est opere et mans factum quod tempus nōn cōnsūmat. (Cicero.)

13. Viribus corporis dèficientibus, vigor tamen animī dūrāvit illī ad vītae finem. (Pliny.—dēficiō, -ere, to fail.—vigor, -ōris.—dūrāre, to last.)

14. Nunc est bibendum; nunc pede līberō pulsanda terrīs. (*Horace; from his ode celebrating the death of the Egyptian queen Cleopatra.—sc. nōbīs as dat. of agent with both pass. periphrastics.—pulsāre, to strike, beat; with pulsanda, sc. est, should be struck, i.e., danced upon.—tellīs, -āris, f., = terra.)

NOTE ON A BOOK BY LUCAN

Sunt quidam qui mē dicant nōn esse poētam; sed quī mē vēndīt bibliōpōla putat.

(*Martial 14.194; meter: elegiac couplet. In this note from a gift copy of Lucan’s poetry, the author is himself imagined as speaking.—bibliōpōla, -ae, m., bookseller, antecedent of qui.)

TWO EXAMPLES OF ROMAN WIT

Oh, Give Me a Figgy Sprig!

Cum quidam, querēns, dīxisset uxōrem suam dē ficū suspendisse sē, amīcus illūs “Amābō tē,” inquit, “dā mihi ex istā arbore surculōs quōs seram!”

(Cicero, Dē Ōrātōre 2.278.—ficus, -ōs, f., fig tree; nouns for trees are usually feminine.—surculus, -i, shoot, sprig.—quōs = ut eōs, rel. clause of purpose.—serū, -ere, to plant, sow.)
The Most Pitiful Speech I've Ever Heard!

Cum quidam orator sē misericordiam oratīōne fortasse mōvisse putāret, rogāvit Catulum vidērērūne misericordiam mōvisse. "Ac magnum quidem, mihi," inquit, "putō enim nēminem esse tūm dūrum cui oratīō tua nōn visā sit digna misericordiā!"

(Cicero, De Orātōrē 2.278.—misericordia, -ae, pity: an important objective for the ancient orator, and one for which he was trained, was to arouse the audience's emotions.—Catulus, -ī.—vidērērūne: the -ne, whether, signals an ind. quest.—magnam, sc. misericordiam mōvisst—cui = ut eī, rel. clause of result.)

TWO LETTERS TO CICERO

Gn. Magnus Prōcōnsul Salutem Dicit Cicero\n
Si valēs, bene est. Tuās litterās libenter lēgit; recognōvī enim tuam prīstīnam virtūtem etiam in salūte commūnī. Čōnsulēs ad eum exercītum vēnērunt quem in Āpūliā hābui. Magnopere tē hortor ut occāsīōnem carpās et tē ad nōs cōnferās, ut commūnī cōnsiliō rē publicae miserē operam et auxilium ferāmus. Moneō ut Rōmā exaēs, viā Appiā īter faciās, et quam celerērēmē Brunidiūm veniās.

Caesar Imperātor Salutem Dicit Cicero

Cum Brunidiūs celerius adeam atque sim in ītinere, exercitiō iam prae­missō, dēbeō tamen ad tē scribere et grātias idōneās tibi agere, etsi hoc fēci saepē et saepeō factūrūs videor; ita dignus es. Imprīmīs, quōnam crēdo mē celeriter ad urbem ventūrūm esse, ā tē petō ut tē ībi videam ut tūō cōnsiliō, dignitāte, ope īttī possim. Festinatōrīm meae brevītātique litterārum ignōscēs; cētera ex Furnius cognōscēs.

(Cicero, Epistulae ad Atticum 8.11 and 9.6; in these letters, two of hundreds that survive from Cicero's correspondence, both Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, "Pompey the Great," and Julius Caesar bid for the statesman's support in the civil war that followed Caesar's crossing of the Rubicon in 49 B.C.—prōcōnsul, -sūlis, proconsul, governor (of a province).—salūte commūnī, here the public wel­fare.—Apūlia was a district in south Italy.—viā Appiā, abl. of route, a common construction; the Via Appia, built in the 4th century B.C., was the highway leading south from Rome and, ultimately, to Brunidiūm, the port of departure for Greece.—prae­mittō, -ere.—imprīmīs, adv., especially.—festinatūrī, -ōnis, haste, rush.—brevītās, -tātis.—Furnius, the name of an associate.)

ASK ME IF I CARE

Nil nimium studeō, Caesar, tibi velle placēre, nec scire utrum sīs albus an āter homō!

(*Catullus 93; meter: elegiac couplet.—nil = nōn.—albus, -a, -um, white.—āter, ātra, ātrūm, black.)
ETYMOLOGY

The use of *opus* in the titles of musical works is well known; e.g., Beethoven’s “Symphony No. 5 in C Minor, Opus 67.” “Opera,” on the other hand, comes to us through Italian from *opera,* -ae, *effort, pains, work,* which clearly has the same root as *opus.* Finally, we have the term *magnum opus,* which is most commonly used in the literary field.

A few Romance derivatives follow:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>French</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dolor</td>
<td>dolore</td>
<td>dolor</td>
<td>douleur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>odium</td>
<td>odio</td>
<td>odio</td>
<td>odieux (odiōsus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pēs, pedis</td>
<td>piede</td>
<td>pie</td>
<td>pied</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*In the readings*


LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÚTILIS!

Salvēte! Have you noticed that we like to *ad lib.* in this section of each chapter? *Ad libitum,* at one’s pleasure, is connected with *libenter,* which is how Latin should be both taught and learned: *gladly!* So, *libenter carpite diem et hās rēs novās:* first, note that *impeditō* is from *in + pēs;* when you’re “impeded,” you’ve got something *on your feet* (like “letters,” from the same base as “foot”), so perhaps you should consult a podiatrist (*pod-* is the Gk. cognate of Lat. *ped-*) and ask him to “expedite” your treatment (*expedire* is essentially “to de-fetter,” the opposite of *impediō*; cp. “implicate” and “explicate” from *implicāre/explicāre*); otherwise, just give up your pedestrian ways and start pedaling. *Odium* means *rivalry* as well as *hatred,* guess who the rivals are in *odium medicum, odium scholasticum,* and *odium theologicum?* And speaking of odious types, the emperor Tiberius (A.D. 14–37) is said to have remarked of his subjects, *oderint dum metuant,* let them hate (me), so long as they fear me! The abbreviation *op. cit.* is from *opere citātō,* in the work cited; and *opera omnia* are an author’s complete works. An old legal prescript provides that *vendēns eandem rem dūbus est falsārius* (fraudulent); such a swindle would be *infra dignitātem,* beneath one’s dignity, so remember the familiar admonition *caveat emptor,* let the buyer beware! *Iterum tempus fligit: valeātis, amīcī et amīcae!*
Gerund and Gerundive

THE GERUNDIVE

You are already familiar with the gerundive, or future passive participle, a verbal adjective formed with the endings -ndus, -nda, -ndum (Ch. 23). Besides functioning occasionally as a simple adjective (liber legendus, a book to be read), the gerundive is commonly employed in the passive periphrastic conjugation (Ch. 24: hic liber legendus est, this book should be read); some further uses are examined in this chapter.

THE GERUND

The “gerund” is a verbal noun formed like the gerundive, except that it has only four forms, the neuter singular of the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative. These forms are identical to the corresponding cases of the gerundive, but are active in meaning and correspond to the English gerund in “-ing” (legendi, of reading, as in magnum amorem legendi habet, he has a great love of reading).

DECLENSION OF THE GERUND

Following are the complete gerund declensions for some representative Latin verbs:

Gen. laudándi dúcéndi sequéndi audiéndi
(of praising, leading, following, hearing)
Since the gerund is a verbal noun, it can be modified as a verb and used as a noun in the various cases. Having no nominative case, however, the gerund was not used as a subject, a function performed instead by the infinitive, another of Latin's verbal nouns (i.e., Latin could say *errare est humānum*, *to err is human*, but not *erring is human*); likewise the accusative was ordinarily employed as an object of *ad* and certain other prepositions, not as a direct object (a function again performed by the infinitive, e.g., *impulsi eōs venire*, he ordered them to come: see Appendix, p. 445). The following sentences illustrate typical uses of the gerund in its four cases:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Gerund</th>
<th>Gerundive</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>laudándō</td>
<td>dúcéndō</td>
<td>sequéndō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(for praising, etc.)</td>
<td>(praising, etc.)</td>
<td>(praising, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>laudándum</td>
<td>dúcéndum</td>
<td>sequéndum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(praising, etc.)</td>
<td>(praising, etc.)</td>
<td>(praising, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>laudándō</td>
<td>dúcéndō</td>
<td>sequéndō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(by praising, etc.)</td>
<td>(by praising, etc.)</td>
<td>(by praising, etc.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DIFFERENCES BETWEEN GERUND AND GERUNDIVE**

Remember these distinctions between gerund and gerundive: 1) the gerundive is a verbal adjective (*liber legendus*, *a book to be read*), the gerund a verbal noun (*amor legendī*, *love of reading*); 2) as an adjective, the gerundive has a full set of masculine, feminine, and neuter endings, both singular and plural, for all cases, whereas the gerund has only neuter singular forms and only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative, i.e., a total of only four forms altogether; 3) the gerundive is passive in meaning, the gerund active.

**GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PHRASES**

As a verbal noun, the gerund may take the case construction required by its verb:

- studium legendī librōs, *fondness of (for) living with friends.*
- Operam dat vivendō bene, *he gives attention to living well.*
- Athenās iit ad vivendum bene, *he went to Athens to live well.*
- Feliciōrēs fīmus vivendo bene, *we become happier by living well.*

In actual practice, however, when the gerund would be followed by a noun in the accusative as a direct object, the Romans preferred to put this noun in the case in which the gerund would otherwise appear and to use the gerundive in agreement with the noun. The translation is the same no matter which construction is used, since English idiom requires the gerund construction rather than the unidiomatic gerundive. In the examples which fol-
low, those marked A are what we should expect on the basis of English idiom; those marked B are the regular gerundive phrases which the Romans actually preferred:

A. studium legendi librorum (acceptable)
B. studium librorum legendorum (preferred)

_\textit{fondness of reading books (not fondness of books to be read, which is unidiomatic)}_

A. Operam dat legendi librorum.
B. Operam dat librorum legendorum.

_\textit{He gives attention to reading books.}_

A. Discimus legendi librorum.
B. Discimus librorum legendorum.

_\textit{We learn by reading books.}_

A. Hoc locutus est de legendi librorum.
B. Hoc locutus est de librorum legendorum.

_\textit{He said this about reading books.}_

Quite common was the use of \textit{ad} + an accusative gerundive (or gerund) phrase and postpositive \textit{caus\ae} + a genitive phrase to indicate \textit{purpose}:

A. Venit ad legendi librorum.
B. Venit ad librorum legendorum.

_\textit{He came to read books.}_

A. Otium petit legendi librorum caussa.
B. Otium petit librorum legendorum caus\ae.

_\textit{He seeks leisure for the sake of reading books.}_

Remember that purpose can be expressed in Latin, not only with gerundive/gerund phrases, but also with \textit{ut/ñ} + the subjunctive and, after a main verb of motion, the accusative supine: \textit{venit ut h\o\s libr\o\s legat} and \textit{venit h\o\s libr\o\s lectum} both mean \textit{he is coming to read these books.}

**VOCABULARY**

\textit{aedificium, -\textit{ii}, n., building, structure (edification, edifice, edify, aedile)}
\textit{iniuria, -\textit{ae}, f., injustice, injury, wrong (injurious; cp. iudex, iudicium, ius, iustus, Ch. 40)}
\textit{mulier, mulieris, f., woman (muliebrity)}
\textit{transitus, -\textit{itis}, m., passing over; transit; transition (cp. transe\o\ below)}
\textit{ventus, -\textit{i}, m., wind (vent, ventilate, ventilation, ventilator)}
\textit{cupidus, -\textit{a}, -\textit{um}, desirous, eager, fond; + gen., desirous of, eager for (cp. cupio, cupidit\textit{as}, cupid\o)}
liberalis, liberale, of. relating to a free person; worthy of a free man, decent, liberal; generous (liberal arts, liberality; cp. liber, liberō)
necessær, indecl. adj. used as nom. or acc., necessary, inevitable (necessitate, necessious, unnecessary; cp. cēdō)
vētus, gen. vēteris, old (veteran, inveterate, veterinary, veterinarian)
quāsi, adv. or conj., as if, as it were (quasi; = quam + sī)
āmbulō (I), to walk (amble, ambulance, ambulate, ambulatory, perambulate, preamble, somnambulist)
expérior, -perīt, -pērītus sum, to try, test; experience (experiment, expert, inexpert, inexperience; cp. periculum)
libō (I), to pour a libation of; on; pour ritually; sip; touch gently (libation)
opōrter, oportère, oportūt, impers., it is proper, right, necessary
oppūgnō (I), to fight against, attack, assault, assail (oppugn; cp. pugnō)
dōnā (I), to equip, furnish, adorn (adornment, ornate, ornament, ornamental, ornamentation, suborn, subornation)
pernōctō (I), to spend or occupy the night (nocturnal, nocturne; cp. nox)
trānsēo, -ēre, -ēt, -ētum, to go across, cross; pass over; ignore (transit, transitory, transitory, transept)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Caesar eōs cōtidiē ārābat nē fāta adversa metuerent.
2. Etsi hoc fiat, ilt mīlitēs urbem oppugnātum fortasse accēdant et multī civēs obeant.
3. Si licēbit, septem dīēbus domum ēbīmus ad nostrōs amīcōs videndōs.
5. Cōnsul, vir maximi dignitātīs, ōtium cōnsūmpsīt in operibus sublimibus scribendīs.
7. In rē publicā gerendā Īstī nōn dubitānt praemia grāta sībī requīrēre, officia suspendēre, atque honōrem suum vēndere.
8. Lēctrix doctissima mōx surget ad triā carmina recitanda, quae omnēs audītīrēs oblectābunt atque animōs serēnābunt.
10. Nisi vincula pātī ac sub pedibus tyrannōrum humī contundī volumus, libertātī semper studeāmus et eam numerum impediāmus.
11. Pauca opera mihi sedendo fīunt, multa agendō et experiendō.
12. Illā mulier mirābilis frūctūs amōris libenter carpit et virō grātissimō nūpsit.
13. They are going to Rome to talk about conquering the Greeks.
14. By remaining at Rome he persuaded them to become braver.
15. Who is there who has hope of doing great works without pain?
16. We urged the consul to serve the state and preserve our dignity by attacking these injustices.

**SENTENTIAE ANTIQUAE**

1. Coniurātiōnem nāscendīm nōn crēdendō corrōborāvērunt. (*Cicero.-coniūrātiō, -onis, conspiracy.—corrōborāre, to strengthen.)
2. Mali dēsīnant īnsidīās reī públicae cōnsilique parēre et ignēs ad īnflammāndam urbem. (Cicero.—dēsimō, -ere, to cease.—īnflammāre, to set on fire.)
3. Multō autem propēr glōriāe cupidītātem sunt cupidī bellōrum gerendōrum. (Cicero.)
4. Veterem iniūriam ferendō īnvītāmus novam. (Publilius Syrus.)
5. Ĉūrēmus nē poena maior sit quam culpa; prohibenda autem maximē est īra in pūniendō. (Cicero.—pōnēre, to punish.)
6. Syrācūsīs captīs, Mārcellus aedificīūs omnibus sēc pepercit—mīrābile dictū—quasi ad ea dēfendenda, nōn oppugnanda vēnisset. (Cicero.)
7. Rēgulus laudandus est in cōnservandō iūre īūrānī. (*Cicero.—Regulus, prisoner of the Carthaginians, swore to them that he would return to Carthage after a mission to Rome.—iūs īūrānum, iūris īūrānī, n., oath.)
8. In òrátiōne meā dīcam dē mōribus fīrmī Sēstī et dē studiō cōnservandae sālūtīs cōmmūnis. (Cicero.—Sēstīus, -i.)
9. Trānsitus ad senectūtem nōs āvocat ē īūbus gerendīs et corpus facit īnfirmīus. (Cicero.)
10. Cum recreandae vōcis ūnūrs causā nescēt esset mihi ambulāre, ĕs litterās dictāvī foris ambulāns. (Cicero.—dictāre, to dictate.)
11. Semper metuendō sapiēns vitat malum. (Publilius Syrus.)
12. Hae virtūs ex prōvidendō est appellāta prūdentā. (Cicero.—prōvidēre.—prūdentā = prō-videntia.)
13. Fāma virēs acquirīt eundō. (Virgil.—acquirō, from ad-quaerō, to acquire.)
14. Hae vicissitūdīnīs fortūnae, etsi nōbīs īncundae in experiēndō nōn fuērunt, in legēndō tamen ērunt īncundae. Recordātiō enim prae­terītī dolōris dēlectātiōnem nōbīs hābēt. (Cicero.—vicissitūdō,-dinīs.—recordātiō, -ōnis, recolection.—praeterītus, -a, -um, past.)
PROMISES, PROMISES!

Nulli sē dicit mulier mea nūbere mālle
quam mihi, nōn sī sē Juppiter ipse petat.

Dicit: sed mulier cupidō quod dicit amantī,
in ventō et rapidā scribere oportet aquā.

(*Catullus 70; meter: elegiac couplet.—Nulli and mihi are both dat. with nūbere, and quam = magis quam; the prose order would be mulier mea dicit sē nulli quam mihi nūbere mālle.—amantī, lower.—Note the separation of adj. from noun in cupidō ... amantī and rapidā ... aquā, a common feature of Latin verse used here to emphasize the nouns that are delayed; the prose order: sed quod mulier amantī cupidī dicit.—rapidus, -ā, -um.)

PAETE, NŌN DOLET

Casta suō gladium cum träderet Arria Paetō,
quem dē vísceribus strīnxerat ipsa suīs,
“Si qua fidēs, vulnus quod ſē nōn dolet,” inquit,
“sed quod ſū faciēs, hoc mihi, Paete, dolet.”

(*Martial 1.13; meter: elegiac couplet.—Caecina Paetus was compelled to commit suicide in 42 A.D., because of the role he had played in a conspiracy against the emperor Claudius; his courageous and devoted wife Arria, choosing to die with him, stabbed herself before passing the sword to her husband and assuring him that the pain of the wound itself would be slight. See below, L.I. 39.—The prose order of the first verse would be: Cum Arria casta Paetō suō gladium tràderet.—castus, -a, -um, loyal, chaste.—gladium, -ī, sword.—vīscera, -ī, -ōrum, n. pl., vital organs, abdomen.—strīnxō, -ere, strīnxī, strīntum, to draw tight, tie; pull, draw out.—si qua [=quae, indef.] fidēs, i.e., if you have any faith in me, if you will trust me.)

HANNIBAL AND THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SECOND PUNIC WAR


Ad Alpēs adīt, quās ſēmō umquam ante cum cum exercitū trānsierat. Populōs cōnantēs prohibēre eum trānsitū necāvit; loca patēfēcit; et cum multīs elephāntīs mīlitibusque in Italianā iniit. In hōc itinere ſōm gravi morbō oculōrum affectus est ut postea ſemquam dēxtrō ōculō bene ſīti
posset. Multōs duces, tamen, exercitūsque Rōmānōs vīcit, et propter illum imperātōrem milītae mīlitum Rōmānōrum periērunt.

(Nepōs, Hannibal, excerpts; see L.A. 8.—Hannibal, general who led the Carthaginians against the Romans in the Second Punic War, 218–02 B.C.—Hamilcar, -caris.—dē + pōnō.—Hispānia, -ae, Spain.—Āfrica, -ae.—Alpēs, Alpium, f. pl., the Alps.—adōcīo, -ere, -feci, -fectum, to affect, afflict, weaken.)
In the readings

1. conjuration; cp. conrüráff. — corroborate, corroborate; cp. röbur, rö-
boris, n., hard wood, oak. 2. inflammation, inflammatory. 5. punitive, impu-
nity; cp. poësa. 10. dictator. 14. In re-cörd-ätiö you see the stem of cor, cor-
dis, heart. This shows that formerly the heart was regarded not only as the
seat of the emotions but also as the mind and the seat of the memory, a
belief reflected in our own phrase “learn by heart.” Cp. record, accord, con-
cord, discord, cordial, cordate, courage. Eng. “heart” is cognate with Lat.
cord-.- “Promises”: rapid, rapids, rapidity; cp. rapiö. “Paete”: chaste, chasen,
chastity, chastise.—gladiator, gladiatorial, gladiola, gladiolus.—viscera, vis-
ceral, eviscerate.—stringency, stringendo, stringent, astringent, strict, con-
strict, restrict. “Hannibal”: deponent, depose, deposit, deposition.—affect,
affect.

LATİNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÜTILIS!

Salvete, discipuli discipulaeque; haec sunt discenda: Cato’s definition of
an orator, as quoted by the 1st cen. A.D. educator Quintilian (Institutiones
Öratöriae 12.1.1), is quite well known, and you can easily translate it now
that you’ve studied gerunds (and with the explanation that peritus, -a, -um
+ gen. = experienced in): örätö est vir bonus dicendi peritus. Here are some
more familiar items with gerunds and gerundives: New Mexico’s state
motto, cröscit eundö (review Ch. 37, if you have trouble with that one!);
docendo discimus; spectemur agendo, let us be judged by what we do (lit., by
our doing); modus vivendi and modus operandi (“m.o.” to you detective show
buffs!); onus probandi, the burden of proof (lit., of proving); then, of course,
there are these many “things to be done”: agenda, addenda, corrigenda, refe-
rendum.

Et duo cetera ex vocábulaří novö: iniüría non excüsát iniüriam, (one) in-
jury does not excuse (another) injury, is an old legal tenet, and expertö crödite
is still good advice. Habete feličem modum vivendi, studentés, et valète!
As we have already seen, a Roman could ask a direct question in a variety of ways, by beginning a sentence with an interrogative pronoun (quid, quid) or such other interrogatives as ubi or cur, or by suffixing -ne to the first word of the sentence (often the verb, or some other word on which the question hinged). But “leading questions” can also be asked in Latin: if the speaker expected “yes” as an answer, the question was introduced with nonne (a construction already encountered, though not formally discussed); if a negative reply was anticipated, num was the introductory word.

Quis venit? *Who is coming?*  
Cur venit? *Why is he coming?*  
Venitne? *Is he coming?*  
Nönne venit? *He is coming, isn’t he? or Isn’t he coming?*  
Num venit? *He isn’t coming, is he?*  
Scripsistine illás litterás? *Did you write that letter?*
Nönne illās litterās scripsistī? You wrote that letter, didn't you? or Didn't you write that letter?
Num illās litterās scripsistī? You didn't write that letter, did you?

FEAR CLAUSES

Verbs denoting fear or apprehension often take subjunctive noun clauses introduced by nē (that) or ut (that...not; occasionally nē nōn was employed instead of ut); the conjunctions are just the opposite of what might be expected, because in origin the clauses they introduced were essentially independent jussive clauses (i.e., timeō nē abeās, I fear that you may go away, = Timeō. Nē abeās, I'm afraid—Don't go away!). Auxiliaries commonly employed in translating include will or may (in primary sequence) and would or might (in secondary sequence), as indicated in the following examples:

Timeō nē id crēdant, I fear that they will (may) believe this.
Vereor ut id crēdant, I am afraid that they will (may) not believe this.
Timuerunt nē amīcōs amitterent, they feared that they might (would) lose their friends.
Metuisī ut mulieres ex casū exiissent, you were afraid that the women had not left the house.

GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

A noun in either the ablative or genitive case plus a modifying adjective may be employed to modify another noun; both the ablative of description and the genitive of description (already encountered in the readings) might describe a noun by indicating its character, quality, or size, although the ablative usage was especially common in describing physical traits. Like adjectives, these descriptive phrases usually follow the nouns they modify.

fēmina magnae sapientiae, a woman of great intellect
pāx in hominibus bonae voluntātis, peace among men of good will
cōnśilium eius modi, a plan of this kind
Dīligō hominem antiquā virtūte, I esteem a man of old-fashioned morality.
mūles firmā manū, the soldier with the strong hand
Es mōribus bonis, you are a person of good character.
VOCABULARY

aēs, nēris, n., bronze (era; cp. aērīrium, -ī, treasury; aēcus, -a, -um, made of bronze)
dōminus, -ī, m., master (of a household), lord, and dōmina, -ae, f., mistress, lady (dominate, dominant, dominion, domain, domino, domine, don, dungeon, belladonna, madonna, dame, damsel, danger; cp. domus)
lācrīma, -ae, f., teardrop (lacrimal, lacrimation)
mēta, -ae, f., turning point, goal; limit, boundary
monumentum, -ī, n., monument (monumental, monumentalize; cp. moneō)
nāsus, -ī, m., nose (nasal, nasalize, nasogastric; cp. nostril, nozzle)
sāxum, -ī, n., rock, stone (saxatile, saxifrage, saxicolous; cp. secā, to cut, saw, saxon)
vūltus, -ūs, m., countenance, face
iūstus, -a, -um, just, right (justice, injustice, unjust, justify, justification, adjust, adjustment, readjust; cp. iūs, iūdex, iūriā)
tot, indecl. adj., so many (cp. quot; totidem, indecl. adj., the same number; totiēns, adv., that number of times, so often)
praēter, prep. + acc., besides, except; beyond, past (preterit, preterition, pretermit, preternatural; cp. prae)
nōnne, interrog. adv. which introduces questions expecting the answer “yes.”
num, interrog. adv.: (1) introduces direct questions which expect the answer “no”; (2) introduces indirect questions and means whether.
omnilō, adv., wholly, entirely, altogether (cp. omnis)
postrēmum, adv., after all, finally; for the last time (cp. post)
quīm, adv., indeed, in fact
explicō (1), unfold; explain; spread out, deploy (explicate, inexplicable; implicate, implication, from implicō, to enfold, interweave)
fatigō (1), to weary, tire out (fatigue, indefatigable)
for, fārī, fātus sum, to speak (prophetically), talk, foretell (affable, ineffable, infant, infantry, preface; cp. fābula, fāma, fātum)
opinor, opinārī, opinātus sum, to suppose (opine, opinion)
repērīō, repērīre, repērērī, repērtum, to find, discover, learn; get (repertoire, repertory; cp. parēns and parīō, to give birth to)
verōr, verōrī, verōtus sum, to show reverence for, respect; be afraid of, fear (revere, reverend, reverent, reverential, irreverent)

PRACTICE AND REVIEW

1. Nonne Rōmulus, sator huius urbis, fuit vir mirābilis virtūtis et fidei pristinae?
2. At postremae vereor, heu, ut a viris parvae sapientiae hoc studium vetus intellegi possit.
3. Non oportet nos transire haec liberalia humanaque studia, nam praemia eorum certe sunt maxima.
4. Dignitas illius orationis fuit omnino idonea occasiioni.
5. Equi eius, cum fatigati essent et ventus esset eis adversus, ad metam tamen quam celerrimae currabant.
6. Vir corpore infirmo id non facere poterat.
7. Etsi tres sit sunt cupidit magnorum operum faciendorum, eis non licet domo abire.
8. Domina firma acerbe querebatur plurimos servosuisse absentem—vae illis miseris!
9. Mira bile rogasti, num istam mulierem amas, mi amice?
10. Nonne timent ne et Romain et ruris magni tumultus sit?
11. Num opinaris tot hominum insto omnino errare?
12. Recognovistitne, ut illa aedificia visum ambulabas, mulierem sub arboire humi requiescentem?
13. I am afraid, in my heart, that few things can be accomplished now even by trying.
14. You do not hesitate to say this, do you?
15. They supposed that, after all, he was a man of very little faith.
16. You do recognize how great the danger is, do you not?

**SENTENTIAE ANTIQUEAE**

1. Quattuor causas reperi o cur senectus misera videatur. Videamus quam insta quaeque aerae sit. (Cicero.)
2. Vereri videntur ut habeam satis praesidii. (*Cicero.—praesidium, ‑i, guard*).
3. Necesse est enim sit alterum de duobus: aut mors sensus omnino auxert aut animus in alium locum morte abit. Si mors omnino similis est sensusque extinguuntur, di boni, quid luceri est mori (Cicero.—necesse est may be followed by the subjunctive.—auxert = ab-fert.—extinguo, ‑ere. —lucrum, ‑i, gain, profit.)*
4. Aetas semper transibat et aliquid novi adfert. (Terence.)
5. Nonne omnem exemplum luxuriae aut cupiditatiss multum mali facit? (Seneca.—luxuria, ‑ae.)
6. Miror tot milia virorum tam puelliter identidem cupere currentibus equos videre. (Pliny.—puelliter, ‑adv., based on puere, childishly.—identidem, ‑adv., again and again.—currentibus, i.e., in the races.)*
7. Nonne vidites etiam guttas, in saxa cadendo, pertundere illa saxa? (Lucretius.—gutta, ‑ae, drop [of water].—pertundere, ‑ere, to bore a hole through, erode.)
8. Melius nē id consiliē cepērīmus quod nōn facile explicāre possīmus. 
(*Cicero.—consiliē, gen. of the whole with id.)

9. Antōniius, unus ex inimīci et vir minimae clementiae, iussit Cicerōnenem interficere et caput eius inter duās manūs in Rōstrīs pōni. (Livy.—inimicus, -i, from in + amicus, personal enemy.—Rōstra, -ōrum, the Rostra, the speaker's stand in the Roman Forum.)

10. Omnēs qui habent aliquid nōn sōlum sapientiae sed etiam sānītātis volunt hanc rem publicam salvam esse. (*Cicero.—sānītās, -tātis.)

11. Salvē, nec minimō puella nāsō nec bellō pede nec nigriō ocellīs nec longīs cīgitēs nec ōre siccō! (*Catullus.—niger, nigra, nigrum, black, dark.—ocellus, diminutive of oculus.—siccus, -a, -um, dry.)

12. Homō sum; nihil hūmānī aliēnum ā mē putō. (Terence.—aliēnus, -a, -um + ab = foreign to.)

13. Alnicus animum amīci īta cum suō miscet quasi facit ōnum ex duobus. (Cicero.)

14. Sex diēbus fēcit Dominus caelum et terram et mare et omnia quae in eis sunt, et requīvit diē septimō. (Exodus.)

15. Misit legātum Valerium Procillum, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulescentem. (Caesar.—legātus, -i, ambassador.—Valerius Procillus.—hūmānitās, -tātis.)

16. Num negāre audēs? Quid tacēs? Convincam, si negās; videō enim esse hāc in senātū quōsdam quibus tecum ūnā fuērunt. Ō dī immortālēs! (*Cicero.—quid, here = why?—eon + vincō, to prove wrong. convict; sc. tē.—ūnā, adv., together, in concert.)

17. Nunc timeō nē nihil tibi praetor lacrimās quæam reddere. (*Cicero—queam = possim.—reddō, -dere, to give back, return.)

JUPITER PROPHESIES TO VENUS THE FUTURE GLORY OF ROME

Ollī subrīdēns hominum sator atque deōrum
255 vultū, quō caelum tempestātēisque serēnāt,
ōscula libavit nātae, dehinc tālia futur:
"Parce metū, Cytherē; manent immōta tuōrum
fāta tībī. Cernēs urbem et prōmissa Lavīnī
moenia sublīmenque ferēs ad sīdēra caeli
260 magnanimum Aenēan; neque mē sententia vertit.

263 Bellum ingēns geret Itāliā populōsque ferēs
contundet mōrēsque virīs et moenia pōnet.

Rōmulus excipiet gentem et Māvortia condet
moenia Rōmānōsque suō dē nōmine dicit.
His ego nec metūs rērum nec temporā pōnō:
imperium sine fine dedī. Quīn aspera Itūdō,
280 quae mare nunc terrāsque metū caelumque fatigat,
cōnsilia in melius referet, mēcumque fovebit
Rōmānōs, rērum dominōs gentemque togātām.”

(*Virgil, *Aenēid* 1.254ff; meter: dactylic hexameter.—Oll = illī, here Venus, who has come to her father Jupiter to ask whether his intentions have changed toward her son, the Trojan prince Aeneas, or if he is still destined to found a new Trojan nation in Italy.—vultū, abl. of means with subrīdēns.—ōscula fībāvit, i.e., he kissed her in ritual fashion.—nātus, ind. obj.—tēbice, scanned here as a monosyllable.—metū, an alternate form of the dat. metū.—Cytherēa, -ae, *the Cytherean*, i.e., Venus, so-called for the Aegean island of Cythera, which was sacred to her.—immōta, pred. adj., after manent.—tuōrum, i.e., Aeneas and his Trojan followers.—Lavinium, -ii, *Lavinium*, the town Aeneas was destined to found in Latium, near the future city of Rome.—sublīmen, in the predicate with Aenēan (a Gk. acc. form), *you will carry Aeneas on high.*—neque ... vertit, i.e., I have not changed my mind; but what is the literal translation?—geret ... pōnet: Aeneas is subject of all three verbs.—Italiā, sc. in; prepositions usual in prose were commonly omitted in verse.—fērōcēs = fērōcēs, acc. pl.—Through a device known as zeugma, pōnet has different senses with its two objects, *institute* with mōrēs and *build* with moenia.—Māvortius, -a, -um, *of Mars*, so-called because of the legend that Mars was father of Romulus, Rome’s first king.—rērum, *of their affairs*, i.e., for their empire.—tempora, *time limits.*—cōnsilia ... referet, i.e., *will change her attitude for the better,* Juno had sided with the Greeks in the Trojan war and had continued to resist Aeneas’ mission.—tōgātus, -a, -um, *togaed, *toga-clad.*)
THE VALUE OF LITERATURE

Si ex his studiis délectatiō sōla peteretur, tamen, ut opinor, hanc animī remissionēm hūmānissimam ac liberālissimam iūdicārētis. Nam cēterae neque temporum sunt neque aetātum omnium neque locōrum; at haec studia adolescentiam alunt, senectūtem oblectant, rēs securās ōrānt, adversās perfugium ac sōlācium praebent, délectant donī, nōn impeditum forīs, pernoctant nōbiscum, peregrināntur, rūstīcantur.

(*Cicero, Prō Archiā 7.16.—hanc, sc. esse.—iūdicāre, to judge, consider.—cēterae, sc. remissionēs.—take omnium with all three descriptive genitives, temporum, aetātum, and locōrum.)

A MONUMENT MORE LASTING THAN BRONZE

Exēgē monumentum aere perennius.

...Non omnis moriar, multaque pars meī vitābit Libītinam.

(*Horace, Odes 3.30.1, 6-7; meter: first Asclepiadean. See L.I. 28.—perennis, -e, lasting [throughout the years].—multa, here = magna.—Libītīna, -ae, goddess of funerals; death.)

ETYMOLOGY

In the readings

2. presidium, preside, president, presidency. 3. extinguish, extinct.—lucre, lucrative. 6. puerile, puerility. 7. “gtt.,” medical abbreviation for “drops.” 9. inimical, enemy. 11. denigrate, desiccate. 12. Aliēnum literally means belonging to another (sīlus): alien, alienate, alienation, inalienable. 15. legate, legation, delegate.—humanity, humanities, humanitarian; cp. hūmānus, homō. 16. convince, convict, conviction. “Jupiter”: Connected with for, fārī, fātus sum is the noun fātum; what Jupiter has prophecied is one’s “fate.” “Value of Literature”: adjudicate. “A Monument”: “perennials” are outdoor plants that survive through the years, i.e., from one year to the next; and Latin, dear friends, is a perennial language!

LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM—ET ÚTILIS!

Salvēte postrēmmum, disculpī et disciplulae! Here are some rēs novae ex hōc capite ultimō: dominus illūminātō mea, the Lord is my light, is the motto of Oxford University; lacrima Christī is a well known Lat. phrase for the tear of Christ (and also the name of a sweet Italian wine). An oft quoted line from Virgil’s Aeneid comes as the hero Aeneas, shipwrecked in North Africa, gazes upon a Carthaginian mural that depicts the suffering of both his own people and the Greeks in the Trojan war: hīc etiam . . . sunt lacrimae rērum et mentem mortālia tangunt. The Latin works better than a literal En-
English translation (which you can now easily provide for yourself), but a free rendering would be: *even here there are tears for the ways of the world, and man's mortality touches the heart.*

Not to be so lacrimose (or "lachrymose," an alternate spelling), let's move to some more upbeat items: remember how to make masculine agent nouns from verbs?—e.g., from *reperió* is *repertór,* *discover.* Well, the feminine agentive suffix is *-tríx,* *-trícis* (cp. Eng. "aviator" and "aviatrix," and *léctor/-léctríx,* which we've seen before), hence this proverb: *paupertás omnium artium repertríx,* something like our "necessity is the mother of invention" (but what is the literal meaning?). *Vultus est index animi,* the face is an indication of the soul, it has often been said. And speaking of faces, to "stick your nose up in the air" and to "look down your nose" on someone are not wholly modern idioms for viewing others critically or with disdain; the Neronian satirist Persius says of his predecessor Horace, in a brilliant and not wholly complimentary metaphor, that he hung the people from his well-blown nose (*excussō populum suspendere náspum*). Násū, by the way, was the "nickname" or *cognómen* of the Augustan poet Ovid: the Romans often gave their children names that focussed on physical or mental traits and they were frequently passed on from generation to generation (our friend Marcus Tullius, *mirábilis dictú,* was stuck with the name Cicérō, *garbanzo* *bean,* because of a peculiar growth on an ancestor's nose).

May your love of Latin be aere perennius: *ridête, gaudête, carpite omnês dies vestrēs, atque postrēmmum, lēctórēs et lēctrícēs dulcēs, valēte!"
Although these passages chosen from ancient authors have been adapted to meet the linguistic experience of first-year students, they have been edited as little as possible; the language and the thoughts are those of the ancient writers. In the case of poetry, one or more verses have been omitted from each excerpt but the verses actually presented here have not been altered. In the case of a prose passage, some words or sentences may have been omitted or the wording has been somewhat simplified at one point or another.

Students should find the perusal of these varied Loci Antiqui interesting per se and should also find satisfaction and a sense of accomplishment in being able to translate passages of such maturity at their stage of Latin study. Words appearing here that have not been introduced in the 40 chapter vocabularies are glossed at their first one or two occurrences, and especially important words are listed in the “Vocabulary” following the glosses to each passage; most are also included in the Latin-English Vocabulary at the end of the book for easy reference.

1. DISILLUSIONMENT

Miser Catulle, désinäs¹ ineptäre,²
et quod vidēs perisse perditum³ dūcās.
Fulserē⁴ quondam candidī tībī sōlēs,
cum ventitābās⁵ quō puella dūcēbat,
5 amēta nōbīs quantum amābitur nūlla.
Fulsēre vērē candidī tībī sōlēs.
Nunc iam illa nōn vult; tū quoque, impotēns, nōlī;
nec quae fugit sectāre nec miser vivē,
sed obstinētā mentē perfēr, obdūrā.

10 Valē, puella, iam Catullus obdūravit,
nec tē requīret nec rogabit invītam;
at tū dolēbis, cum rogāberis nūlla.
Scelestā, vae tē! Quae tībī manet vita!
Quis nunc tē adībit? Cui vidēberis bella?
Quem nunc amābis? Cuius esse dicēris?
At tū, Catulle, dēstīnātus obdūrā. (Catullus 8)

2. HOW DEMOSTHENES OVERCAME HIS HANDICAPS

Orātor imitētur illum cui summa vis dicendi concēditur. Dē-
mosthenem, in quō tantum studium fuisse dicitur ut impedimenta nātūræ
diligentiā industriaque superāret. Nam cum ita balbus esset ut illius ipsis artis
cui studeret prīmam litteram non posset dīcere, perfēcit meditandō
ut nēmō plānius loquerētur. Deinde, cum spiritus eius esset angustior,
spiritū continēndō multum perfēcit in dicendo; et conicēctūs in ōs calculīs,
summā vōce versus multōs ūnō spiritū prōnūntiāre cōnsuecēbat; neque id
caciēbat stāns ūnō in locō sed ambulāns. (Cicero, De Ōrātore 1.61.260–61)

3. THE TYRANT CAN TRUST NO ONE

Multōs annōs tyrannus Syrācūsānōrum fuit Dionysius. Pulcherrīmam
urbem servitūte oppressam tenuit. At ā bonīs auctōribus cognōvimus eum
fuisse hominem summae temperantiae in vīctū et in rēbus gerendī ācem
et industriam, eundem tamen malum et iniūstum. Quārē, omnibus virīs
bene vēritātem quaerentibus hunc videāvi miserrīmum necesse est, nam
nemini credere audebat. Itaque propter iniustum cupiditatem dominatūs quasi in carcerem ipse se incluserat. Quin etiam, nē tōnsōr collum committeret, filias suas artem tōnsōriam docuit. Ita haec virgo tendebant barbam et capillum patris. Et tamen ab his ipsis, cum iam essent adolescentiae, ferrum removit, eisque imperavit ut carbōnibus barbam et capillum sibi adiurerent.

4. THE SWORD OF DAMOCLES

Hic tyrannus ipse demonstravit quam beatus esset. Nam cum quidam ex eis assentātoribus, Dāmocles, commemoraret cōpiās eius, maiestātem dominatūs, rērum abundantiam, negāretque quemquam umquam beatioremuisse, Dionysius "Visne igitur," inquit, "Ô Dāmocles, ipse hanc vitam dēgustāre et fortūnam meam experīrī?" Cum ille se cupid ere dixisset, hominem in aureō lecto collocāvit. Inensasque ornavit argento auroque. Tum pueros bellos iussit cenam exquīsītissam Infere. Fortunatus sibi Dāmocles videbiitur. Eodem autem tempore Dionysius gladium suprā saepta equlna demitit. Dalnocles, cum gladium vīdisset, tōnsōriam dēmiserat, quod iam "beatus" nollet esse. Satisne Dionysius videtur demonstrasse nihil esse eī beatum cui semper aliqui metus impendeat? (Cicero, Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs 5.20.57–58)

5. DERIVATION OF "PHILOSOPHUS" AND SUBJECTS OF PHILOSOPHY

Et qui studia in contemplātione rērum pōnēbant "sapientes" appellabantur, et id nōmen úsque ad Pythagorae aetātem mānavit. Hunc alium doctē et cōpiās quaedam cum Leonte disputāvisse; et Leōn, cum illius

VOCABULARY: temperantia, iniustum, inclūdō.
ingenium et eloquentiam admiratus esse, quae sit ex eo quod arte maximam uiteetur. At ille dixit se artem nullam scire sed esse philosophum. Tum Leon, admiratus novum uomen, quae sit quod esset philosophum. Pythagoras respondit multos homines gloriae aut pecuniae servire sed paucos quosdam esse quod certa pro nihil habebant sed naturam rerum cognoscere cuperent; hos se appellare "studiros sapientiae," id est enim "philosophos." Sic Pythagoras huius nominis inventor fuit.

Ab antiqua philosophia usque ad Socratem philosophi numeros et sidera tractabant et unde omnia orientur et quod discernerunt. Socrate autem primus philosophiam ducavit e caelo et in urbis hominibusque colocavit et coegit eam de vita et moribus rebusque bonis et mali quaere. (Cicero, Tusculanae Disputationes 5.3.8-9; 5.4.10)

6. CICERO ON THE VALUE AND THE NATURE OF FRIENDSHIP

Ego vos hortor ut amicitiam omnibus rebus humannis anteponatis. Sentio equidem, excepto sapientia, nihil melius homini a deis immortaliibus datum esse. Divitiis alii anteponunt; alii, saltem; alii, potestatem; alii, honoribus; nulli, etiam voluptatibus. Illa autem incerta sunt, posita non tam in consilii nostris quam in fortunae vicissitudinis. Qui autem in virtute summum bonum ponunt, bene illi quidem faciunt; sed ex ipsa virtute amicitia nascitur nec sine virtute amicitia esse potest.

Denique certae res, quae petuntur, opportuna sunt rebus singulis: divitiæ, ut eis ëtâris; honoribus, ut laudèris; salis, ut dolore careas et rebus corporis ëtâris. Amicitia res plúrimas continet; nihil loco excluditur; numquam intempestiva; numquam molestia est. Itaque non aqua, non igne in locis plúribus ëtimur quam amicitia; nam amicitia secundas res clarióres facit et adversas res levióres.

Quis est qui velit in omnium rerum abundantia ëtâ vivere ut neque diligat quemquam neque ipse diligatur? Haec enim est tyrannorum vita, in qua nulla fidés, nulla caritas, nulla benevolentia potest esse; omnia semper metuntur, nullo loco est amicitia. Quis enim aut eum diligatur quem mutuat aut eum a quod se metuit putet? Multi autem si ceciderunt, ut

VOCABULARY: admiror, orior, quod.

1 admiror, -ae
2 excipio, -erc, -celli, -ceptum, except
3 potestatis, -tatis, f., power
4 vicissitudinis, -inis, f.
5 opportunas, -a, -um, suitable
6 singulus, -a, -um, single, separate
7 excidit, -ere, -elüsim
8 intempestivus, -a, -um, unseasonable
9 molestias, -a, -um, troublesome
10 abundantia, -ae
11 quemquam, L.A. 4, n. 6
12 caritas, -tatis, f., goodwill
13 benevolentia, -ae, goodwill
14 diligat, deliberative subj., would esteem
saepe fit, tum intellegunt quam inopēs\textsuperscript{15} amīcōrum fuercunt. Quid vērō stul-
tius quam cētera prūfē quae parantur pecūniā sed amīcōs nōn parāre, opti-
mand et pulcherrīmam quasi supellectilem\textsuperscript{16} vīae?

Quisque ipse sē dīligit nōn ut aliam mercēdēm\textsuperscript{17} sē ipse petat sed quod
per sē quīse sībi cārūs est. Nisi idem in amīcītiam trānsfeātur,\textsuperscript{18} vērus
amīcus numquam reperiētur. Amīcus enim est sī qui est tamquam alter idem.

Ipsī sē dīligit et alterum quærit cuius animūm īta cum suō misceat ut faciat
ūnum ex duōbus. Quī enim dulcīum quām habēre quīcum\textsuperscript{19} audeās sīc loqūi
ut tēcum? (Clēron, \textit{De Amīcītū}, excerptūs from Chs. 5, 6, 15, 21)

7. CICERO ON WAR

Quaedam officia sunt servanda etiam adversus\textsuperscript{1} eōs ā quibus inūriām
accēpimus. Atque in rē pūblicā maximē cōnservanda sunt ītra bellī. Nam
sunt duo genēra dēcērīandī; īnum per disputationēm,\textsuperscript{3} alterum per vīm.
Illud est proprium\textsuperscript{4} homīnis, hoc bēluārum; sed bellum vī gerēndum est sī
disputationē āūi nōn līcet. Quārē suscipiēnda quīdem bēlla sunt ut sīne in-
ūriā īn pāce vīvāmus; post autem vīctoriām eī cōnservāndi sunt quī nōn
crūdēlēs,\textsuperscript{6} nōn dūrī in bēluō fuērunt, ut maiōrēs nostri Sābinōs\textsuperscript{7} ē cīvitātem
etiam accēpērunt. At Cārthāginem omnīnī sustulērunt; etiam Corinthīm
sustulērunt—quod nōn approbō;\textsuperscript{8} sed crēdō eōs hoc fēcisse nē locus ipse ad
bēluum faiendi hortāri possēt. Meā quīdem sententīā,\textsuperscript{9} pāx quae nǐnil
insidiārum habēat semper quae ērenda est. Ae aequitās\textsuperscript{10} bēluī fētīāī\textsuperscript{11} ītur popūlī Rōmānī perscrīpta ēst.\textsuperscript{12} Quārē potest intellegī nūllum bēluim esse iūs-
tum nisi quod aut rēbus repetītūs\textsuperscript{13} gerētur aut anīe dēnuntiātūm sit.\textsuperscript{16}

Nullum bēluum débet suscipī ē cīvitāte optimā nisi aut prō fīdē aut prō
salūte. Illa bēlla sunt inūsta quae sine causā sunt suscepta. Nam extrā\textsuperscript{15}
ulīscendī aut prōpulsandōrum\textsuperscript{17} hostiām causām nūllum bēluum cum ac-
quītāte gerī potest. Noster autem populus sociīs\textsuperscript{18} dēfendendīs terrārum\textsuperscript{19}

\textsuperscript{15} inopēs, -opēs, bereft of
\textsuperscript{16} supellectile, -lectilis, f., furniture
\textsuperscript{17} mercēs, -ēlis, f., pay, reward
\textsuperscript{18} trānsferō, transfer, direct
\textsuperscript{19} habēre quīcum = habēre cum cum quō

\textbf{VOCABULARY:} equidem, potestās, trānsferō.

1 adversus, prep. + acc., toward
2 dēcērō (1), fight (to a decision)
3 disputationē, -onis, f., discussion
4 proprīus, -a, -um, characteristic of
5 bēluī, -ae, wild beast
6 crūdēlis, -ē, cruel
7 Sābīnī, -ōrum
8 approbro (1), approve
9 sententīā: abl. here expressing accordance
10 aequitās, -ātis, f., fairness, justice
11 fētīāiī, -e, fatal, referring to a college of priests who
were concerned with treaties and the ritual of de-
claring war
12 perscrībō, write out, place on record
13 re-petō, seek again
14 dēnuntiātūs (1), declare officially
15 extrā, prep. + acc., beyond
16 ulīscor, -i, ulus sum, avenge, punish
17 prōpulsō (1), repel
18 socius, -ī, ally
19 terrārum: depends on potitus est
ommium potitus est.20 (Cicero, De Officiis 1.11.34–36 and De Rē Publicā 3.23.34–35)

8. HANNIBAL; THE SECOND PUNIC WAR

Hannibal, filius Hamilcaris, Carthāgīne nātus est. Odium patris erga Rōmānōs sīc cōnservāvit ut nuncuam id dēpōneret. Nam post bellum Pūnicum, cum ex patriā in exsilium expulsus esset, nōn rēliquit studium bellī Rōmānīs īnferendī. Quārē, cum in Syria vēnisset, Antiochō7 rēgī hacc locūtus est ut hunc quoque ad bellum cum Rōmānīs īndūcere8 posset:

“Mē novem annōs nātō, pater meus Hamilcar, in Hispanicīm9 imperātor proficiscēns Carthāgīne, sacrificīum10 dīs fēcit. Eōdem tempore quaeśīvit ā mē vellēmne sēcum proficiscī. Cum id libenter audīvissem et ab eō petere coepīsem nē dubitāret mē dūcere, tum ille ‘Faciam,’ inquit, ‘si mihi fīdem quam quaerō dedereris.’ Tum mē ad āram11 dūxit et mē īnstruē patrīs12 iussit mē nuncuam in amīcitia cum Rōmānīs fūtūrum esse. Id īūs īndūrandum13 patrī datum īs īquīs īn his āeōtām īta cōnservāvī ut nēmō sīt qui plūs odī erga Rōmānōs habeat.”


Ad Alpēs16 vēnit, quās nēmō unquam ante eum cum exercītū ĭnstruē dūrēr. Alpicōs17 cōnāntēs prohibēre ēum ĭm transītū occīdīt18; loca patefīcīt; ītīnē ĭm īn Afrīcam mūnīvit19; ĭndūrīt19 ut20 īnles ēlephantus īre posset quā21 antea23 īnīs ēmō vīx24 īndūrīt ĭm īs ĭm ĭn Italiam īnstruēt et, Scipīōne25 superātō, Etrūriam27

20 potius, -irī, potius sum, + gen. (or abl.), get possession of

VOCABULARY: décertō, proprius, crādelīs, potiōr.

8

1 Hannibal, -alis, m., illustrious general who led the Carthaginian forces against the Romans in the Second Punic (= Carthaginian) War, 218–202 B.C.
2 Hamilcar, -aris, m.
3 dé-pōnō
4 Punicus, -a, -um
5 bellum in-ferō, make war on
6 Syria, -ae
7 Antiochēs, -ē
8 ān-duō
9 Hispanicīa, -ae, Spain
10 sacrificium, -ī
11 āra, -ae, altar
12 īūrō (1), swear
13 īūs īndūrandum, īūris īndūrītī, n., oath
14 Hasdrubal, -alis, m., next in command after Hamilcar
15 Afrīca, -ae
16 Alpēs, -ārum, f., pl., the Alps
17 Alpicēi, -ōrum, m., men of the Alps
18 occīdīō, -ere, -cidi, -cēsum, cut down
19 mūnīvit (4), fortify, build
20 ĭndūrīt, bring it about, cause
21 ut . . . ĭnsequent: noun cl. of result, obj. of effect
22 quā, adv., where
23 antea, adv., before, formerly
24 vīx, adv., scarcely
25 rēpō, -ere, rēpātī, rēptum, crawl
26 Scipīō, -ōs, m., father of the Scipio mentioned below
27 Etrūriam, -ae, district north of Rome. Tuscany
petivit. Hoc in itinere tam gravi morbo\textsuperscript{28} oculorum affectus est\textsuperscript{29} ut postea numquam dextrò oculò bene litteratur.

Multòs duòs exercitisque Rōmānōs superavit; longum est omnia proelìa\textsuperscript{30} énumerāre.\textsuperscript{31} Post Cannènsem\textsuperscript{32} autem pugnam nēmò et in aciē\textsuperscript{33} in Italiā restitit.\textsuperscript{34} Cum autem P. Scipio tandem\textsuperscript{35} in Africam invásisset,\textsuperscript{36} Hannibal, ad patriam défendendam revocātus, Zamae\textsuperscript{37} victus est. Sic post tot annōs Rōmānī sē perìculō Pūnicō liberávérunt. (Nepos, Hannibal, excerpts)

\textbf{9. AUTOBIOGRAPHICAL NOTES BY HORACE}

Nulla fors\textsuperscript{1} mihi tē, Mæcænās,\textsuperscript{2} obtulit: optimus Vergilius et post hunc Varius\textsuperscript{3} dixérunt quid esse. Ut ad tē vēni, singultim\textsuperscript{4} pausa locutus (nam pudor\textsuperscript{5} prohibebat plùra profixer\textsuperscript{6}), ego nōn dixi mē clārò patre nātum esse sed narravī quod eram. Respondēs,\textsuperscript{7} ut tuus mōs est, pausa. Abeo et post nōnum mēnsem\textsuperscript{8} mē revocās iubēsque esse în amicōrum numerō. Hoc magnum esse dūcō, quod\textsuperscript{9} placēt tibi, qui bonos à turpibus secernis\textsuperscript{10} non patre clarō sed vita et pectore puro.\textsuperscript{11}

Atqui\textsuperscript{12} si mea nātūra est mendōsa\textsuperscript{13} vitīs mediocribus ac paucīs sed aliōquī\textsuperscript{14} rectā,\textsuperscript{15} si neque avāritiam neque sordes\textsuperscript{16} quisquam\textsuperscript{17} mihi obiciet,\textsuperscript{18} si pūrus sum et ìnsōns\textsuperscript{19} (ut mē laudem!) et vivō cārus amīcis, causa fuit pater meus. Hic enīti, cum pauper in parvo agrō esset, tamen nōluit mē puerum in lūdum Flāvī\textsuperscript{20} mittere sed ausus est me Romam ferre ad artēs discendās quās senātōres\textsuperscript{21} suōs filiōs docent. Ipsē mihi paedagogus\textsuperscript{22} incorruptissimus\textsuperscript{23} erat. Mē liberum servāvī nōn sōlum ab omni factō sed etiam ab turpī opprobriō.\textsuperscript{24} Quārē laus illī ë mē debētur et grātia\textsuperscript{25} magna.

\begin{itemize}
\item [28] morbus, -ī, disease
\item [29] adfectō, afflictor
\item [30] proelium, -ii, battle
\item [31] enumerā (I)
\item [32] Cannæs pugna, battle at Cannae, where in 216 B.C.
\item [33] aciēs, -ī, battle line
\item [34] resistō, -ere, -stītum, + dat., resist
\item [35] tandem, adv. at last, finally
\item [36] invadō, -ere, -vasi, -vasum, go into, invade
\item [37] Zama, -ae, city south of Carthage in North Africa
\end{itemize}

\textbf{VOCABULARY:}
\begin{itemize}
\item occidō, efficio, (L), anteā, "ix, proelium, tandem.
\item mēnsis, -is, m., month
\item quod, the fact that
\item sēcernō, -ere, -crētum, separate
\item pūrus, -a, -um
\item atqui, conj., and yet
\item mendōsus, -a, -um, faulty
\item aliōqui, adv., otherwise
\item rectēs, -a, -um, straight, right
\item sordes, -iūm, f. pl., filth
\item quisquām, anyone
\item ob-icō, cast in one's teeth
\item ìnsōns, gen. -entūs, guiltless
\item Flāvīus, -ī, teacher in Horace's small home town of Venusia
\item senātōr, -āris, m.
\item paedagogus, -i, slave who attended a boy at school
\item in-corruptus, -a, -wm, uncorruptened
\item opprobriō, -iūs, reproach
\item grātia, -ae, gratitude
Loci Antiqui 299

Sic Rōmae nūtrītus sum atque doctus sum quantum irūtus Achilles Graecīs nōcuisset. Deinde bonae Athēnae mihi plīs artis adīcērunt, scīliet ut vellem rēctum a curvō distinguere atque inter silvās Acadēmī quaerere vēritātem. Sed dūra tempora mē īllo locō grātō ēmōvērunt et aestus cīvīlis belī mē tulit in arma Brūtī. Tum post bellum Philippēnse dimissus sum et audāx paupertās mē humilem et pauperem coēgit versus facere. (Horace, Sāurae 1.6 and Epīstulāe 2.2, excerptś in prose form)

10. HORACE LONGS FOR THE SIMPLE, PEACEFUL COUNTRY LIFE ON HIS SABINE FARM

Ö rūs, quando tē aspiciām? Quandō mihi licēbit nunc librīs veterum auctōrum, nunc somnō et ētīō fītī sine cūris sollicitae vītae? Ö noctēs cēnāeque deōrum! Sermō oritur non dē villīs et domibus alienīs; sed id quærīmus quod magis ad nōs pertinet et necīre malum est: utrum dīvītīs an virtūte homīnēs fīant beātī; quid nōs ad amīcitiam trahat, Īsus an rēctum; et quac sit nātūra bonī et quid sit sumnum bonum.

Inter haece Cervius fabulam narrat. Mūs rūsticus, impulsus ab urbānō mūre, domō rūstīcā ad urbem abiit ut, dūra vita relicta, in rebus iūcundīs cum īllo víveret beātus. Mox, autem, multa perīcula urbāna expertus, rūsticus “Haec vita,” inquit, “nōn est mihi necessāria.” Valē; mihi silva cavusque titus ab īnsidiīs placēbit.” (Horace, Sāurae 2.6, excerpts in prose form)

VOCABULARY: aspiciō, -ere, -specī, -spectum, look at, see
sollicitus, -a, -um, troubled, anxious
sermō, -onis, -., conversation
orior, L. A. 5 n. 15
vīta, -ae
aliēnus, -a, -um, belonging to another
per-fīmē, permit
Īsus, -īs, advantage
rēctum, -t, the right
bonum, -i, the good
Cervīnus, -ī, a rustic friend
mus, mūris, mīf, mouse
fīsticus, -a, -um, rustic, country
im-pellō, urge, persuade
necessāria, -a, -um
cavus, -ī, hole
tītus, -a, -um, safe
VOCABULARY: aspiciō, orior, tītus.
11. WHY NO LETTERS?
C. Plinius Fabius Suō S. ¹


12. WHAT PLINY THINKS OF THE RACES
C. Plinius Calvisius Suō S.


13. PLINY ENDOWS A SCHOOL


VOCABULARY: vel, sufficiē. ¹ quemadmodum, adv., how ² tabella, -ae, writing pad ³ vel, or, an optional alternative; salūtum, -i, greeting ⁴ velī, sufficīō, be sufficient ⁵ fabius, -ii ⁶ epistula, -ae, letter ⁷ velī, or, an optional alternative; sēriō, seriously ⁸ velī, or, an optional alternative; sufficiō, sufficere, be sufficient ⁹ etiam, adv., also ¹⁰ iucundus, -a, -um, pleasant, agreeable ¹¹ studēs, -is, study ¹² iucundissimā, adv., extremely pleasant ¹³ salūtō (1), greet ¹⁴ Mediolānum, -i, Milan ¹⁵ līberōs, -orum, children ¹⁶ nōndum, adv., not yet ¹ plinius, -i, Pliny ¹² calvisius, -i, Calvisius ¹³ comūn, -i, Como, Pliny’s birthplace in N Italy ¹⁴ quīēs, quēṃadmodum, how ¹⁵ līberī, -orum, children ¹⁶ nondum, adv., not yet

11
1. C. = Člīus
2. Fabius, -ii
3. S. = salūtum (dīcit)
4. epistula, -ae, letter
5. velī, or, an optional alternative; salūtum, -i, greeting
6. salūtum, -i, play, jest
7. sēriō, adv., seriously
VOCABULARY: vel, sufficiē.
14. LARGE GIFTS—YES, BUT ONLY BAIT

“Mūnera magna tamen mīsit.” Sed mīsit in hāmōr2; et piscātōrem3 piscis4 amāre potest? (Martial 6.63.5–6)

15. THE LORD’S PRAYER

Et cum ὁρᾶτις νῦν eritis sīcut1 hypocrita2, quī amant in synagōgīs3 et in angūlīs4 plateārum5 stantēs ērare ut videantur ab hominibus: ἀμὴn6 dico vōbīs, recēpérunt mercēdēm5 suam. Tū autem cum ōrābis, intrā6 in cubiculum6 tuum et, clausō7 östiō11 tuō, ōrā Patrem tuum in absconditō11; et Pater tuus quī videt in absconditō reddet13 tibi... Sic ergō14 vōs ōrābitis: Pater noster quī es in caelīs, sānctificētur15 nōmen tuum; adveniat rēgnum16 tuum; fiat voluntās17 tua et, also, in terrā. Pānem19 nostrum supersubstantiālem20 dā nōbīs hodiē, et dīmitte21 nōbīs dēbita22 nostra, sīcut et nōs dīmit­timus dēbitōribus23 nostriā; et nē inducas nos in temptātiōnem24: sed līberā nōs ā malō. (Vulgate, Matthew 6.5–6, 9–13)

16. CAEDMON’S ANGLO-SAXON VERSES
AND THE DIFFICULTIES OF TRANSLATION

Cum Caedl11on corpus sonīnō dedisset, angelus2 Domīnī ei dormientī “Caedmon,” inquit, “canta 3 mihi prīncipium creaturārum.” Et statīm5 coe­pit cantāre in laudem Deī creātōris6 versus quos numquām audīverat, quō­rum hic est sēnexus: “Nunc faudāre dēbēmus auctōrem rēgni7 caelestis,8 po-

---

METER: elegiac couplet.
1 munus, muneris, n., gift
2 hāmus, -i, hook
3 piscātor, -ōris, m., fisherman
4 piscis, -is, m., fish

VOCABULARY: munus.

1 sīcut, adv. and conj., just as
2 hypocrita, -ae, m., hypocrite
3 synagōga, -ae, synagogue
4 angulus, -i, corner
5 platea, -ae, street
6 ēmēn, adv., truly, verily
7 mercēs, -ēs, f., wages, reward
8 intrō (1), enter
9 cubiculum, -i, bedroom, room
10 claudō, -ere, clausi, clausam, close
11 östiō, -ī, door
12 in absconditō, in (a) secret (place)
13 redō, -dērc, -dēdi, -ditum, give back, answer, re­quire
14 ergō, adv., therefore
15 sānctificō (1), treat as holy
16 rēgnum, -i, kingdom
17 voluntās, -tātis, f., will, wish
18 et, also
19 pānīs, -is, m., bread
20 supersubstantiālis, -e, necessary to the support of
21 dīmitte, send away, dismiss
22 dēbitum, -i, that which is owing, debt (figuratively) = sin
23 dēbitōr, -ōris, m., one who owes something, one who
24 temptātiō, -ōnis, f.

VOCABULARY: sīcut, claudō, redō, ergō, rēgnum,
volutātis.

1 Caedmon, Anglo-Saxon poet of the 7th cent.
2 angelus, -ī, angel
3 cantō (1), sing
4 creātūra, -ae, creature
5 statīm, adv., immediately
6 creator, -ōris, m.
7 rēgnum, -i, kingdom
8 caelestis, -e, adj. of caelum
302 Wheelock's Latin

5 testātem⁹ creātoris et cōnsilium illūs, facta Patris glōriae, quī, omnipotēns¹⁰ custōs¹¹ hūmanī generis, fīūs hominum caelum et terram creāvit.” Hic est sēnsus, nōn autem őrdō¹² ipse verbōrum quae dōrnīēns ille cantāvit; neque enim possunt carmina, quamvīs¹³ optimē composita,¹⁴ ex aliā in aliam linguam ad verbum¹⁵ sine dētrimentō¹⁶ suī decōris¹⁷ ac dignitātis trānsferrī.¹⁸ (Bede, Historia Ecclesiastica Gentis Anglrorum 4.24; 8th cen.)

17. WHO WILL PUT THE BELL ON THE CAT'S NECK?


18. THE DEVIL AND A THIRTEENTH-CENTURY SCHOOLBOY


VOCABULARY: testātem, -ī, f., power
omnipotēns
estātem, -ātis, m., guardian
ordo, -inis, m., order
quāmvis, adv. and conj., although
componērē, put together, compose
ad verbum, to a word, literally
dētrimentum, -ī, loss
decor, -āris, m., beauty
trāns-ferō

17
mūs, mūrīs, m./f., mouse
cattus, -i (late Lat. for fēlēs, -īs), cat
ligō (1), bind
campānā, -ae (late Lat. for tintinnabulum), bell

collum, -ī, neck
audāx, -ācis, daring, bold
appōnūrī (1), + dat., approach
insurgēre, -ere, -surrexi, -surrēctum, rise up
accussārī (1)

VOCABULARY: audāx, appōnūrī.

18
ecclesiā, -ae, church
scholāris, -is, m., scholar
dīē quādam: dīēs is sometimes f., especially when referring to a specific day
materiā, -ae, material
diabolus, -ī, devil
thema, -ātis, n., theme, subject
quōd, that, introducing an ind. state., common in Medieval Lat.
habeam et verbera vt tem. Tum, versibus statim dictatis, diabolus abiit. Cum puer antem hos versus magistro suo dedisset, hic, excellentiam versus miratus, timuit, dicens scientiam in illis divinam, non humanam. Et ait: "Dixisti, quis tibi hos versus dictavit?" Primum puer respondit: "Ego, magister!" Magistrum autem non credente et verbum interrogationis saepius repetente, puer omnia tandem confessus est. Tum magister "Fili," inquit, "ille versificator fuit diabolus. Carissime, semper illum seductorem et eius opera cave." Et puer diabolum eisque opera reliquit. (Caesar of Heisterbach, Miracula 2.14; 13th cen.)

**VOCABULARY:**
- *verbera, -um, n.* blows, a beating
- *statim, adv.* immediately
- *dictō* (1), dictate
- *excellentia, -ae* excellence
- *divinus, -a, -um; divinam is pred. acc.
- *interrogātīō, -ōris, f.*
Loci Immutatī\n
The Loci Immutatī are offered for those who may finish all the Loci Antiquī and wish to try their wits on some unaltered classical Latin.

These passages are straight Latin, unchanged except for omissions, which have been regularly indicated by three dots. Naturally this genuinely literary material had to be rather heavily annotated, but more in the matter of vocabulary than in other respects. As in the case of the Loci Antiquī, words appearing here that have not been introduced in the regular chapter vocabularies are glossed at their first one or two occurrences, and most are also included in the Latin-English Vocabulary at the end of the book for easy reference. New grammatical principles have been treated as they occur, either by a brief statement in the notes or by reference to the Appendix.

1. A DEDICATION

Cui dōnōlemple	extit{dum}

ēridī

modo

pūmice

expollētum?

Cornēlii,

namque

tū solēbās

meās esse aliquid putāre nūgās,

iam tum cum ausus es ënus Italōrum

\(^{1}\)

\(^{2}\)

\(^{3}\)

\(^{4}\)

\(^{5}\)

Dedication

Cui dōnō lem plicum novum libellum

ēridī modo pūmice expollētum?

Cornēlii, namque tū solēbās

meās esse aliquid putāre nūgās,

iam tum cum ausus es ënus Italōrum

\(^{6}\)

\(^{7}\)

\(^{8}\)

\(^{9}\)

\(^{10}\)

\footnotesize{\begin{tabular}{ll}
1 & \textit{Phalaecian}, or hendecasyllabic. \\
2 & dōnō (1), (=dō), present, dedicate \\
3 & lepidus, -a, -om, pleasant, neat \\
4 & ēridus, -a, -um, dry, arid \\
5 & modo, adv., just now \\
6 & pūmex, -īnis, m., pumice stone. The ends of a volume were smoothed with pumice.
\end{tabular}}

\footnotesize{\begin{tabular}{ll}
6 & expollē (4), smooth, polish \\
7 & \textit{Cornēlius Nepōs}, biographer and historian: see Introd. \\
8 & strong form of nam = for (indeed, surely) \\
9 & nūgae, -ārum, trifles, nonsense \\
10 & Italii, -ōrum, the Italians; initial i- long here for meter. This work, now lost, was apparently less annalistic than most histories by Romans.}

\footnotesize{104}
omne aevum tribus explicäre chartis, doctis — Iuppiter — et labōriōsis.
Quār e habē tibi quidquid hoc libellī quālecumque, quod, Ō patrōna virgō,
plus ūnī maneat perenne saeclō.

(Catullus 1)

2. HOW MANY KISSES

Quaeris quot mihi bāsiationēs tuae, Lesbia, sint satis superque.
Quam magnus numerus Libyssae harenæ lāserpiciferīs iacet Cyrēnīs.

3. DEATH OF A PET SPARROW

Lūgēte, Ō Venerēs Cupīdinēsque et quantum est hominum venustiōrum!
Passer mortuus est meae puellae,
5 quem plús illa oculis suís amábatur.
Nam mellitus9 erat, suauque nórāt9
ipsam10 tam bene quam puella mátreven;
nec sósē11 a gremio12 illius movēbat,
sed circumsiléns13 modo húc14 modo illúc15
ad sōlām dominam ōsque pīnībatur.16
Qui17 nunc it per iter tenebricosum18
illuc unde negat redire quemquam.19
At vōbīs male sit, malae tenebrae20
Orcus,21 quae omnia bella dévoratis;22
tam belnum mihi23 passerem abstulístis.24
Tua25 nunc opera27 meae puellae
flénd6'28 turgidulus29 rubent30 ocellus.
(Catullus 3)

4. FRATER ÁVE, ATQUE VALE3

Multās per gentēs et multa per aequoram2 vectum3
adveniō hās miserās, frater, ad inferiās,4
ut té postrēmō5 dōnāre6 mūnere7 mortis
et mútam8 nēququam9 adloquerer10 cinerem,11

8 mellitus, -a, -um, sweet as honey
9 contracted form = nörērat (from nóscō)
10 suam . . . ipsam, its very own (mistress)
11 sósē = sē (acc.)
12 gremium, -ī, lap
13 circumsilēns (4), jump around
14 húc, adv., thither, to this place
15 illic, adv., thither, to that place
16 pīnībā (1), chirp
17 qui = et hic, conjunctive use of the rel. at the beginning of a sent.
18 tenebricosus, -a, -um, dark, gloomy
19 L. A. 4 n. 6.
20 tenebrae, -arum, darkness
21 Orcus, -ī, Orcus, the underworld
22 dévorō (1), devour, consume
23 dative of separation
24 auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum, take away
25 iō, exclamation of pain. oh! or of joy, hurrah!
26 miserlus, -ā, -um, diminutive of miser, wretched, poor, unhappy; a colloquial word
27 tál operā, thanks to you: opera, -ae, work, pains, effort
28 flēō, -ēre, flēvi, flētum, weep
29 turgidulus, -a, -um, (somewhat) swollen
30 rubeō, -ēre, be red
31 ocellus, -i, diminutive of oculus

1 Catullus journeyed to Bithynia on the staff of Memmās, the governor; apparently for two prime reasons. He undoubtedly wanted to get away from Rome in order to regain his equilibrium and fortitude after his final break with the notorious Lesbia. The present poem shows that he also deeply desired to carry out the final funeral rites for his dearly beloved brother, who had died in a foreign land far from his loved ones.

2 aequor, -oris, n., flat surface, the sea
3 vehō, -ere, vēxī, vectum, carry
4 inferiās, -arum, offerings in honor of the dead
5 postrēmōs, -ā, -um, last
6 dónō (1), present you with; cp. the idiom in L. I. 1 line 1.
7 múnis, -eris, n., service, gift
8 mūtus, -a, -um, mute, silent
9 nēququam, adv., in vain
10 ad-loquor, address
11 cinis, -eris, n. but occasionally f. as here, ashes (cp. incinerator)
5 quandoquidem\textsuperscript{12} fortūna mihi\textsuperscript{13} tē\textsuperscript{14} abstulit\textsuperscript{15} ipsum, heu miser indignā\textsuperscript{16} frater ademptus\textsuperscript{17} mihi.

Nunc tamen interesse\textsuperscript{18} haec,\textsuperscript{19} priscō\textsuperscript{20} quae more parentum tradita sunt tristi minere ad inferās, accipe frāternō\textsuperscript{21} multum\textsuperscript{22} mānāntia\textsuperscript{23} flere,\textsuperscript{24}

10 atque in perpetuum,\textsuperscript{25} frater, ave\textsuperscript{26} atque vale.

\textit{(Catullus 101)}

5. VITRIOLIC DENUNCIATION\textsuperscript{4} OF THE LEADER OF A CONSPIRACY AGAINST THE ROMAN STATE

Quō ūaque\textsuperscript{2} tandem abūtēre,\textsuperscript{3} Catilīna, patientiā nostrā? Quam diū etiam furor\textsuperscript{4} iste tuus nōs elūdet? Quem ad finem sēsē effrenāta\textsuperscript{5} audācia\textsuperscript{6}? Nihilō\textsuperscript{10} tē nocturnum\textsuperscript{11} praesidium\textsuperscript{12} Palaǔ,\textsuperscript{13} nihil urbis vigiliae,\textsuperscript{14} nihil timor pōpuli, nihil concursus\textsuperscript{15} bonōrum omniōrum, nihil hic mānūtissimus\textsuperscript{16} habēndus senātūs, nihil horūs, nihil visus, nihil orāvēt? Patēre tua consilia non sēnōs?

30 Constrictam\textsuperscript{18} iam omnium hominum scientia tenerō coniuratio tuus non vēdit? Quid proximus, quid superius nocte egit, ubi uerīs, quos convocaverīs, quid consilium ceperīs, quem nostrum ignōrāre\textsuperscript{20} arbitrāris?

\textsuperscript{12} quandoquidem, conj. since
\textsuperscript{13} dat. of separation. Final -t is long here because of meter.
\textsuperscript{14} tē = tē
\textsuperscript{15} L. l. 3 n. 24
\textsuperscript{16} indignē, adv., undeservedly
\textsuperscript{17} aūlēm, -ēre, -ēnullum, -ēdimum, take away; ademptus, voc. agreeing with frater
\textsuperscript{18} interēs, adv., meanwhile
\textsuperscript{19} n. acc. pl., obj. of accipe
\textsuperscript{20} prāscās, -ā, -am, ancient
\textsuperscript{21} frāternus, -ā, -um, fraternal, of a brother, a brother’s
\textsuperscript{22} multum, adv. with mānāntia
\textsuperscript{23} mānō (1), flow, drip with; mānāntia modifies haec in line 7.
\textsuperscript{24} flere, -ōs, weeping, tears
\textsuperscript{25} in perpetuum, forever
\textsuperscript{26} ave = salve

\textit{sole near Florence.}
\textsuperscript{2} ūaque, adv., how far
\textsuperscript{3} = abūtēris; abūtor + abl., abuse
\textsuperscript{4} furor, -ōris, m., madness
\textsuperscript{5} effrenāta, -a, -ā, -ātum, unbridled; cp. frēnum, bridle, and the frēnum of the upper lip
\textsuperscript{6} audācia, -ae, boldness, audacity
\textsuperscript{10} nihil = strong nōn; not at all
\textsuperscript{11} nocturnum, -ā, -um, adj. of nox
\textsuperscript{12} praesidium, -i, guard
\textsuperscript{13} Palaǔ, -i, the Palatine hill. From the sumptuous dwellings on the Palatine comes our word “palace.”
\textsuperscript{14} vigilia, -ae, watch; pl., watchmen, sentinels
\textsuperscript{15} concursus, -īs, gathering
\textsuperscript{16} mānītus, -ā, -um, fortified
\textsuperscript{18} constrictō, -ēre, -strīnxt, -strīctum, bind, curb
\textsuperscript{19} coniuratio, -onis, f., conspiracy (a swearing together)
\textsuperscript{20} ignōrāre (1), be ignorant, not know

\textsuperscript{4} For the general situation of this speech see the introductory note to the reading passage in Ch. 30. Since Cicero as yet lacked evidence that would stand in court, this speech is a magnificent example of bluff; but it worked to the extent of forcing Catilīna (though not the other leaders of the conspiracy) to leave Rome for his army encamped at Flōris.
10 Ö tempora Ö morēs! Senātus haec intellegit, cōnsul videt; hic tamen vivit. Vivit! Immō vērō etiam in senātum venit, fit públicī cōnsilī particeps,26 notat29 et désignat30 occultis ad caedem31 īnnum quamque nostrum. Nōs, autem, fortēs virī, satis facere reī públicae vidēmur si istēs fūrōrem ac tēla42 viūmus. Ad mortem tē, Catīfīna, dūci iussī32 cōnsulis iam prīdem44 oportēbat, in tē cōnfert pestem35 quam tī in nōs māchināris36 ...

20 Habēmus senātūs cōnsultum37 in tē, Catīfīna, vehēmens48 et grave. Nōn deest49 reī públicae cōnsilium, neque auctōritātēs40 huius ērdinis41; nōs, nōs, dīcō apertē,42 cōnsulēs dēsumus ... At nōs vicēsimum43 iam ciem patimur hēbēscēre44 aciem45 hōrum auctōritātēs. Habēmus enim cius modī senātūs cōnsultum, ... quō ex senātūs cōnsultō cōnfestim48 tē interfectum esse, Catīfīna, convēnit.49 Vivis, et vivīs nōn ad deponēndam,50 sed ad cōnfirmandam51 audāciam. Cupiō, patrēs cōnscriptī,52 mē esse clēmentem53; cupiō in tantās reī públicae periculis mē nōn dissolvētum54 vidēri, sed iām mē ipse inertiāe55 nēquitiaque56 condenmō.57

25 Castra58 sunt in Italīā contrā populum Rōmānum in Etruriae59 fauci-bus60 collocāta61; créscit in diēs singulōs62 hostium numerus; ēorum autem castrōrum imperātōrem ducemque hostium intrā63 mōnia atque adeō64 in senātūs vīdemus, intestīnām65 alīquam cotidiē perniciēm66 reī públicae mōlientem67 ...

30 Quae68 cum ita sint, Catīfīna, perge69 quō70 coepisti. Egredere71 ali-
quamquando in urbe; patent portae; proficiscere. Nimium diu te imperatorem tua illa Manlianae castra désiderant. Edúc tēcum etiam omnēs tuōs; si minus, quam plōrīminōs; pūrgā urbem. Magnō mē metū libertáveris dum modo inter mē atque tē mūrus inter. Nōbiscum versār iam diūtius aōn potes; non feram, non patiar, non sitam. . .

Quamquam non nōbī sunt in hōc ordine quī aut ea quae imminet nondum videant, aut ea quae vident dissimulērunt; quiescent Catilīnae mollibus sententīs alērum coniurationemque nascentem non crēdendō corroborāverunt; quōrum auctōritātem secūti, multī nōn sōlum improbi, vērum etiam imperātīri, si in hunc animadvertisse, crudēliter et régia factum esse dicerent. Nunc intellegō, si īste, quō intendit, in Manliana castra pervenerit, nēminem tam stultum fore quī nōn vident coniurationem esse factam, nēminem tam improbum quī nōn ēraetūr.

Hōc autem ūndō interfecī, intellegō hanc reī Publicae pe̔stem paulīspere reprimī, non in perpetuum comprimī posse. Quod si ēcēcerit, sēcumque suōs ēduxerit, et cōdeō cēterōs undique collectōs naufragōs adgregārit, atque deśēbitur nōn modo haec tam adulta reī Publicae pestis, vērum etiam stirps ac sēmen malōrum omnium . . . Quod si ēt īstō latōcinō īste unus tollētur, vidēbimur fortasse ad breve quoddam tempus cūrā et metū esse relevātī; periculum autem residenīt. . .

12 quandō, adv. at some time, at last
13 Manlius was in charge of Catiline's army at Fiesole.
14 minus = non omnēs
15 pūrgō (1), cleanse
16 mūrus, -i, wall
17 inter-sam
18 versor (1), dwell, remain
19 sinō, -ere, sīvī, sitūm, allow
20 quamquam, conj.; and yet
21 nōn nōbī, not none, several
22 sitōn, -ēre, sēvī, sētum, intend
23 dissimulō (1), conceal
24 qui = et īrī
25 mollōs, -e, soft, weak
26 corroborō (1), strengthen; cp. corroborate
27 quōrum = et ēorum
28 seclīt, participle going with multī
29 improbus, -a, -um, wicked, depraved
30 vērum etiam = sed etiam
31 imperitus, -a, -um, inexperienced
32 animadverterō, -ere, -verī, -versum, notice; with in + acc. = inflict punishment on. This is a mixed condition of what general category?
33 crudēliter, adv. of crudēlīs
34 rēgē, adv. in the fashion of a king, tyrannically
35 Sc. id as subject.
36 intendō, -ere, -tendi, -tēsum, intend; parenthetical cl.
Quære sècèdant imperbi; sècèrunt sē a bonis; ünum in locum con-
gregentur; mūrō dēnique (id quod saepe iam dīxi) sècèruntur a nōbīs; 
dēsīnant insidīārī domī suae cōnsulit, circumstārē tribūnā; prae-
tōris urbānī, obsidīērī cum gladīs cúriam, malleolōs et facēs ad 
inflammandam urbem comparāre; sit dēnique inscriptum in fronte umī 
ūnus cuinque quid dē rē pūblīcā seniēt. Policeor hoc vōbīs, patrēs 
cōnscripīt, tantam in nōbis cōnsulibus fore diligentiam, tantam in vōbīs 
auctoritātēm, tantam in omnibus bonis consensiōnem, ut Catīlīnae profectione omnia patēfacta, illus-
trāta, oppressa, vindicātā esse vidētās.

Hīsce ōminibus, Catīlīna, cum sumnā rē públicae salūte, cum 
tuā peste ac pernicie, cūmque eōrum exitiō quī sē tēcum omnī scelere 
parricīdiōque īn únērunt, proficiscere ad impium bellum ac nefārum. 
Tū, Luppiter, qui ēisdem quībus haece urbēs auspiciōs ā Rōmulō es cons-
stitūtus, quem Stātīrum huius urbīs atque in imperil nōminā-
mus, hunc et huius sociōs ā tuīs ētērisque templīs, ā tēctis urbīs ac 
moenibus, ā vitā fortūnāisque civīrum arcēbis, et hōnum bonōrum inimī-
cōs, hostēs patriae, laurus Itāliāe, scelerum foedere inter sē ac ne-

119 sē-cēlū (sē = apart, away). Why subj.?  
120 sē-cērūnt, -ere, -cevi, -cretum, separate  
121 cōngregō (1), gather together  
122 dēsīnō, -ere, -SV, -sérum, cease  
123 insidīō (1), plot against + dat.  
124 domī suae, loc. Catūlīna had tried to have Cicerō assassinated.  
125 circum-stō, -āre, -stērī, stand around, surround  
126 tribūnā, -ālis, n.  
127 prae-tor urbānus, judicial magistrate who had charge of civil cases between Roman citizens  
128 obsidēa, -ere, -sēri, -sēsimum, besiege, besie  
129 cúriā, -ae, senate house  
130 malleolus, -i, firebrand  
131 fax, faciōs, f. torch  
132 inflāmmō (1), set on fire  
133 = parāre  
134 in-scrībō  
135 frōnstrī, frontis, f. forehead  
136 polececor, -erī, -līcitum sum, promise  
137 diligentia, -ae  
138 equēs, equītis, m., horseman, knight. Here the equi-
tēs are the wealthy business class in Rome.  
139 cōnsensus, -ōnis, f., agreement, harmony  
140 profectūs, -ōnis, f., departure; cp. proficiscor  
141 illūstrō (1), bring to light  
142 vindīcō (1), avenge, punish  
143 his-ce = his + intensive enclitic -ce; abl. case with omnibus  
144 ōmen, ōminis, n., omen; with these omens or with 
these words which I have uttered as omens, abl. of attendant circumstance without cum.  
145 cum . . . salūte (peste, exitiō) abl. of attendant circum-
stance with cum, here indicating the result: to 
the safety of state, to your own destruction. . . .  
146 pernicīs, -īs, disaster, calamity  
147 parricīdium, -i, murder  
148 impius, -a, -um, wicked, disloyal  
149 nefarius, -a, -um, infamous, nefarious  
150 ēisdem auspiciōs quībus haece urbēs (cōnsuetūta est); 
auspiciō, -ārum, auspices  
151 Rōmulus, L, the founder of Rome  
152 cōnsītūtō, -ere, -stīti, -stītūm, establish  
153 Stātūr, -ōris, m., the stayer (of flight), the Sup-
porter, Jupiter Stator  
154 nōminō (1), name, call (cp. nōmen)  
155 templum, -i, temple  
156 tētum, -i, roof, house  
157 arccō, -āre, -tī, ward off  
158 inimīcīs, -ī, personal enemy; inimīcis, hostēs, etc. are in opposition with nōminēs.  
159 lastrō, -ōnis, m., robber, bandit  
160 foedus, -eris, m., treaty, bond
70 fāriā societātem coniunctōs, aeternā suppliciōs vivōs mortuōsque mactābis. (Cicero, In Catilīnā Öratiō I, excerpts)

6. THE ARREST AND TRIAL OF THE CONSPIRATORS

Rem pūblicam, Quirītēs, vitāmque omnium vestrum, bona, fortūnās, coniugēs libertāsque vestrās, atque hoc domicilium clārissimi imperiō, hodiērnum deōrum immortālium summō ergā vōs amore, laboribus, consiliis, periculis meis, ō flammā atque ferrō ac paene ex faucibus extirpātum et vōbīs conservātum ac restitūtum vidētis... Quae quoniam in senātū illustrāta, patefacta, comperta sunt per me, vōbīs iam exponam breviter, Quirītēs, ut et quanta ratione inventa et comprehensa sint, vōs, quī ignarātis et exspectātis, scīre possītis, Principiō, ut Catillīna paedes autē dies ex urbe, cum sceleris sui sociōs, huiusce nefarii bellī acerrimī duces, Rōmāe reliquisset, semper vigilāvit et providīt, Quirītēs, quem ad modum in tantōs et tam absconditūs insidīs salvī esse possumus. Nam tum cum ex urbe Catillīnam eiectam (non enim iam vereor huius verbi invidiam, cum illā magis sit) sed sociētātis, f. fellowship, alliance (cp. socius)

10 6 sociētās, tātis, f., fellowship, alliance (cp. socius)

2 con (together) + iungō: coniunctōs modifies lae

3 aeternās, -a, -om, eternal

4 suppliciōn, -iōn, -iōniō, punishment

5 mactō (1), punish, pursue. The basic structure of the sent. is this: Tu (qui e constitūtis, quem omnōs) hunc et sociōs a templis... fortūnāsque cīvium arcebit et hominēs (inimicīs... coniunctōs) suppliciōs vivōs mortuōsque mactābis.

6 Cicero here tells how, shortly after his first speech against Catiline, he secured the written evidence necessary for the trial and conviction of the conspirators.

2 fellow-citizens, an old word of uncertain origin

3 The Romans regularly used the sg. even when referring to a number of people; we use the pl., "lives."

4 n. pl., good things = goods

5 coniūnx, -īnx, f., wife (cp. coniungō)

6 liberī, -ērīm, children

7 domiciliun, -um, home (cp. domus)

8 hodiernus dies, this day, today (cp. hodie)
timenda, quod vivus exierit)—sed tum cum illum exterminari volēbam, aut reliquam consiliārōrum manum simul exituram aut eōs qui restitissentīnīmō sine illō ac dēbilēs fore putābam. Atque ego, ut vidī, quōs maximō fureō et scelere esse inflammātōs sciēbam, eōs nōbiscum esse et Rōmæ remānsisse, in eo omnēs dīes noctēsque consūmpsi ut quid agerent, quid mōlirentur, sentīre ac vidēre ... Itaque, ut comperī légātōs Allobroges beli Trānsalpinī et tumultūs Gallicī excitandī causā, ā P. Lentulō esse solicītātōs, eōsque in Galliam ad suōs civēs eōdemque itinere cum litteris mandātisque ad Catilīnam esse missōs, comitemque ēris addūctum esse. T. Voltūriūm, a quae huic esse ad Catilīnam datās litterās, facultātem mihi oblātam putāvi ut—quod erat difficultīnum quodque ego semper optābam ab dis immortālibus—tōta rēs nōn sōlum ā mē sed etiam ā senāti et ā vōbis manifestō déprehenderētur.

Itaque hesternō die L. Flaccum et C. Pompīnūm praetōrès, fortissimōs atque amantissimōs re ā publicae virōs, ad mē vocāvi, rem exposui, quid fieri placēret ostendī. Ilī autem, qui omnia dē rē ā publicā praecīlārā atque ēgregia sentiērent, sine recūsātiōne ac sine illā morā negotium suscepīrent et, cum advesperāsceret, occultā ad pontem Mulvium per-

---

30 This cl. is a noun cl. in opposition with illa ( lawful). The perf. subj. (exerit) is used in informal inf. state, indicating what people may say: he went out alive (vivus).
31 tum cum, mere repetition of tum cum above as Cicero starts the sent. over again.
32 exterminō (1), banish ( ex + terminus, boundary)
33 aut ... exituram (esse) aut ... fore putābam
34 reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, the rest of
35 simul, adv., at the same time
36 ex-ēd; exituram (esse)
37 restō, -ēre, -stī, stay behind, remain
38 dēbilis, -e, helpless, weak
39 = futūros esse
40 in eo ut sentirem et vidērem quid ... mōlirentur: in this that I might see ... ; the ut-cl. of purpose is in opposition with ēd.
41 légātus, -i, ambassador
42 Allobroges, -um, pl. the Allobrogas, a Gallic tribe whose ambassadors had come to Rome to make complaints about certain Roman magistrates.
43 Trānsalpīnus, -a, -um, Transalpine
44 tumultūsus, -ās, -ārum, uprising
45 Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic
46 excīdiō (1), excite, arouse
47 Publius Lentūlius after having been consul in 71 B.C. was removed from the Senate on grounds of moral turpitude. He was now one of the leading conspirators and at the same time he was holding the office of praetor.
venerunt atque ibi in proximis villis\(^{22}\) ita bipertita\(^{23}\) fuerunt ut Tiberis\(^{24}\) inter eos et pons interesseret.\(^{25}\) Sodem\(^{26}\) autem et ipsi sine cuiusquam suspicio\(^{27}\) multos fortès virós eduxerat, et ego ex praefectūrā\(^{28}\) Reātinā\(^{29}\) complūrēs\(^{30}\) délectās\(^{31}\) adulścentēs, quorum opera\(^{32}\) ūtor assiduē\(^{33}\) in re públicā, praesidīa\(^{34}\) cum glādiis mēseram. Interim,\(^{35}\) tertiā ferē\(^{36}\) vigiliā\(^{37}\) exactā, cum iam pontem Mulvium magnō comitātī\(^{38}\) lēgātum Allobroguim ingredī\(^{39}\) inciperent tānqua\(^{40}\) Volturcius, fit in eos impetus\(^{41}\); edūcuntur\(^{42}\) et ab illīs glādiis et a nostrīs.\(^{43}\) Rēs prætōridūs erat nōta sōlis, ignōrabātur a ētēris. Tum interventū\(^{44}\) Pompeīnī atque Placcī pugna\(^{45}\) sēdātur.\(^{46}\) Litterae, quaecumque\(^{47}\) erant in ēō comitātī, integrē\(^{48}\) signūs prætōridūs trāduntur; ēspī, comprehēnsī, ad mē, cum iam dūcēsceret,\(^{49}\) dēdūcuntur. Atque hōrum omnium scelerum improbissimum\(^{100}\) māchinātōrem,\(^{101}\) Cimbrum Gabinium,\(^{102}\) statim\(^{103}\) ad mē nihilum\(^{104}\) suspicantem,\(^{105}\) vocāvit. Deinde item\(^{106}\) arcēfus\(^{107}\) est\(^{101}\) L. Statibus, et post eum C. Cēthēgus. Tardissimā\(^{108}\) autem Lentulus\(^{109}\) vēnit . . .

Senatūm frequentem\(^{109}\) celerīt, ut vidīstis, coēgī. Atque intereā\(^{110}\) statim admonītū\(^{111}\) Allobroguin C. Sulpiciūm praetōrem, fortēm virum, mīsī qui ex aedibus\(^{112}\) Cēthēgī, ā quīd tēlōrum\(^{113}\) esset, effetī\(^{114}\); ex quībus\(^{115}\) ille maximum sīcārum\(^{116}\) numerum et glādiōrum extulit.\(^{117}\)

Introductī\(^{118}\) Volturciūm sīc Gallīs; fīdem pūblicam\(^{119}\) iussū\(^{120}\) senātūs
dedi; hortātus sum ut ea quae secrēt sine timōre indicarent.\textsuperscript{121} Tum ille dixit, cum vix\textsuperscript{122} sē ex magnō timōre recrēsset,\textsuperscript{123} a P. Lentulō sē habēre ad Cælumnam mandāta et litterās ut servōrum praesidīō uterētur,\textsuperscript{124} ut ad urbem quam prīnum\textsuperscript{125} cum exercitī accèderet; id\textsuperscript{126} autem cō oculos uīt,\textsuperscript{127} cum urbem ex\textsuperscript{128} omnibus partibus, quem ad modum\textsuperscript{129} discrēptum distribuērōque erat,\textsuperscript{130} incendissent\textsuperscript{131} caedemque\textsuperscript{132} infinitām civīnum fecissent, praeśtō\textsuperscript{133} esset illē\textsuperscript{134} qui et fugiantés exciperet\textsuperscript{135} et sē cum hīs urbānīs ducibus confinueret.\textsuperscript{137}

Introductiō autem Gallī iūs iūrandum\textsuperscript{138} sībi et litterās ab Lentulō, Cethegō, Statiliō ad suam gentem datās esse dīxerunt atque ita sībi ab hīs et ā L. Cassiō esse praeścruptum\textsuperscript{139} ut equītātūm\textsuperscript{140} in Italiam quam prīnum mitterent\textsuperscript{141} . . .

Ac nē longum sit.\textsuperscript{142} Quīriēs, tabellās\textsuperscript{143} prōferri\textsuperscript{144} iussīmus quæ a quōque dicēbantur datae.\textsuperscript{145} Prīnum ostendīmus Cethegō signum; cognōvit. Nōs linum\textsuperscript{146} incidimus\textsuperscript{147}; lēgīmus. Erat scriptūm ipsius\textsuperscript{148} manā Allobrogum senātū et populū sēsē\textsuperscript{149} quae eōrum lēgātīs confirmāssēt\textsuperscript{150} factūrum esse; ārēre ut item illī facerent quae sībi eōrum lēgātī recepissent. Tum Cethegus (quī paulō\textsuperscript{151} ante aliud tamen dē gladiīs ac sīcis, quae apud ipsum erant

\textsuperscript{121} indicō (1), indicate, make known  
\textsuperscript{122} vix, adv. hardly  
\textsuperscript{123} The perf. endings in -āvī, -ēvī, -āvī often contract to -ā-, -ē-, -ō-, respectively. So here recrēsset has contracted to recrēsset. Perfs. in -īvī may lose the ŭ but the two resultant vowels rarely contract to ŭ except before ss and st.: audīverat, audīcerat; audīvisse, audīisse, quaescissent.  
\textsuperscript{124} fāscrum noun c. with mandāta et litterās  
\textsuperscript{125} quam prīnum, as soon as possible  
\textsuperscript{126} (that he should do) this (id) with this plan (in mind) that . . .  
\textsuperscript{127} The rest of the sentence can be outlined thus: ut (cum . . . partibus [quem ad modum . . . distribuērō] [incendissent et . . . fecissent]) praeśtō esset illē (quī et . . . exciperet et . . . confinueret)

\textsuperscript{128} here in  
\textsuperscript{129} quam ad modum, as  
\textsuperscript{130} imper. pass. vbs.: as had been marked out and assigned  
\textsuperscript{131} incidībī, -ere, -cedībī, -censum, set fire to  
\textsuperscript{132} caedesīs, -is, f. slaughter  
\textsuperscript{133} infinitūs, -a, -um, unlimited  
\textsuperscript{134} praeśtō, adv., on hand, ready  
\textsuperscript{135} ille = Catīlīne  
\textsuperscript{136} ex-cipiō, pick up, capture  
\textsuperscript{137} con + imōbī. Why are exciperet and confinueret in the subj.?

\textsuperscript{138} ūs, iūrandum, ūris iūrandī, n., oath  
\textsuperscript{139} prae-scribō, order; direct; esse prae-scrēptum, imper. pass. (it had been commanded to themselves, sībī) but translate as personal: they had been directed.  
\textsuperscript{140} equītātūs, -ās, cavalry  
\textsuperscript{141} fāscrum noun c. depending on esse prae-scrēptum  
\textsuperscript{142} to be brief  
\textsuperscript{143} tabellā, -ae, tablet: very shallow trays, not unlike the modern slate, filled with wax on which writing was done with a sharp-pointed stīlus. Two of these closed face to face, tied together with a string, and sealed with wax and the impression of a signet ring, were the equivalent of a modern letter in an envelope.  
\textsuperscript{144} prō-ferō  
\textsuperscript{145} datae (esse); datae is nom. f. pl. to agree with quae (tabellae), the subject of dicēbantur.  
\textsuperscript{146} linum, -i, string  
\textsuperscript{147} incidō, -ere, -cidi, -cissum, cut  
\textsuperscript{148} (Cethegō) ipsi: emphatic because letters were often written by an amanuensis, a slave to whom the letter was dictated.  
\textsuperscript{149} sēsē = sē (i.e., Cethegus), subject of factūrum esse and also of ārēre  
\textsuperscript{150} confirmāssēt (1), assert, declare; subj. in ind. state. (see S. S.)  
\textsuperscript{151} a little before (before by a little), abl. of degree of difference (see S. S.)
Locú inmúttatīs

Loci immittās, response set dixissetque, sē semper bonōrum ferrāmentōrum studiōsum fuisse) recitātis litterīs débilitātus atque abiectus cōnscientiā repente conticuit.

Introductus est Statilius; cognōvit et signum et manum suam. Recitātae sunt tabellae in eandem fere sententiam; confessus est.

Introductus est Lentulō, et quaesīvī cognōscī signum. Recitātae sunt tabellae in eandem fere sententiam; confessus est. Turn os lendī tabellas Lentulo, et quaesīvī cognōscī signum. Adnuit... Leguntur eadem ratione ad senatum Allobrogum populumque litterae. SI quid de his dīcēre velī, 'potestatem. Atque illi prīnlo negavit. Poste autem aliquanto, totō iam indicio exposito atque edito, surrexit; quaesīvit a Gallīs quid sibi esset cum ilīs, quam ob rem domum suam venissent, itemque a Volturcio. QUI cum ilīi breviter constanterque respondissent per quem ad eum quotiens venissent, quaesissent ab eo nihilne secum de rans Sibyllīnīs locutus, tum ille subitō, scelere demens, quanta conscientiae esset os-tendit. Nam cum id posset infitīr, repente praeter opinōnem confessus est ...

Gabīnius deinde introductus, cum prīmō impudente respondère co piepisset, ad extrēmum nihil ex ilī quae Gallī in simulabant negavit. Ac mihi quidem, Quīrtīs, cum ilīa certissīma visa sunt argumenta atque indicia sceleris, tabellae, signa, manūs, denique linīus cuiusque confessio, tum multō certiora iīa, color, occultūs, taciturnitās. SIC

152 deprehēnsa, -ere, -hendi, -hensum, seize
153 respondisset dixissetque, subj. in rel. cl. of characteristic, which have the force of a concessive cl. (= although)
154 ferrāmentum, -i, weapon
155 studiōsum, -a, -um, fond of (i.e., he was a collector.)
156 débilitō, weakēn
157 abiectus, -a, -um, downcast
158 cōnscientiā, -ae, knowledge, conscience
159 contestēscē, -ere, -scēi, become silent
160 adnūs, -ere, -nui, nod assent
161 vellet, subj. because it is a subordinate cl. in an im-plied ind. state; for Cicero's original words: si quid ... di cere vīs
162 potestās, -ātis, f., power, opportunity
163 postea
164 aliquāntō, abl. of degree of difference (by somewhat) equivalent to an adv.: somewhat, a little
165 indiciūm, -i, evidence, information
166 dēdō, -ere, -didē, -ditum, give forth, publish
167 quam ob rem = quārē
168 constantēr, adv., consistently, steadily
169 quotēns, adv., how often
170 contracted form, n. 122 above
171 sēcunā ind. reflexive referring to the subject of quae sēssent; translate to them.
172 Sibyllīna, a collection of ancient prophecies, for which the Romans had very high respect. By these Lentūlus had sought to prove to the Allobroges that he was destined to hold the regnum and imperium at Rome.
173 dē-mēns, gen. -mentis, out of one's mind
174 infītor (1), deny
175 opinō, -onis, f., expectation
176 impudenter, adv., impudently
177 ad extrēmum, at the last, finally
178 eis = n. pl., those things
179 insimulō (1), charge
180 depends on visa sunt
181 cum ... tum, not only ... but also (ex. nōn sōlum ... sed...)
182 íllā argumenta atque indicia (i.e., tabellae ... confessiō) certissima visa sunt
183 confessiō, -onis, f. = Eng
184 lit. more certain by much. What kind of abl. is multō? (see S.S.)
185 color ... taciturnitās, in apposition with íllā, which is nom. n. pl. color, -ōrīs, m. = Eng
186 taciturnitās, -ātis, f., silence (ex. taciturn)
enim obstupuerant, sic terram intuebantur, sic furtim non numquam inter sese aspiciabant ut non iam ab aliis indicari sed indicare se ipsi vidérentur.

Indicis expositis atque editis, Quirites, senatum consulem de summa re publica quid fieri placet. Dictae sunt a principibus æcerrimae ac fortissimae sententiæ, quæ senatus sine illa varietate est secutæ ...

Quibus præ tantis rebus, Quirites, nullum ego a vobis praemium, nullum insignem honoris, nullum monumentum laudis postuló praeter quam huius diēi memoriam sempiternam ...

Vos, Quirites, quoniam iam est nox, venerat illum lovem illum custodem huius urbis æ vestnlll1, in vestra tecta; et ea, quamquam est periculum depulsum, tamen aequè ac priore nocte vigiliisque defendite. Id ne vobis diffìius faciendum sit ut in perpetuâ pâce esse possitís prôvidébó. (Cicero, In Catilinam Orátiō III, excerpts)

DE VITÆ ET MORTE (7-9)

7. SOC R A T ES' "EITHER- OR" BELIEF

Quae est igitur eius oratión quem facit eum Plato um apud indicés iam morte multatùm?

"Magna me," inquit "spōs tenet indicés, bene mihi evenire quod mittar ad mortem. Necesse est enim sit alterum de duobus, ut aut sensus omnini omnis mors auferat aut in alium quendam locum ex his locis morte migretur. Quam ob rem, sive sensus extinguitur morsque similis est qui non numquam etiam sine visis somno postulo except quod finali condemnát eum in lanum his locis morte sempiternus ...

As part of his demonstration that death is not an evil, Cicero cites Socrates' views as given in Plato's "Apology." Socrates' defense of his life before the jury that finally condemned him to death.

17 obstupesci, -ere, -stupui, become stupefied, be thunderstruck
18 intercum, -eret, -tuitum sum, look at
19 indicō (1), accuse (cp. indicium, n. 165 above)
20 consulō, -ere, -solui, -sulsum, consult, ask advice of highest interest of the state
21 varietas, -atis, f., variation
22 insignis, -īs, n., sign, symbol
23 postulō (1), request, demand except
24 sempiternus, -a, -um, eternal
25 veneror (1), worship
26 tectum, -ī, roof; house
27 quamquam, conj. although
28 depellō, drive off, avert
29 equally as = just as
30 quid ... sum, which Plato represents him as using; quod, abl. with the participle sum
31 malō, (1), punish, sentence
32 -reniā, turn out; imper. inf. in ind. state.
33 subordinate cl. in ind. state.
34 necesse, indcl. adj. (it is) necessary
35 Supply ut before sit: that there be one of two possibilities, with the ut ... migretur cl. in apposition with duobus
36 ... aut
37 migro (1), depart, migrate; migretur as imper. pass., one departs
38 æsum, -i, vision
39 somnium, -i, dream
40 pliacētus, -a, -um, peaceful
tem adfert, dī bonī, quid lucrī est ëmorī? Aut quam multī diēs reperī possunt qui ūī noctī antepōnantur? Cui sī similis futūra est perpetuitās

omnia consequentis tempora, quis mē beātior?

"Sīn ā vera sunt quae dīcuntur, migrātīōnum esse mortem in ēas orās quās quī ē vita excesserunt incolunt, id multō iam beātīus est... Haec peregrinātiō mediocris vōbis vidēri potest? Ut vērō colloquī cum Orpheō, Mūsaeō, Homērō, Hēsiodō liceat, quantō tandem aemītātīs... Nec enim cuiquam bonō malī quīcumque eventīre potest nec vivō nec mortuō...

"Sed tempus est iam hinc abīre mē, ut mortiar, vos, ut vītam agātis. Utrum autem sit melius, dī immortalēs sciunt; hominem quidem arbitrāre moriūm."

(Cicero, Tusculanae Disputationes 1.41.99, excerpts)

8. A MORE POSITIVE VIEW ABOUT IMMORTALITY

Artiōn quam solēbāt somnus (mē) complexus est... Dōna quae dīcuntur, migrationem esse mortem in eās orās quēs qui e vita excesserunt, incolunt, id multō iam beātīus est... Haec peregrinātiō mediocris vōbis vidēri potest? Ut vērō colloquī cum Orpheō, Mūsaeō, Homērō, Hēsiodō liceat, quantō tandem aemītātīs... Nec enim cuiquam bonō malī quīcumque eventīre potest nec vivō nec mortuō...
Ceceret evolavit, vestra vero quae dicitur vita mors est. Quin tui aspicis ad te venientem Paulum patrem?

Quem ut vidisti, equidem tui lacrimarum prorsus. Ille autem me complexus atque osculatus flère prohibebat. Atque ego ut primum fletum repressi, loqui posse cepisti, "Quaesó, inquam, 'pater sanctissime atque optime, quoniam haec est vita, ut Africanum audior dicere, quid moror in terris? Quin hunc ad vos venire propter?

"Nón est ita," inquit ille. "Nisi enim deus, cuius hoc templum est omne quod conspicis, istis te corporis custodiens liberaverit, huc tibi acitus patère non potest. Hominēs enim sunt hác lēge generāti, quī tuārentur illum globum quem in hoc templō medium videās, quae terra dicitur, fique animus datus est ex illis sempiternis ignibus quae sidera et stellās vocátis... Querre et tibi, Publīus, et pīs omnibus retainendus est animus in custodiis corporis, nec inussa eius a quò ille est vôbis datus ex hominum vita mi·grandum est, nē minus hūmanum adsignatum et deo défugisse videāmini... Iustitia, cole et pietātem, quae cum sit magna in parentibus et propinquis, tunc in patria maxima est. Ea vita aut in caelu et in hunc coetum eorum qui iam vixerunt et corpore laxati illum incolunt locum... quem vos, ut Æ Graecis accēpistis, orbem lacteum, nuncupātis..."
25 Et ille, "Tū vērō ... sīc habētō" 54 nōn esse tē mortālem, sed corpus hoc 55; nec enim tūs 56 ea quem fōrma ista déclārat, 57 sed mēns cuiusque is est quisque, nōn ea figura 58 quae digitō démōnstrārī potest. Deum tē igiur scītō 59 esse; sīquidem 60 deus est qui viget, 61 qui sentit, qui meminīt, 62 qui prōvidet, qui tām regit et moderātum 63 et movet id corpus cui praepositus est 64 quam 65 hunc mundum ille prīnceps deus. 25 (Cicero, excerpts from Sōnīnium Scipionis 2 ff. = Dē Rē Pūblīcā 6,10 ff.)

9. ON CONTEMPT OF DEATH


... Admoneō 21 ut aliquid etiam de humātione 24 et sepultūrā 25 dicendum 26 existīmēm 27 ... Socratēs, rogatus a Critone 28 quem ad modum sē vellet, "Multam vero," inquit, "opera, amīcī, frustrā 31 cōnsumpsī.

54 habētō, fut. imper., you shall consider; consider
55 sc. esse mortāle
56 tūs, to your (friends), dat. depending on dēclārat
57 dēclārō (1) = Eng.
58 = fōrma
59 scītō, another fut. imper., you shall know; know
60 sīquidem, conj., since
61 vigēō -ere, -ui, be strong, be active
62 meminī, meminisse, defective, found only in perf. system, remember
63 moderō (1), control
64 prae-pōnō, put in charge of
65 as
66 From the preceding cl. sc. regit, etc. as vīs.

---

1 If death is such a great evil, how can the following attitudes be explained?
2 quid, as adv., why? (= chr?)
3 nōminē (1), name, mention (cp. nōmen)
4 legiō, -ōnis, f., legion
5 Catō, -ōnis, m., Cato, the famous censor, who wrote a now-lost history of Rome called the Origines.
6 alacēr, -crēs, -crē, eager, happy. We should use an adv. instead of a predicate adj.: eagerly
7 propectās (esse); reditūrās (esse)
8 Lacedaemonii, -ōrum, m., Spartans
9 Thermopylēs, -arum; 480 B.C.
10 on whom Simonides (wrote); Simonides a sixth-century Greek poet famous especially for his poems and epigrams in the elegiac couplet.
11 hospes, -itis, m., stranger
12 Sparta, -ae, f., Sparta, dat. depending on die
13 tē vidisse nōs
14 = iacentēs
15 ob-sequor + dat., obey
16 commemorō (1), call to mind mention (cp. memoria)
17 What kind of person, then, was the Spartan woman? quīlīs, -e, what kind of
18 (eum) interfectum (esse)
19 idcirco, adv., for that reason
20 genuō, -ere, genui, generate, bear
21 (the kind of person) who
22 occumbō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum, meet
23 ad-moneō = moenō, remind
24 humātūrēs, -ōris, f., burial (cp. humus, earth)
25 sepultūrās, -ae, funeral (cp. sepulchre)
26 dicendum (esse)
27 existīmē (1), think
28 Critō, -ōnis, m., Crito, a friend of Socrates
29 sepellō, -ērē, -īrūm, bury
30 opera, -ae, effort, pains
31 frustrā, adv., in vain (cp. frustrate)
Critó enim nostrō nōn persuāsī mē hinc abōlāturum,32 neque melī33 quiec­quām relictūrum34 . . . Sed, mīhi crēde, (Critō), nēmō mē vestrum,35 cum hinc excederō,36 consequētur.37 . . .

15 Durior Diogenēs38 Cynicus prōiectō sē iussit inhumātūm.40 Tum amīcī, "Volucribusne1 et ferīs42?" "Minimē43 vērō," inquit; "sed bacillum44 propter mē, quō abīgam,46 pōnitōte.47" "Quī48 poteris?" illī; "nōn enim sentiēs." "Quīd igitur mīhi fērārum laniātūs49 oberit50 nihil sentiēt?51?" (Cicero, Tus­cūlānæ Disputationēs 1.42.101–43.104, excerpts)

10. LITERATURE: ITS VALUE AND DELIGHT

Quaerēs a nōbis, Grattī, cūr tantō opere lōcē homīne dēlectēmur.3 Quīa4 suppeditātō nōbis ubi et animus ex hōc forensē5 strenūtō relictūrēt et aūrēs conviciō10 défessae11 conquīscantī12 . . . Quārē quis tandem mē repre­hendat,13 aut quis mihi iūrē14 suspēnscat,15 si,16 quantum17 cēterīs ad suas rēs obundātī18 quantum ad fēstōs19 diēs īlōdōrum celebrandōs,20 quantum ad

19. In the course of a speech defending the citizenship of the poet Archīas against the charges of a certain Gratītūs, Cicero pronounced one of the world's finest encomiums on the inestimable value and delight of literature.

20. celebē (1), celebrate
aliis voluptatès et ad ipsum requiem animi et corporis concéditur tempora, quantum aliis tribuunt temporum, quantum tempestivis convivis, quantum dénique alveolò, quantum pilae, tantum mihi egomet ad haec studia recolenda? Sumpserit? Atque hoc ideò mihi concédendum est magis quod ex his studiis haec quoque crēsecit orátiō et facultās, quae, quantacumque est in me, numquam amīcorum periculis defuit. 

Plēni omnēs sunt libri, plēnae sapientium vōcēs, plēna exemplōrum vetustās, quae incērent in tenebris omnia, nisi litterārum lūmen accēderat. Quam multās nobīs imagīnēs—nōn sōlum ad intuendum, vérum etiam ad imitandum—fortissimorum virōrum expressās scriptōres et Graecī et Latinī reliquērunt! Quīs ego semper in administrandā re publicā prōpōnēns animum et mentem meam ipsī cōgītātiōne hominum excellentiōm cōnfirmābām.

Quaeque, quispiam, “Quid? illī ipsī summi virī quorum virtūtēs litterās prōditae sunt, istāne doctrīnā quam ī tī effīs laudibus ērudītī fuerunt.” Difficile est hoc ē omnibus confirmāre, sed tamen est certum quid respondam: saepius ad laudem atque virtūtem nātūram sine doctrīnā quam sine nātūrā valuisse docīnām. Atque īdem ego contendō, cum ad nātūram exciām et illūstrem accesserit ratiō quaedam cōnfirmātiōque docīnae, tum illud nesciō quid praecĭlrum ac singulāre solere existītere.

21 requies, -ētis, acc. requisēm or requiem, rest
22 concēdō, grant, concede
23 tribūō, -ere, -ū, -itum, allot
24 tempestivus, -a, -um, timely; here = early, beginning in the afternoon so as to be conveniently prolonged.
25 convivium, -ī, banquet
26 alveolus, -i, gaming board
27 pīla, -ae, ball (pē pill)
28 tāntum (temporum) . . . quantum, as much . . . as
29 ego-mēt, an emphatic form of ego
30 re-colō, -ere, -ē, -cultum, renew
31 sāmō, -ere, sāmāsā, sāmptum, take
32 ideō, adv., for this reason, therefore
33 facultās, -ātis, f., skill. Combine with orātiō and translate, this oratorical skill.
34 quantumcumque, -acumque, -unicumque, however great
35 dē-sum, be lacking
36 exemplum, -i, example; exemplōrum also goes with plēnit et plēnae.
37 vetustās, -ātis, f., antiquity
38 tenebrāe, -ārum, darkness
39 lūmen, -inis, n., light
40 imāgō, -ōnis, f., portrait, picture
41 intuor, gaze on, contemplate
42 vérum, conj., but
43 imitōr (1), imitate
44 ex-primo (prēmin), describe, portray
45 administrō (1), manage
46 prō-pōnō, put forward, set before; prōpōnēns has quās as direct obj. and mihi as indirect obj.
47 cōgītātiō, -ōnis, f., thought; cp. cōgītō
48 excellēns, gen. -entis, superior, remarkable
49 cōnfirmō (1), mold
50 quīspiam, quaequiam, quisquiam, someone
51 prōdō, -ere, -dūf, -ditum, transmit, reveal
52 doctrīna, -ae, instruction
53 cōnfirmō (1), assert
54 valuisse ad laudem, to be powerful toward praise = to have led to praise; inf. in ind. state.
55 idem ego, the same person = I also
56 maintain
57 eximius, -a, -um, extraordinary
58 illustris, -e, noble, brilliant
59 accēdō here = he added
60 cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis, f., molding, shaping
61 nesciō quis, nesciō quid, indef. pron., lit. I know not what; here = some (uncertain) person or thing; the nesciō remains unchanged in this phrase.
62 singulāris, -e, unique, extraordinary
63 existō, -ere, -stīt, arise, appear, exist
Quod si non hic tans fructus ostenderetur, et si ex his studis delectatitio
sola pateretur, tamen, ut opinor, hanc animam remissiorem humaniissimam ac
liberalissimam iudicaretis. Nam ceterae neque temporum neque neque
aetatum omnium neque locorum; at haec studia adolescensiam alunt, senect-
tutem oblectant, res secundas omnant, adversis perfugium ac soliacum
praebent, delectant domi, non impedunt foris, pernoctant nobiscum, per-
egrintantur, rusticantur. (Cicero, Pro Archia 6.12-7.16, excerpts).

ANECDOTES FROM CICERO (11-15)

11. DEATH OF A PUPPY (EXAMPLE OF AN Omen)

L. Paulus consul iterum, cum ei bellum ut cum rege Perse geret obtigisset, ut
cipa die domum ad vesperum rediit, filiolam suam Ter-
tiam, quae tum erat admodum parva, osculans animadvertit tristiculam, “Quid est,”
Tum ille artius puellam complexus, “Accipio,” ille
quis, “mea filia, omen.” Erat autem mortuus cateIlus
(Cicero, De Divintione 1.46.103)

12. TOO CONSCIENTIOUS (AN EXAMPLE OF IRONY)

Est huic finitimii dissimulatiioni cum honesto verbò vitiosiia res
apellatur: ut cum Afridinus censors tribus puellam
qui in
Pauli pugnā nōn adfuerat, cum ille sē custōdiae causā dicert in castrīs remānisse quaereretque cūr ab eō notēretur: "Nōn amō," inquit, "nimium diligentēs." (Cicero, De Orātōre 2.67.272)

13. QUAM MULTA NŌN DĒSIDERŌ!

Sōcratēs, in pompā cum magna vis argentique terrētur, "Quam multa nōn dēsiderō!" inquit.

Xenocratēs, cum légātō ab Alexandrō quīnquāgentā eī talentā atulissent (qua erat pecūnia temporibus illīs, Athēnīs præsērtim, maxima), abdūxit légātōs ad cēnam in Acadēmīam; ēs asposuit tantum quod satis esset, nūllō apparātō. Cum postrīdiē rogārent eum cum numerātō inbēret, "Quid? Vōs hesternā, inquit, "cēnābā nōn intellexistis mē pecūniā nōn egēre?" Quōs cum trīstīorēs vidisset, trīgintā minēs accepit nē aspernarī rēgis liberālitātem videvētur.

At vērō Diogenēs libērius ut Cynicēs, Alexandrō rogantē ut dicert sī quid opus esset: "Nunc quidem paululum, inquit, "a soie. Oflece-rat" videlicet apricōt. (Cicero, Tusculānae Disputātīōnēs 5.32.91-92)

14. WHAT MAKES A GOOD APPETITE

Dārius in fugā cum aquam turbidam et cadāveribus inquinātām bi-bisset, negavīt unquam sē bibisse iucundius. Numquam vidēlicer sītiēns

---

2 pugnā, -ae, battle
9 ad-sum, be present
10 castra, -ūrum, camp
11 notō (1), mark, here with the nota censūris placed opposite a citizen's name to indicate his removal from the citizen list in disgrace.

13 pompā, -ae, parade
2 vis here = quantity (cp. copia)
3 aurum, -i, gold
4 argentum, -ī, silver
5 Xenocratēs, -ēs, pupil of Plato and later head of the Academy
6 Alexander, -drī
7 indicet. adj., fifty
8 talentum, -ī, a talent, a large sum of money
9 præsērtim, adv., especially
16 Acadēmīa, -ae, the Academy, a gymnasium in a grove just outside of Athēnēs. Here Plato established his school, which might be called the first European university.
11 appōnō, place near, serve
12 apparītus, -ūs, equipment, splendor
13 postrīdiē, adv., on the next day
14 numerō (1), count, pay out; sc. pecūniām as subject of numerō
15 hesternus, -a, -um, of yesterday
16 cēnula, -ae, diminutive of cēna
17 indicet. adj., thirty
18 mīna, -ae, a Greek coin
19 aspernor (1), spurn, despise
20 liberālitās, -tatis, f. generosity
21 L.I. 9 n. 38
22 liberīus, adv., freely, boldly
23 as a Cynic, being a Cynic
24 opus (indicet.) est, is necessary: if he needed anything
25 paululum, adv., a little
26 i.e., you are blocking my sunlight
27 officiō, -ere, -fīcit, -fectum + dat., be in the way, obstruct
28 vidēlicet, adv. (you may see), clearly, evidently
29 apricōr (1), sun oneself

14

1 Dārius III, defeated by Alexander the Great in 331 B.C. The spelling Dārius reflects later Greek pronunciation.
2 fugā, -ae, flight
3 turbidus, -a, -um, turbid, roiled
4 cadāver, -eris, n., corpse (cp. cadaverous)
5 inquinātus, -a, -um, polluted
6 sītiēs (4), he thirsty
biberat. Nec ēsuriēns9 Ptolemaeus8 ēderat,9 cui cum peragrānīpt10 Aegyptum,11 comitibus12 nōn cōnsecūtās13 cibārius14 in casā pānis datus esset, nihil vīsum est ēlō pāne ēcūndius. Sōcramem ferunt,15 cum tūque ad vesperum contentius16 ambulāret quaescūtūmque esset17 ex eō quārē id faceret, respondissē sē, quī18 melius cēnāret, obsōlētā19 ambulando lātem.20

Quid? Vīctum21 Lacedaemoniōrum in philitiīs22 nōmine vidēmus? Ubi23 cum tyrannus cēnāssiōt Letiōniōrum, negāvit sē iūre24 ēlō nigrō quod cēnāriī25 caput ērat delectātūm.26 Tum īs quī illā coxerat,27 "Minimē mirum28; condimenta29 enim dēfuerunt.29" "Quae tandem?" inquit ille. "Labor in vēnātūrī,31 sūdōr,32 cursus ad Euρatam,33 famēs, sitīs.34 His enim rēbus Lacedaemoniōrum epulās35 condiantur.36"

Cōnsiderātūs,37 ructātūs,38 refertōs39 epulās tamquam opōnōs40 bovēs.40 Tum intellegēs quī voluptātem maximē sequantur, ēos minimē consequī41; iucundītātemque42 esset in dēsideriō,44 non ēn satietātē.45 (Cicero, Tīscūlaeae Disputātiōnēs 5.34.97–98 and 100, excerpts)

15. THEMISTOCLES; FAME AND EXPEDIENCY

Themistocles fertur4 Themistocles' report1 Seriphios2 cūdīm in īūriō3 respondisse, cum ille dēxissēt nōn ēun suā sed patriae gloriā splendōrem4 assecūtum5; "Nec her-

---

7 ēsuriō (4), be hungry
8 Which Egyptian king of this name is unknown.
9 ēdē, -ere, ēdī, ēsum, eat (cp. edible)
10 per-agro (1), wander through
11 Aegyptus, -ī, m., Egypt
12 comēs, -itis, m., companion
13 cōnsequor
14 cibārius ... pānis, ordinary (coarse) bread; pānis, -is, m.
15 ferō here = report, say
16 contentē, strenuously, adv. from contendō, struggle
17 it had been asked of him, he had been asked
18 quō, regularly used instead of mō to introduce a purp.
19 obsōlētūs (1), buy provisions, here = provide (an appetite)
20 famēs, -īs, f., hunger
21 vīctūs, -īs, living, mode of living, food
22 phālitās, -ārum, public meals (for Spartan citizens of military age)
23 ubi = among the Lacedaemonians
24 sūdōr, -ōris, m., sweat
25 at the Eurotas (Europōs, -ns, m., river on which Sparta was located)
26 sītīs, -īs, f., thirst
27 epulās, -ārum, banquet
28 condītūs (4), season, spice
29 sūdōr (1), sweat
30 ructūs (1), belch
31 īūriō (4), season, spice
32 opōnōs, -ās, -um, fertile, fine; bōvīs, bovis, m., ox
33 cōnsequor, follow up, gain
34 iucundītās, -ātis, f., pleasure, charm
35 mō, 21 above; ēnum = food
36 dēsideriō, -ī, desire
37 satietās, -ātis, f., abundance, satisfy
38 re; seriphios, -ii, inhabitant of Seriphos, a small island in the Aegean Sea.
39 assequor = adsequor, gain, attain
40 For more about Themistocles and Arētides see selections 19 and 20 below.)
41 is said, is reported
42 splendōr, -ōris, m., distinction, honor
43 Assequor = adsequor, gain, attain
cule," inquit, "si ego Seriphius essem, nec tu, si Atheniensis esses, clarus umquam fuisset." (Cicero, De Senectute, 3.8)

5 Themistocles, post victoriam eius bellii quod cum Persis fuit, dixit in consilio sse habere consilium rei publicae salutare, sed id se nnon opus esse.11 Postulavit ut aliquem populus dare quicum communicaret. Da-tus est Aristides. Huic ille (dixit) classem Lacedaemoniorum, quae subducta esset ad Gythium, clam incendis posse, quo facto frangit Lacedaemoniorum opes necesse esset.22 Quod Aristides cum audisset, in consilio magna exspectatione venit dixitque perutilis esse consilium quod Themistocles adferret, sed minime honestum. Haque Athenienses, quod honestum non esset, id ne utile quidem puluverunt, totanque eam rem, quam ne audierant quidem, auctore Aristide repudiaverunt. (Cicero, De Officiis 3.11.48-49)

16. GET THE TUSCULAN COUNTRY HOUSE READY

Tullius S.D. Terentiae Suae

17. LIVY ON THE DEATH OF CICERO

M. Cicero sub adventum tria triumvirorum cesserat urbe... Primo in Tusculanum fitig; inde transversis itineribus in Formiänum, ut ab Caietâ nāve conçènsūrus, proficiscitum. Unde aliquotiens in altum pro-vec tum, cum modo venti adversi retulissent, modo ipse iactātiōnem nāvis... patī nōn possēt, taedium tandem eum et fugae et vitae cēpit, regressusque ad superiorem villam... “Moriar,” inquit, “in patriā saepe servavit.” Satis cōnstat servōs fortiter fidēliterque parātōs suisse ad dimicandum, ipsum déponi lecticam et quiētōs patī quod sors iniqua cōgeret iussisse. Prōminent ex lecticā praebeanique immōtam cervicēm caput praeda est.  

Manus quoque scriptisse in Antonium aliud exprobantēs, praeclē- runt. Ita relātum caput ad Antonium, iussūque eis inter duās manus in Rōstrī posītum, ubi ille consūl, ubi saepe cōnsulāris, ubi eō ipsō anno adversus Antonium... (qua quā nulla unquam hūmāna vox) cum admi-rātiōne eloquentiae auditus fuerat. Vix attollentes prae lacrimīs oculōs, homīnēs intuēnt trucidāta membra eius poterant. Vixit tres et sexāgintā annōs... Vir magnus, aee, memorabilis fuit, et in culis laudēs persecuendās Cicerōne laudātōre opus fuerit. (Livy I.20.50)
18. Miltiades and the Battle of Marathon

Eisdem temporei Persarum rex Dareus, ex Asia in Europam exercitus traelcto, Scythis bellum infferre decravit. Pontem fccit in Histros flumine, qui a copiis traduceret. Eius pontis, dum ipse abesset, custodes reliquit principes quos secum ex Ioni et Aeolide duxerat; quibus singularum uribus perpetua dederat imperia. Sic enim facillime putavit se Graecam linguam loquentem qui Asian incoherent sub sua retenturum potestate, si amicis suis oppida tuenda tradidisset. In hcc fuit tum numerus Miltiades. Hic, cum creber adferrent uinum et rem gere Darenum premique a Scythis, hortatus est pontis custodes nec a Fortuna datam occasionem liberandae Graeciae dimitterent.

Nam si cum eis copiis, quas secum transportarit, interisset Dareus, non solum Europam fore tum, sed etiam eos qui Asian incoherent Graeci genero liberos a Persarum futuros dominatio et periculo. Id facile effecti posse; ponte enim rescissum regem ferro vel impit patiis paucis diembus interitterat. Ad hoc consilium cum pleisque ac-

1. 490 B.C., the first major battle of the Persian wars and one of the most illustrious victories in the apparently unwending conflict between democracies and autocracies (despotisms); the relatively few Athenians, practically alone, against the hordes of the Persian autocracy.

2. Europa, -ae, Europe.

3. traelcto, -ere, -ieci, -iectus, transfer

4. Scythae, -arum, m., the Scythians, a nomadic people of southeastern Europe; Scythis, dat., with compound vbs.

5. bellum in ferro (-ferro, -tulii, -tutus), make war upon, + dat.

6. Histria, -triae, the Danube

7. quii, rel. adv. instead of rel. pron., where, by which, referring to pontem

8. trael ( = traelis)-duc. Why the subj. in the rel. cl.?

9. ab-sum, be away, be absent; absesset, subj. of implied ind. state., the thought in his mind being; “while I shall be away”

10. as guards

11. Ionia and Aeolis, Greek sections of Asia Minor

12. singulari, -ae, - a (pl.), separate, one each

13. e, acc., subject of retenturum (esse)

14. the Greek-speaking peoples, obj. of retenturum

15. incoli, -ere, -itii, inhabit

16. retenturum (esse), re-tineto

17. oppidum, -i, town, occasionally city

18. tuenda, (the towns) to be protected = the protection of the towns (tueor, -erii, tutus sum, look at, protect)
ASHBOARD OF DOCUMENT 25

37 Histiaeus, -t, tyrant of Miletus in Asia Minor
38 adeō, adv., so, to such a degree
39 ab-horreo, -ere, -ui, shrink from, be averse to
40 confirmō (1), strengthen
41 subject of confirmō
42 rursus, adv., again
43 dēmigrō (1), depart (ēg migrate)
44 conjunctive use of rel.
45 regō, -ere, -ēg, -ēctum, reduce
46 flingentēs, -ae, -a, 500
47 comparāvit here = strong form of parāvit
48 cf. (= class), dat. with compounds
49 praefecō, + dat., put in charge or command of
50 Dātis, -idís, acc. Dātīm, Dātis, a general; Arta-
51 phēnes, -is, Artaphernes, nephew of Dārnis
52 duces, -ēris, m., foot-soldier
53 equs, -onis, m., horseman
54 interserō, -ere, en, allege
55 Lacedaemon, -onis, f., Lacedaemonia, Sparta
56 Lacedaemoniīs, -arum, m., the Ionians, a Greek people inhabiting
57 shore of central Greece
58 Sardēs, -idum, acc. Sardīs, Sardis, capital of the Per-
59 sian province of Lydia in western Asia Minor
60 expugnō (1), take by storm
61 sun, refers to Sardis
62 praefectus, -t, commander, deputy
63 regius, -a, -um, royal
64 Euboea, -ae, Euboea, a large island off the eastern
65 Sardes, Sardis, capital of the Persian province of Lydia in western Asia Minor
66 expugno (1), take by storm
67 sun, refers to Sardis
68 praefectus, -t, commander, deputy
69 regius, -a, -um, royal
70 place
71 cushion, -is, cushion, thousands
72auxilium, -ac, -a, drive, bring to land
73 Eretria, -ae, Eretria, a city of the western central
cost of Euboea
74 ab-ripō = ēripō; abreptōs . . . misērant, they carried
away and sent to
75onde, adv., from that place
76 Attica, -ae, Attica, district in central Greece of which
the capital was Athens (somewhat unusually called
an oppidum in the next sentence)
77 campus, -i, field, plain
78 Marathon, -onis, acc. -ōnis, f., Marathon
79 circeō, adv., about
80 passus, -ūs, pace (ēa, S'); mīla passuum, thousands
of paces = miles
81 tumultūs, -ūs, disturbance, uprising
82 propinquus, -a, -um, near, neighboring
83 per-movere, move thoroughly, trouble
84 absquān, adv., nowhere
85 Philippus, -i, Philipppus, an Athenian courier (cursor,
ōris, m., runner)
86 hēmerodromus, -i (-dromus, Gk. nom. pl.), day run-
er (Gk. word), professional runner. Herodotus
says that Philippus (or Philippides) covered the
140 miles between Athens and Sparta in two days
Quī agrees with hēmerodromus rather than generis
since a rel. pron. agrees with a pred. noun rather
than with the antecedent.
87 Lacedaemoniōs, -onis, f., Lacedaemonia, Sparta
runt ut nuntiaret quam celerrimō opus esse auxiliō. Domī autem creant 39
decem praeōres, quī exercīti praeecessent, in eīs Miltiadem; inter quōs
magna fuit contentio utrum moenibus sē défenderent an obviam frent
hostibus aciēque décererent. Unus Miltiādēs maxime mītēbātur ut
primō tempore castra fīrent...  40

Hoc tempore nulla civītās Athēnēnsibus auxiliō fuit praeter Plataēn-
sēs; ea mīle nīsit militum. Itaque hōrum adventū decem mīlia armā-
tōrum complēta sunt, quaē manūs mītībīlī flagrābat pugnāndī cupidi-
tāte; quō factum est ut plūs quam collegae Miltiādēs valēret.  41

Eius ergō auctorītāte impulsi Athēnēnsēs cōpiās ex urbe dūxērunt
locōque idōnē castra fīcerunt. Deīn postérō die sub montīs radīci-
būs acī regiōne instruēt nōn apertissimā—namque arborēs
multīs locīs erant rārēs—proelium commānērunt hoc cōnsiliō ut et mon-
tium altītūdine tegertur et arborem tractū exitūs hostium im-
pedītur, nē multitudine clauderetur. Dātis, etī nōn æquum locum
vidēbat suōs, tamen frēitus numerō cōpiārum suārum cōnfigēre cupiebat,
ceque magis quod, priusquam Lacedaemonīn subsidiō venfrent, dimi-
cēre útile arbitrābātur.

78 opus est + abl. (of means), there is need of, an imper.
construction in which opus remains indecl.; opus esse, inf. in ind. state. with auxiliō in abl.
79 creant, historical pres.
80 praeōtōris, m., called stratēgoi, generals, by the Athenians
81 praemun + dat., be in charge of; why subj?
82 contentīō, -ōnis, f., controversy
83 obviam (adv.) ire + dat., go to meet
84 aciēs, -ē, line of battle
85 alone, i.e. of the ten generals
86 nūtor, -ē, nūxus sunt, strive labor
87 that a camp should be made — to take the field
88 dat. of purp. (S.S.)
89 Plataēnsēs, -īnī, m. pl., the men of Plataea, a city
in Boeōtia just over the border from Attica
90 mīle here — a noun with gen. of whole militum. This
is regular with mīle but uncommon with mille.
91 adventūs, -ūs, approach
92 armātī, -ōrum, armed men
93 complētī, -ē, -plēvī, -plētum, fill out, complete
94 mūralīlis, -ē, wonderful, extraordinary; modifies cu-
piditāte
95 flagrō (1), burn, be excited
96 because of which = and because of this
97 it happened that
98 collegēa, -ae, m., colleague
99 plūs... valēret, he had power more than = he had
more power or influence than, he prevailed over.
valēret, why subj?
100 impellō, -ere, -pullī, -pulsum, impel
101 locōs, place where, no prep. necessary with locōs
102 dein = deinde
103 posterus, -a, -um, next following
104 rādīx, -īcis, f. root, base
105 rēgōl, -ōnis, f., region
106 instruō, -ere, -struxī, -structum, draw up (battle line)
107 interlocked word order: aciē instruēt (in) regiōnem non
apertissimā; apertūs, -a, -um, open
108 numquē, conj., more emphatic form of num
109 rīrūs, -a, -us, scattered: there were scattered trees
110 proelium commānēre, join battle
111 altitūdō, -īnis, f., height
112 tegōl, -ero, -fēxi, -fēctum, cover, protect
113 tractūs, -ūs, dragging
114 equitātūs, -ūs, cavalry
115 multītūdō, -ūnis, f., large number
116 claudō, here enclose, surround
117 locum (esse) non æquum suōs
118 frēitus, -a, -um, + abl., relying on
119 cōnfigō, -ere, -fīxi, -fīctum, fight (p. conflict)
120 ēo, adv., on that account
121 prīusquam and antequam, before, + indcl. denote an
actual fact; + subj. denote anticipation as here:
before they could come
122 dat.
Itaque in aciem pedium centum (milia), equitum decem milia pròdūxit proeliumque committit. In quò tantò plúris virtúte valuérunt Athenienses ut decemplicem numerum hostium pròfìgìrunt, adeòque eòs perterrùrunt ut Persae nón castra sed nàvés petierint. Quà pugnà nihil adhuc existit nóbilium, nulla enim unquam tam exiguà manus tantás opés pròstravit. (Nepos, Miltiades 3–5, excerpta)

19. THEMISTOCLES AND THE BATTLE OF SALAMIS

Themistoclèis ad (bellum Corcyraeum) gerendum prætor a populò factus, nón sòlum præsens bellò sed etiam reliquis tempore fercidorum red­didit civitátem. Nam cum pecúnia pública, quae ex mètallis redìbat, largi­tione magistráti quantoquot annòs interìret, ille persuaèsit populò ut eà pecúnià classis centum nàvium aedificaretur. Quà celeriter effecta, primum Corýcraeos frégit, dcìnde marítimos praedónes cónsectando mare tútum redidit. In quò... (continuum)

1 Laconia. 
2 Themistocles, a, -i, Themistocles, a talented Athenian politician. 
3 Corcyraeus, a, -um, Corcyraean; Corcyra, a large is­land off the northwest coast of Greece. Actually Nepos is in error about Themistocles' command in the Corcyraean affair but he is correct about the tremendous importance of Themistocles' big-navy policy.

1480 B.C. Coreyraeus, -a, -urn, Corcyraen; Coreyra, a large is­land off the northwest coast of Greece. Actually Nepos is in error about Themistocles' command in the Corcyraean affair but he is correct about the tremendous importance of Themistocles' big-navy policy.

4 præsens, gen. sentis, present
5 reliquis, -a, -um, remaining, rest of
6 mètallum, -ì, a mine, silver mines at Laurium in Attica south of Athens
7 largi­tio, -onis, f. generosity, liberality
8 magistráti, -onis, civil office; civil officer, magistrate
9 quantoquot, adv., annually
10 inter-eòs, be lost, perish (cp. peredu); interiret, subj. introduced by cum; the subject is pecúnià.
11 aedificò (1), build (cp. edificio)
12 quìl (classis)
13 frango, -ere, frégì, fràctum, break, overcome
14 marítimus (-a, -um = Eng. -a mare) praedó (-onis, m., robber) = pirate; obj. of cónsectando
15 cónsector (1), pursue, hound (cp. consuecor)
16 in (doing) which
17 peritus, -a, -um, + gen., skilled in, obj. complement
18 mètallum, -ì; cp. mètalis
19 quantoque saluís, dat. of peripr. with a dat. of ref., Graeciae (S.S.)
20 universus, -a, -um, entire, whole, as a whole
21 Persicus, -a, -um, Persian; the Second Persian War
22 Xerxes, -is or -i, m., Xerxes, sun of Darius and king of the Persians, 485–465 B.C.
23 mèf et terrì (or terrì maríque) abl. of place where, without a prep., regular in this formula
24 invádò, -ere, -vatì, -vásum, move against, invade
25 nàvium longárum, of 1,200 men-of-war; his fleet was of 1,200 ships = his fleet consisted of...
quam duo millia onerarium sequabantur. Terrestrial autem exercitus septingenti (millia) peditum, equitum quadringenti millia fuerunt.

Caius de adventu curam faram in Graeciam esset perlata et maximè Athenienses peti dicerentur propter pugnam Marathôniam, misérunt Delphos consultum quidnam facerent dē rebus suis. Deliberantibus Pythia respondit ut moenibus lignis sē munirent. Id respónum quo velēret cum intellegere nēmō, Themistocles persuásit consilium esse Apollinis ut in navēs sē suaque confírrent: cum enim a deō significāt mūrum lignum. Tali consilīi probātō, addunt ad superiores (navēs) totidem navēs trirēmēs, suaque omnia quae moverint poterant partim Salamina, partim Troczēna déportant. Arcem sacerdotibus pacuiscum maiores nātō ad sacra prōcuranda tradunt; reliquum oppidum relinquent.

Huius consilii plerisque civitatis displacebant et in terrā dimitcār magis placēbat. Itaque missi sunt deliberāt cum Leonīda, Lacedaemoniorum rége, quī Thermopylás occuparent longiussique barbaros prō-
At classis communis Graeciae trecentarum nāvium, in quā ducentae nāvibus adversāriōrum, Eubocean superasset, ancipitis premērentur periculō. Quō factum est ut ab Artemisio discederent et ex adversum Athenās apud Salaminā classem suam constituerent. At Xerxes, Thermopylēs expugnavit, protinus accessit astū, idquō, nullīs dēfendentibus, interfectī sacerdotibus quōs in arce invenerat, incendium delevit. Cuius flamma perterrit, classiarius cum manere non auderent et primum hortarentur ut domos discederent mōnibusque se defendant, Themistocles nūns restitit et universos possedisse aiebat, dispersōs testābātur perītorōs; idque Eurybiades, regis Lacedaemoniorum, qui tum summae imperii praeerat, fore adfirmabat. Quem cum minus quam vellet inoveret, noctū de servis suis habuit fidēllissimum ad regem misit ut nuntiaret suis adversāriōrum.
20. ARISTIDES THE JUST

Aristides, Lysimachus filius, Atheniænsis, aequalis41 fuit Themistocle54 atque cum eō dē principātū5 contenit ... In his autem cognitum est quantō6 antistāret7 eloquentia innocentiae.8 Quamquam enim adeo exellēbat9 Aristides abstinentiā10 ut ūnus post hominum memoriam ... cognōmine11 "Iūstus" sīt appellātus, tamen a Themistoclē collabela factus12 testūlā13 illā14 exsilīō15 decem annōrum16 multātus est.17

1 aequalis, -i, m., an equal in age, a contemporary
2 Themistocles, here gen. of possession
3 principātus, -ōs, first place, leadership
4 ablat. of degree of difference (S.S.) depending on the idea of comparison in antistāret: how much
5 antistō, -ère, -stēu, stand before = excel
6 innocentiā, -ae, harmlessness; integrity. Why dat.?
7 exsilīō, -ere, -ēī, -celum, excel; exellēbat: note that quamquam (although) is used with the indicative.
8 abstinentiā, -ae, self-restraint, especially in matters involving public funds, uprightness; abstinentiā, abl. of specification (S.S.).
9 cognōmen, -inis, n., here = epithet, appellative. Of the three regular Roman names (praenomen, nōmen, cognōmen) the cognōmen (cp cognōscō) seems to have originated as a kind of nickname.
10 collabela, -ierī, -factus sum, be overthrown, be ruined
11 testūlā, -ae, little potsherds; ostracism; testūlā abl. of accordance or perhaps means Look up the interesting history of ostracism, a political safety valve against tyranny.
12 aestātus, in the unusual position of following its noun = that famous
13 exsilīō, abl. of penalty (= a form of abl. of means)
14 decem annōrum, gen. of description
15 multō (1), punish

1 Aristides, -is, m., Aristides, Athenian statesman and general
2 Lysimachus, -i, Lysimachus
Qui quidem cum intellegeret reprimi\textsuperscript{18} concitâtam\textsuperscript{19} multitūdinem non posse, cēdēnsque animadvertisset quendam scribentem ut patriâ pelle-rētur,\textsuperscript{20} quæsīsse ab eō\textsuperscript{31} dīcitur quārē id faceret aut quid Aristidēs commississet cūr\textsuperscript{22} tantā poenā dignus ducērētur. Cui ille respondit sē ignōrāb\textsuperscript{3} Aristidēn, sed sībī non placērē\textsuperscript{24} quod tam cupīdē laborāsset ut praetēr ēteros "lūstus" appellērērūt. Hic decem annōrum lēgitimām\textsuperscript{25} poenām non pertīlīt. Nam postquam\textsuperscript{26} Xerxes in Graeciam dēscendit,\textsuperscript{27} sextō fērē anno quām\textsuperscript{28} erat expulsus, populi sēlītō\textsuperscript{29} in patriam restitūtus est.\textsuperscript{30}

Interfuit\textsuperscript{31} autem pugnae nāvāī apud Salaminā quae facta est priusquam\textsuperscript{32} poenā liberārērūt. Idem\textsuperscript{33} prae­tor fuit Athēniēnsium apud Plataēās\textsuperscript{34} in proelīō quō fūsus\textsuperscript{35} (est) barbarōrum exercitus Mardoniusque\textsuperscript{36} interfactus est... Huius aequitātē\textsuperscript{37} factum est,\textsuperscript{38} cum in commūnī classe esset Graeciae simul cum Pausaniā\textsuperscript{39} (quō duce\textsuperscript{40} Mardonius erat fugātus\textsuperscript{41}), ut summa imperī\textsuperscript{42} marītīmī ab Lacedaemoniūs trānsferrērūt ad Athēniēnsēs; namque ante id tempus et maiī et terrā duēs erant Lacedaemoniī. Tum autem et intemperantīā\textsuperscript{43} Pausaniāe et iūstitiā factum est Aristidēs ut omnēs fērē civitātēs Graeciae ad Athēniēnsium sociētātem\textsuperscript{44} sē applicārēt\textsuperscript{45} et adversus barbarōs hōs duēs dēligērēt sībī.

Quōs\textsuperscript{46} quō\textsuperscript{47} facilitūs repellērēnt,\textsuperscript{48} si forte\textsuperscript{49} bellum renovārēt\textsuperscript{50} cōnā­rentur, ad classēs aedificandās exercitusque comparandōs\textsuperscript{51} quantum pecūnīa quaeque\textsuperscript{52} civitās daret, Aristidēs delēctus est qui constitueret,\textsuperscript{54} eiusque

\textsuperscript{18} re-prinmō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, press back, check
\textsuperscript{19} concitō (1), arouse, excite
\textsuperscript{20} jussīve noun cl., writing that he should be driven out
\textsuperscript{21} eō, i.e., the quendam above
\textsuperscript{22} (what he had committed) that
\textsuperscript{23} ignōrō (1), not know, be unequainted with
\textsuperscript{24} sībī non placērē (impers.), it was not pleasing to
\textsuperscript{25} lēgitimā (1), by law, legal
\textsuperscript{26} postquam, conj. + perf. latd. after
\textsuperscript{27} dēscendō, -ere, -scendi, -scēnām, descend, march on
\textsuperscript{28} quam = postquam; post sometimes omitted after an
\textsuperscript{29} scēnām, -i, decree (cp. plebiscite)
\textsuperscript{30} restituō, -ere, -stitūi, -stitūtum, restore
\textsuperscript{31} inter-sum + dat., be present at, take part in
\textsuperscript{32} prīsquam + subj.
\textsuperscript{33} the same man = he also
\textsuperscript{34} Plataeae, -ae, Plataea
\textsuperscript{35} fūscūm, -ere, fūscī, fūscum, pour out, rout
\textsuperscript{36} Mardonius, -i, Mardonius, Persian general under
\textsuperscript{37} Xerxes in command of the "barbarians"
\textsuperscript{38} aequitās, -ītās, f., equity, fairness; aequitāte, abl. of
\textsuperscript{39} cause (S.S.)
\textsuperscript{40} factum est ... ut summa imperī trānsferrērūt, it happened that the chief command was transferred;
\textsuperscript{41} fugō (1), put to flight, rout; not to be confused with
\textsuperscript{42} L. l. 19 n. 97–98
\textsuperscript{43} intemperantia, -ae, intemperance, arrogance
\textsuperscript{44} sociētās, -ītās, f., confederacy, alliance
\textsuperscript{45} applicō (1), attach
\textsuperscript{46} dēligō, -ere, -legi, -lectum = legō
\textsuperscript{47} = barbarōs
\textsuperscript{48} L. l. 14 n. 18
\textsuperscript{49} re-pellō
\textsuperscript{50} forte, adv., by chance
\textsuperscript{51} fīnovus (S.S.)
\textsuperscript{52} Both gerundive phrases belong in the quantum cl.
\textsuperscript{53} quaeque civitās: quaeque, f. adj. form of quisque
\textsuperscript{54} constitūo, -ere, -stitūi, -stitūtum, establish, decide; qui constitueret, rel. cl. of purp., which has as its
\textsuperscript{55} obj. the quantum ... daret cl.
arbitrium\textsuperscript{35} quingenta\textsuperscript{36} et sexagena\textsuperscript{39} talenta quattuorannis Delum\textsuperscript{57} sunt conlatâ; id enim commune aerarium\textsuperscript{58} esse voluerunt. Quae omnis pecunia postero\textsuperscript{59} tempore Athenâs tранslatâ est. Hic quâ\textsuperscript{60} fuerit\textsuperscript{61} abstinentia, nihil est certior indicium\textsuperscript{62} quam quod,\textsuperscript{63} cum tantis rebus praefuisset,\textsuperscript{64} in tantà pati pertâ tâcessit,\textsuperscript{65} ut quin\textsuperscript{66} efficiatur vix refiquerit. Quo\textsuperscript{67} factum est ut filiae eius public\textsuperscript{68} alerentur et de communis aerarii dóitus\textsuperscript{69} datis collocarentur.\textsuperscript{70} (Nepos, Aristidès, excerpts)

21. Timoleon\textsuperscript{1}

Dión\textsuperscript{2} Syracusís interfectó, Dionysius\textsuperscript{3} rursum Syracisátarum potius est.\textsuperscript{4} Cuíus adversârii opem ad Corinthiát\textsuperscript{5} petiérunt ducemque, quo in belló útere- rentur, postulárun. Hic Timoleon\textsuperscript{4} missus incredibili\textsuperscript{6} felicitate\textsuperscript{6} Dionysium totà Sicilia dépulit.\textsuperscript{6} Cum (eum) interficere posset, nóluit, tátõque\textsuperscript{10} ut Corinthiát\textsuperscript{11} perveniret effectit.\textsuperscript{12} quod utrúrumque\textsuperscript{13} Dionysiorum opibus Corinthiát saepe adiutá fuerant . . . camque praeláram victóriam dúcēbat in quá plús esset clementia quam crudelitatis\textsuperscript{14} . . .

Quibus rebus cónfectis,\textsuperscript{15} cum propter diútúrnitatem\textsuperscript{16} belló nón solum regionés\textsuperscript{17} sed etiam urbés désertás\textsuperscript{18} vidéret, conquíasvis\textsuperscript{19} . . . colonós.\textsuperscript{20}

Civibus veteribus sua\textsuperscript{21} restituit, novís\textsuperscript{22} belló vacuëfactás\textsuperscript{23} possessionés\textsuperscript{24}

\textsuperscript{35} arbitrium, -i, judgment, decision; arbitrō, what kind of abl?
\textsuperscript{36} quingenta and sexagena (distributive numerals) talenta quattuorannis, 450 talents each year
\textsuperscript{37} Délos, -i, f. Delos, smaial island in the center of the Cyclades in the Aegean
\textsuperscript{38} aerarium, -i, treasury
\textsuperscript{39} posterus, -a, -um, coming after (post), later
\textsuperscript{40} quâ abstinentiâ, abl. of description, of what integrity
\textsuperscript{41} perf. subj. ind. quest, depending on indicium
\textsuperscript{42} indicium, -i, indication, proof
\textsuperscript{43} the fact that
\textsuperscript{44} prae-sum + dat, be in charge of
\textsuperscript{45} dé-céndo, depart, die
\textsuperscript{46} quâ, adv, whereas
\textsuperscript{47} public\textsuperscript{2}, adv, at public expense
\textsuperscript{48} dös, döös, f. dowry
\textsuperscript{49} collocō (1), place, settle in marriage

1 Timoleon, who came from a noble family at Corinth, was a great champion of liberty against tyranny. By 334 B.C. he was in Sicily fighting the Carthaginians, expelling tyrants, and establishing democracies.

2 Dion, Dionís, m., Dion, relative and friend of the tyrant Dionysius the Elder. With the aid of Plato he tried—but in vain—to give a noble pattern to the life of Dionysius the Younger, who followed his father in tyranny. After finally exiling Dionysius the Younger from Syracuse, he himself ruled tyrannically and was assassinated in 335 B.C.

3 Dionysius, -i, Dionysius the Younger

4 potior + gen, or abl.

5 Corinthiás, -um, Corinthians

6 Timoleón, -ontis, m., Timoleon

7 incredibilis, -e, incredible

8 felicitas, -atis, f., happiness, good fortune

9 dé-pello

10 tátō, adv, safely

11 Corinthiás, -i, Corinth, on the Isthmus of Corinth

12 L. A. 8 n. 20–21

13 uterque, utraque, utrumque, each; here = both

14 crudelitas, -atis, f., cruelty

15 These words refer not only to the expulsion of Dionysius, but also to a great victory over the Carthaginians in Sicily as recounted in the omitted passages.

16 diúturnitās, -ātis, f., long duration

17 regió, -ōnis, -is, region; here = country districts

18 désertus, -a, -um, deserted

19 con-quitō, -ote, -quisī, -quisitum (quaerō), seek out, gather together

20 collāsus, -i, settler, colonist

21 sua, a, pl.

22 novis (colūnis)

23 vacuē-facio, make empty

24 possessīō, -onis, f., possession, property
Hic cum aetate iam prövectus esset, sine aliqua morbo quietina, quum calamitatem de re quidem, cum quibus laudes audiret praedicari, numquam alius dixit quam si in ea re maximè dis agere gratias quod, cum Sicilium recreare constitissent, tum sed potissimum docem esse voluissent. Nihil enim rerum humanarum sine deorum nomine geri putabat.

Proelia maxima nati̇l̄ suō die fecit omnia; quō factum est ut eius diem nati̇lem festum habēret universa Sicilia ... Cum quidam Démaenetus in contione populi dē rēbus gestīs eius dētrahae coepisset ac nōnūlla invehēretur in Timoleonta, dixit nunc demum sē vōlē essē damnātuī; namque hoc ā dis immortālibus semper precūtum ut tālem libertātem restitueret Syrācūsānīs in quā cuivīs licēret dē quō vellet impūne dicere.

**Notes:**
- **divisit**: divide, distribute
- **fānus**: shrine, temple
- **privatus**: private citizen; as a private citizen, he...
Hic cum diem supremum obisset, publice a Syracusanis in gymnasiō, quod Timoleontēm appellātur, tótā celebrante Sicilia, sepultus est. (Nepos, Timoleōn 2–5, excerpts)

22. HORACE’S “CARPE DIEM”

Tū nē quaesieris1—scire nefās2—quem mihi, quem3 tibi finem dī dederint, Leuconoē,4 nec Babyloniorum temptāris5 numerōs.6 Ut melius,7 quidquid erit, patī.

Spem longam8 resecēs.9 Dum loquimur, fugēris invidā10 aetās. Carpe diem, quam minimum11 crēdula12 posterō.13 (Horace, Odes 1.11, excerpts)

23. INTEGER VĪTAE

Integer1 vīiae scelerisque purus2 non eget Mauris3 iaculis4 necque arcū5 nec venēnātus6 gravidus7 sagittis,8 Fusce,

pharetra.10

...
Namque mē silvā lupus\(^{11}\) in Sabīnā\(^{12}\)

dum meam cantō\(^{13}\) Lalagēn\(^{14}\) et utrā

terminum\(^{15}\) cūris vagor\(^{16}\) expedīris\(^{17}\)

fūgit\(^{18}\) inermem.\(^{19}\)

... Pōne mē pigrīs\(^{20}\) ubi nīlla cambīs

arbor aestīvā\(^{21}\) recreātur aurā;\(^{22}\)

quod\(^{23}\) latus mundī nebulae\(^{24}\) malusque\(^{25}\)

Iuppiter urget\(^{26}\);

pōne sub currū\(^{27}\) nīnum propinquī

sōlis in terrā dominūs negāta:

dulce\(^{28}\) rīdentem Lalagēn amābō

dulce loquentem.

(Horace, Odes 1.22.1-4, 9-12, 17-24)

24. AUREA MEDIOCRITĀS—THE GOLDEN MEAN

Rēctūs\(^{1}\) vivēs, Licini,\(^{2}\) neque altum\(^{3}\)

semper urgendō\(^{4}\) neque, dum procellās\(^{5}\)

cautus\(^{6}\) horrescēs,\(^{7}\) nīnum premendō

litus\(^{8}\) inīquum.\(^{9}\)

11 lupus, -i, wolf

12 Sabīnus, -a, -um, Subine; cp. L.A. 10

13 cantō (i), sing about; dum + historical pres. to denote continued action in past time: while I was singing about

14 Lalagē, -ē, acc. Lalagēn (Gr. noun), f., Lalage, name of a girl—a most mellifluous name!

15 terminus, -i, boundary (cp. terminus, term, terminate)

16 vagor (1), wander, ramble (cp. vagary, vagabond)

17 expediō (4), disentangle, set free; cūris expeditūs, abl. abs.

18 Note the interlocked word order of this stanza, which is so characteristic of Lat. poetry: mē (obj. of fūgit) at the beginning modified by inermem at the end; silvā in Sabīnā, place where phrase interrupted by lupus subject of fūgit; all this separated from the main vb. by a double dum cl.

19 inermis, -e, unarmed; cp. integer vitae ... nōn eget lacūlīs.

20 pīger, -gra, -grum, lazy, sluggish, torpid (because frozen), modifying cambīs (cambīs, -ūs, field) in a place where phrase without a prep. (the omission of a prep. is common in poetry). The order of the thought is: pōne mē (in) pigrīs cambīs ubi ... 

21 = (or put me) in eo latere mundī quod ...; latus, -oris, n., side, region

22 nebula, -ae, mist, fog

23 malus = inclement, because Jupiter is here god of the weather

24 urgetō, -ère, urse, urge, press, oppress

25 currus, -ūs, chariot

26 dulce, poetic for dulciter. These exquisitely mellifluous last lines somewhat onomatopoetically suggest the dulcet timbre of Lalage's voice and laugh.

24

METER: Sapphic stanza.

1 rēctūs, adv., rightly, well, suitably

2 Licini, voc. of Licinius, a person who seems to have been wanting in the virtue of moderation

3 the deep (sea)

4 i.e., heading out to the deep

5 procella, -ae, storm, gale

6 cautus, -a, -um, cautious, circumspect; with dum ... horrescēs, while you in your caution ... 

7 horrescō, -ere, horrific, begin to shudder at, begin to dread

8 altum and litus = extremes

9 inīquus, -a, -um, unequal; here = treacherous
5 Aurum\(^{10}\) quisquis mediocritatem\(^{11}\)
diligat, t\(\acute{u}\)tus\(^{12}\) caret obsol\(\acute{e}\)ti\(^{13}\)
sordibus\(^{14}\) tecti, caret invidenda\(^{15}\)
s\(\acute{o}\)brius\(^{16}\) aula.\(^{17}\)
Saepius ven\(t\)is agitatur\(^{18}\) ingens
10 pinus\(^{19}\) et celsae\(^{20}\) graviore cas\(\acute{t}\)i\(^{21}\)
decidunt\(^{22}\) tur\(r\)\(\grave{e}\)s\(^{23}\) fertuntque\(^{24}\) summ\(\grave{\i}m\)os
fulgura\(^{25}\) mont\(\grave{e}\)s.
Sp\(\acute{e}\)rat\(^{26}\) infest\(\grave{\u}\)s,\(^{27}\) metuit secundis\(^{28}\)
alteram\(^{29}\) sortem\(^{30}\) bene praeparatum\(^{31}\)
15 pectus.\(^{32}\) Ín\(f\)örm\(e\)s\(^{33}\) hiem\(\acute{e}\)s\(^{34}\) red\(ó\)cit
L\(\grave{u}\)p\(p\)pet\(\acute{r}\)\({\grave{e}}\)\(^{35}\); idem\(^{36}\)
summovet.\(^{37}\) N\(\breve{n}\)n, si male\(^{38}\) uunc, et òlim\(^{39}\)
sic erit: quondam\(^{40}\) cithara\(^{41}\) tacentem
suscit\(\acute{a}\)t\(^{42}\) M\(\breve{u}\)s\(\acute{a}\),\(^{43}\) neque semper
20 tendit\(^{44}\) Apoll\(\acute{o}\),\(^{45}\)
Rébus angust\(\breve{a}\)s\(^{46}\) anim\(\acute{o}\)sus\(^{47}\) atque

\(^{10}\)aurus, -\(\acute{a}\), -\(\acute{u}\)m, golden
11mediocritas, -\(t\)\(\grave{a}\)s, \(f\), moderation, the mean between extremes. \(N\)ote that \(H\)orace does not say that “mediocrity” is golden! The idea of (\(\acute{a}\)ur\(\acute{e}\)a) mediocritas was common in Gr. ethical thought, and \(A\)ristotle made it a cardinal virtue in his “Ethics.”
12t\(\breve{u}\)tus caret, secure (\(i\)n his philosophy of the “golden mean?”) he is free from . . .
13obsol\(\acute{e}\)ti, -\(\acute{a}\), -\(\acute{u}\)m, worn out, dilapidated
14sordes, -\(i\u\)m, pl., dirt, filth; sordibus, \(w\)hat kind of abl.?
15invidenda, sure to be envied
16s\(\acute{o}\)brius, -\(\acute{a}\), -\(\acute{u}\)m, sober-minded, moderate, in his sobriety
17aula, -\(\acute{a}\), palace
16agit\(\acute{a}\) (1), agitate, toss
19pinus, -\(\acute{a}\), -\(\acute{i}\)n, pine
20celsus, -\(\acute{a}\), -\(\acute{u}\)m, high, lofty
21casus, -\(\acute{a}\), -\(\acute{e}\), fall, destruction
22decidó, -ere, -cidi, fall down (cp. cadò)
23turris, -\(\acute{a}\), -\(\acute{e}\), tower
24ferio (4), strike
25fulgur, -\(\acute{e}\)ris, \(n\), lightning, thunderbolt
29anticipates, expects
37infestus, -\(\acute{a}\), -\(\acute{u}\)m, unsafe, dangerous, adverse; infestis (\(\acute{r}\)ébus) dat., lit.: for his adverse circumstances (= in adversity) he anticipates the other (= the opposite) fortune (sortem)
38secundis (\(\acute{r}\)ébus) balances infestis; for his favorable circumstances (= in prosperity) he apprehends the opposite fortune.
29alter, the other of two; here = the opposite
30sortis, sortis, \(f\), lot, fortune; sortem, \(o\)bj. of spérat and metuit
31pote-paró (1), make ready in advance, prepare: well prepared (by the philosophy of life which Horace is here enunciating)
32subject of spérat and metuit
33in\(f\)örm\(e\)s, -\(e\), shapeless, hideous, horrid
34hiem\(\acute{e}\), hiem\(\acute{i}\)s, \(f\), stormy weather, winter
35Jupiter as god of sky and weather
36idem, the same god = he also
37sum-moveó, remove, drive away, sc. hiem\(\acute{e}\)
38male (est), it is bad, things are bad
39et òlim, also in the future
40here = sometimes
41cithara, -\(\acute{a}\), lyre
42suscitó (1), arouse; suscitât, subject is Apolló
43M\(\breve{u}\)s\(\acute{a}\), -\(\acute{a}\), a Muse
44tendó, -ere, -tendi, -\(\acute{e}\)sum, stretch
45Apolló, -\(\acute{i}\)nis, \(m\), Apollo, god of the sun, prophecy, poetry, and music; also god of archery, pestilence, and medicine. Apollo has two aspects: happy and constructive (M\(\breve{u}\)s\(\acute{a}\)); unhappy and destructive (arcum).
46rébus angust\(\breve{a}\)s, abl. abs., when things are narrow (= difficult), i.e., in adversity
47anim\(\acute{o}\)sus, -\(\acute{a}\), -\(\acute{u}\)m (-\(\acute{u}\)sus, suffix = full of), spirited
fortis appāre⁴⁸; sapienter⁴⁹ idem⁵⁰
corrahēs⁴¹ ventō nimium secundō
turgida⁵² vēla.⁵³

(Horace, Odes 2.10)

25. LĀBUNTUR ANNĪ

Ēheu!⁴ fugācēs, Postume, Postume,
lābuntur⁴ annī; nec pietās⁴ moram
rūgis⁵ et Instanti⁴ senectae⁵
adseret indomitaque⁶ mortē.

Frūstrā⁸ cruentō⁹ Mārtē¹ carēbimus
frāctusque¹² rauči¹³ flīctibus¹⁴ Hadriae¹⁵;
frūstrāº per autumnōs¹⁶ nocentem
corporibus¹⁷ metēnus Austrum.¹⁸
Visendus¹⁹ āter²⁰ flūmine languidō²¹
Cocytos²² errāns et Danaī genus²³
Infāne²⁴ damnāitusque²⁵ longī
Sisyphus²⁶ Aeolidēs²⁷ labōris.²⁸

---

48 appareo, -ere, -o, -itum, show one's self; appare, an-
alyze the form carefully.
49 fugit, -ae, -um, if you are wise
50 see n. 36 above
51 contrahō, draw in, shorten
52 turgidus, -a, -um, swollen
53 vēlum, -i, sail

METER: Alcaic stanza.

1 ĕheu, cp. hēa. This sigh is emphasized by the repetition
of Postumus' name.
2 fugāx, gen. -ācis, fleeting
3 lūbon, -i, lūpus sum, slip, glide
4 pietas, -ātis, f., loyalty, devotion, piety
5 rūga, -ae, wrinkle (cp. corrugated)
6 instāns, gen. -antis, pressing, urgent
7 senecta, -ae = senectūs
8 indomitus, -a, -um, untamable, invincible
9 frūstrā, adv. in vain. What is the significance of its
emphatic position?
10 cruentus, -a, -um, bloody
11 Mārs, Māris, m. Mars, god of war; Mārtē, what
abl.?
12 rāgō, -ere, rēgī, rēctum, break
13 rauca, -ae, -um, hoarse, noisy
14 flōctus, -ūs, wave; frāctus flīctibus, broken waves =
breakers
15 Hadriā, -ae, m., Adriatic Sea
16 autumnus, -us, autumn, unhealthy part of the year be-
cause of the Sirocco
17 depends on nocentem
18 autumnus, ātrius the south wind, the Sirocco blowing from
the Sahara
19 visī, -ere, visī, visum, visit; visendus (est)
20 āter, ātra, ātrum, dark, modifying Cocytos
21 languidus, -a, -um, sluggish, weak
22 Cocytos, -i, m. Cocytus, the river of wailing, one of
the rivers surrounding Hades; Cocytus, Gk. nom.
23 Danaï genus, the offspring of Danaï, whose 49
doughters murdered their husbands and in Hades
were punished by having to pour water eternally
into a sieve
24 Infānīs, -ae, infamous
25 damnō (1) condemn
26 Sisyphos, -i, Sisyphus, who was condemned eternally
to roll up a hill a stone which rolled down again—an
exquisite nightmare
27 Aeolidēs, -ae, m., son of Aeolus
28 After verbs of accusing, condemning, and acquitting the
gen. can be used to express the charge or the pen­
alty involved.
Linguenda²⁰ tellúris²⁰ et domus et placēns
uxor, neque hārum, quās colis, arborum
15 tē praeter invisās³¹ cupressōs³²
ūlla³³ brevem dominum³⁴ sequētur.
(Horace, Odes 2.14.1-4, 13-24)

26. A SENSE OF BALANCE IN LIFE

Vivitur¹ parvō bene cui² paternum³ splendet⁴ in mēnsā tenuī sālinum,
nec levēs⁵ somnōs timor aut cupidō sordidus⁷ aufert.⁸
5 Quid⁹ brevē fortēs¹⁰ iaculāmur¹¹ sevō multa? Quid¹² terrās aliōs calentēs
sōle mutāmus? Patriae quis exsul¹³ sē quoque fūgit²⁴ Scandit¹⁵ aeratās¹⁶ vitiosā nāvēs
10 cūra nec tūrmas¹⁷ equitum relinquit, òcior¹⁸ cervis¹⁹ et agente nimbo²⁰ òcior Europī²¹

²⁰Linguenda (est), balancing visendus in contrast; lin-
quō = relinquō
²¹tellūs, -ūris, f., earth, land
²²splendēr = splendē, -ere, shine
²³tenuis, -a, -um, hated, hateful
²⁴cupressus, -i, /, cypress (tree); invisās because they
²⁵neque ēūlla hārum arborum, nor any = and none . . .
²⁶brevem domīnun, in apposition with tē; brevem,
³⁰in the lap of luxury.
³¹paternum sālinum (sālīnum, -i), paternal salt-cellar;
³₂cupressus, -i, -i, cypress (tree); invisās because they
were used at funerals and were planted near tombs
³³neque uēlla hārum arborum, nor any = and none . . .
³⁴brevem domīnun, in apposition with tē; brevem,
³⁶vivitur parvō bene (ab vō) cui, it is lived on little well
by him for whom: vivitur, impers. pass. = he lives
well on little (i.e., not in object poverty and not in
the lap of luxury).
³⁷cui, dat. of rel. but most easily translated by whose
³⁸paternum sālīnum (sālīnum, -i), paternal salt-cellar;
the long list of words derived from sāl provides
some idea of the importance of salt and the
salt-cellar.
³⁹splendēr = splendē, -ere, shine
⁴⁰tenuis, -a, -um, simple
⁴¹levēs, -a, here = gentle
⁴²sordidus, -a, -am, sordid (cf. sordēs L.l. 24 n. 14);
cupidō is m. in Horace.
⁴³sordēs, sordōs
⁴⁴cupidō is m. in Horace.
⁴⁵aupērō (ab-perō)
⁴⁶cūrī
⁴⁷fortēs (vīrō) brevē nētō (netum, -ī, time, life)
⁴⁸iaculār (f.), aim at
⁴⁹Quid . . . mutāmus, lit. why do we exchange lands
warmed by another sun? The expression is poetic
and in part illogical but the sense is clear: why do
we exchange our lands for those warmed by an-
other sun? “The pasture is always greener . . .”
⁵⁰exsul, exsulis, m., exile; with patriae quis, who an ex-
ile of (from) his native land
⁵¹fūgit, perf., has ever fled
⁵²scaundā, -āre, scandi, scānum, climb up
⁵³excrātus, -a, -um, fitted with bronze, probably refer-
ing to the bronze beaks of the men-of-war (longae
nāvēs), which were faster than the ordinary ships—
though even these cannot outstrip anxiety.
⁵⁴tūrma, -ae, a troop of cavalry (equitum, L.I. 18 n.
33). A person cannot ride fast enough to escape
care.
⁵⁵òcior, -ius, adj. in compar. degree, swifter, agreeing
with ēōra
⁵⁶cērvis, -ī, stag
⁵⁷nimbus, -ī, rain cloud
⁵⁸Eurus, -ī, wind (from the southeast)
Laetus\textsuperscript{22} in praes\textsuperscript{23} animus quod ultr\textsuperscript{e} est
öderit\textsuperscript{24} curâre et am\textsuperscript{25} lârent\textsuperscript{26}
15 temperet\textsuperscript{27} ris\textsuperscript{28}; nihil est ab om\textsuperscript{30} nì be\textsuperscript{10} ûm.
(Horace, Odes 2.16.13–28)

27. DIES FESTUS

Hie diès\textsuperscript{1} vârâ mihi fêstus âtrâs
eximet\textsuperscript{2} cûrâs: ego nec tumûlum
nec mor\textsuperscript{3} per vim metuam tenente
Caesare\textsuperscript{5} terrâs.

5 I, pete unguentum,\textsuperscript{4} puer,\textsuperscript{5} et corônâs,\textsuperscript{6}
et cadum\textsuperscript{7} Mârsis\textsuperscript{8} memorem\textsuperscript{9} duellî,
Spartacum\textsuperscript{10} si quâ\textsuperscript{11} potuit vagantem
fallère\textsuperscript{12} testa.\textsuperscript{13}
(Horace, Odes 3.14.13–20)

28. A MONUMENT MORE LASTING THAN BRONZE

Exegi monumentum aere perennius\textsuperscript{1}
regâlique\textsuperscript{2} sitû\textsuperscript{3} pyramidum\textsuperscript{4} altius,\textsuperscript{5}
quod non imbêr\textsuperscript{6} edax,\textsuperscript{7} non Aquilo\textsuperscript{8} impotens\textsuperscript{9}
possit dûruere\textsuperscript{10} aut innumerâbilis\textsuperscript{11}

27 METER: Sapphic stanza.
1 Hie diès, referring to Augustus' return from the campaign of 27-25 B.C. in Spain
2 eximis, -ere, -ëmi, -ëmint, take away
3 Caesar = Augustus, When C. Octavius was adopted by his great-uncle, C. Iulius Caesar; his name became C. Iulius Caesar Octavianus, to which the senate added the title of Augustus in 27 B.C.
4 unguentum, -I, ointment, perfume
5 puer = slave, cp. Fr. garçon
6 corôna, -ae, crown, wreath
7 cadus, -I, wine jar
8 Mârsus, -a, -urn, Martian; duellum = old form of bellum: Marsi duellii, of the Martian, or Social, War of 91-88 B.C., by which the so-called allies of Rome in Italy gained full citizenship, i.e., a 65-year-old wine
9 membr, gen. -oris, mindful
10 Spartacus, -I, Spartacus, the gladiator who led the slaves in revolt against Rome, 73-71 B.C.
11 quâ, adv = anywhere or in any way
12 fallê, -ere, fereî, falsum, deceive, escape the notice of
13 testa, -ae, jug
28 METER: Lesser Asclepiad.
1 pârennis, -a, lasting (throughout the year)
2 régillis, -e, royal
3 sitûs, -is, site, situation; here = structure
4 pyramîdis, -idis, f., pyramid
5 altus, -a, -um, high: altius agrees with monumentum.
6 imbêr, -ërîs, m., storm
7 edax, gen. edacis, greedy, destructive
8 aquîlû, -ënis, m., north wind
9 impotens, gen. -antis, powerless (to injure my monument)
10 dûruer, -ere, -rif, -ruum, razâ, destroy
11 in-numerâbilis, -e = Eng
29. THE OTHER PERSON'S FAULTS AND OUR OWN

Pērās\textsuperscript{1} imposuit\textsuperscript{2} Iuppiter nōbīs duās:
propriā\textsuperscript{3} replētām vitīs post terrum\textsuperscript{4} dedit,\textsuperscript{6}
aliēnīs\textsuperscript{7} ante pectus\textsuperscript{8} suspendit\textsuperscript{9} gravem.
Hac re vidēre nostra mala non possimus;
aliī simul\textsuperscript{10} delinquunt,\textsuperscript{11} cēnsōrēs\textsuperscript{12} sumus.

(Phaedrus, \textit{Fābulae} 4.10)

30. SOUR GRAPES

Fāmē\textsuperscript{1} coācta vulpēs\textsuperscript{2} alta in vinēa\textsuperscript{3}
vīnam\textsuperscript{4} appetēbat,\textsuperscript{5} summis saliēnās\textsuperscript{6} vitībus.
Quam\textsuperscript{7} tangere ut nōn potuit, discēdēns ait:
“Nōndum mātūra\textsuperscript{8} est; nōlō acerbam stīmere.\textsuperscript{9}”
5 Qui facere\textsuperscript{10} quae nōn possunt verbēs éllevant,\textsuperscript{11}
adscribēt\textsuperscript{12} hoc dēbēbunt exemplum sībī.

(Phaedrus, \textit{Fābulae} 4.3)

31. THE FOX AND THE TRAGIC MASK

Persōnām\textsuperscript{1} tragicam\textsuperscript{2} forte\textsuperscript{3} vulpēs viderat.
“Ó quanta speciēs,\textsuperscript{4}” inquit, “cerebrum\textsuperscript{5} nōn habet!”

\textsuperscript{1} series, -ē, succession
\textsuperscript{2} Libītīna, -ae, Libītīna, goddess of funerals; death
\textsuperscript{3} Proprius, -a, -num, one's own, here = our own
\textsuperscript{4} Fēra, -ae, wallet
\textsuperscript{5} Impōnō, + dat., put on
\textsuperscript{6} Proprius, -a, -um, one's own, here = our own
\textsuperscript{7} Repleō, -ēre, -plevī, -plevum, fill; (pēram) replētum
\textsuperscript{8} Tergum, -ī, back
\textsuperscript{9} Dedit, here = put
\textsuperscript{10} Alienus, -a, -um, belonging to another, aliēnōs (vitīs), abl. with grave
\textsuperscript{11} Sc. nostrum
\textsuperscript{12} Alteram pēram, grāvem... suspendit
\textsuperscript{13} Simul = simul ac, as soon as
\textsuperscript{14} Delinquo, -ere, -līctum, fail, commit a crime
\textsuperscript{15} Cēnsōr, -ōris, 11m, censor; censurer, severe judge
\textsuperscript{16} Phaedrus: freedman of Augustus, who made extensive use of Aesop's fables.
\textsuperscript{17} Phaedrus: freedman of Augustus, who made extensive use of Aesop's fables.
\textsuperscript{18} Iambic trimeter.
\textsuperscript{19} Iambic trimeter.

\textsuperscript{1} Fāmē, -ae, vineyard
\textsuperscript{2} Vulpēs, -is, f., fox
\textsuperscript{3} Vinēa, -ae, vineyard
\textsuperscript{4} Ūva, -ae, bunch of grapes
\textsuperscript{5} Appetēbat, note the force a/the infinit.
\textsuperscript{6} Salīto, -ēre, -ūi, saltum, jump
\textsuperscript{7} Quam = Ūvam
\textsuperscript{8} Mātūra, -a, -um, ripe
\textsuperscript{9} Sūmpsi, sūmpstum, take
\textsuperscript{10} Nondum = mātūra, mātīna, death
\textsuperscript{11} Censor, -ōris, 11m., censor; censurer, severe judge
\textsuperscript{12} Phaedrus, Fabulae 4.3

METER: Iambic trimeter.

Phaedrus: freedman of Augustus, who made extensive use of Aesop's fables.

METER: Iambic trimeter.

343
Hoc illis dictum est quibus honorem et gloriæm
Fortuna tribuit, sēnsum communem abstulit.
(Phaedrus, Fābulae 1.7)

32. THE STAG AT THE SPRING

Ad fontem cervus, cum bibisset, restitit, et in liquore vidit effigiem suam.
Ibi dum rāmōsa mirāns laudat cornua, crūrūmque nimiam tenuitatem vituperat.
Vēnantum subitō vōcibus conterritus, per campum fugere coepit, et cursū levī canèsā ēdiffit. Silva tum excēpit fērum, in quā retenēs impedītus cornibus, lacerāri coepit moribus saevīs canum.

Tunc morīens vocem ēdidiisse dicitur: "O mē infīlicem! Qui nunc dēnum intellegō utilia mihi quam fuerint quae despereram, et quae laudāram, quantum lūctus habuerint."
(Phaedrus, Fābulae 1.12)

33. THE FOX GETS THE RAVEN'S CHEESE

Qui sē laudāri gaudet verbīs subdolīs, ferē dat poenas turpī paenitentia. Cum dē fēnestra corvus raptum cāseum vellet, eipsa residēns arbore,

METER: Iambic trimeter.
5 hunc vidi vulpes; deinde sic coepit loqui:
“O qui tuarum, corve, pennarum7 est nitor8!
Quantum decoris9 corpore et vultu geris!10
Si vocem haberes, nulla prior11 ales12 foret.”13
At ille stultus, dum vult vocem ostendere,
10 émissit14 óre caseum, quem celeriter
dolósa15 vulpes avidís16 rapuit dentibus.17

(Phaedrus, Fabulae 1.13.1–10)

34. THE ASS AND THE OLD SHEPHERD

In principáti1 commítàndó3 cívium
nif praeter dominí nòmen mútant pauperés.
Id esse vèrnum parva haec fábella3 indicat.
Asefum4 in prátò5 timidú6 pàsèbat7 senex.
5 Is, hostium clamôrè subitó9 territus,
suádebát10 asinò fugere nè possent capi.
At ille le tus:11 “Quaesó,12 num bínás13 mihí
clitellás14 impositúrum15 victórem16 putás?”
Senex negávit. “Ergó quid réfert méa17
10 cui serviam clotellás dum portem18 meás?”

(Phaedrus, Fabulae 1.15)

35. THE TWO MULES AND THE ROBBERS

Múli1 g r avátí2 sarcinás1 ibant duó.
Uúus ferebát fiscós4 cum pecúniá;

(METER: Iambic trimeter.
1 principáti, -i, rule, dominion
2 commítànto (1), change
3 fábella, -ae, fable
4 asellus, -I, a little ass, diminutive of asinus, -I, an ass
(verse 6)
5 prátum, -i, meadow
6 timidú, -a, -um, timid
7 pásèo, -ere, pávii, páustum, pasture
8 clámor, -oris, m., shouting
9 subitus, -a, -um, sudden
10 suádeo, -e, suáde, suásum, urge
11 lunus, -a, -um, slow, motionless, apathetic
12 quaesó, -ere, beg, beseech, = quaeró
13 bínás slitellás, two pairs of panniers (i.e., instead of
the present single pair); bínus, -ae, -a, distributive
numeral used with a regularly pl. noun
14 clitellae, -arum, a pair of panniers, baskets
15 in-péndó = in + péndó
16 victor, -oris = Eng.
17 what difference does it make to me, highly idiomatic
18 portó (1), bear, carry

34

(METER: Iambic trimeter.
1 múli, -i, mule
2 gravó (1), load, burden
3 sarciná, -ae, bundle, pack
4 fiscus, -ó, basket
alter tumentès\(^9\) multō saccōs\(^6\) hordeō.\(^7\) 
Ille onere\(^8\) dives, celsā cervīce\(^9\) ēminēns\(^10\) 
clarumque collō\(^11\) iactās\(^12\) tintinnābulum\(^13\); 
comes\(^14\) quiētō\(^15\) sequitur et placidō\(^16\) gradū.\(^17\) 
Subīō latrōnēs\(^18\) ex īnsideās advolent,\(^19\) 
terque caedem fērrō nūlum lancināt\(^20\); 
diripiant\(^21\) nummōs,\(^22\) neglegunt vīle\(^23\) hordeum. 
Spoliātus\(^24\) igitur cāsūs\(^25\) cum flēret suōs, 
"Equidem," inquit alter, "mē contemptum gaudeō. 
Nam nihil ēmīsī, nec sum laeexus\(^26\) vulnere." 
Hoc argumentō tīta est hominum tenuitas\(^27\); 
magnae perīclēs\(^28\) sunt opēs obnoxiae.\(^29\) 

(Phaedrus, Fībulae 2.7)

36. DELIGHTS OF THE COUNTRY

C. PLINIUS CALPURNIÖ MACRÖ\(^2\) SUÖ S.\(^1\)

Bene est\(^5\) mihi quia\(^4\) tibi est bene. Habēs uxōrem tēcum, habēs filium; 
frueris\(^5\) marī, fontibus, viridibus,\(^6\) agrō, vīlla amoenissimā.\(^7\) Neque enim 
dubitō esse amoenissimam,\(^8\) in quā sē composuerat\(^9\) homō\(^10\) felicior ante-
quam\(^11\) "felícissimus" flēret. Ego in Tuscīs\(^12\) et vēnō\(^13\) et studeō, quae\(^14\) inter-

---

1 tumeō, -ē, swell, be swollen 
2 saccus, -ī, sack 
3 hordeum, -ī, barley 
4 anus, -ēris, n., burden, load 
5 cervix, -īcis, f., neck 
6 ēminēo, -ēre, -ëminui, stand out, be conspicuous 
7 collum, -ī, neck 
8 iactō (1), toss 
9 tintinnābulum, -ī, bell, a delightfully onomatopoetic 

---

12 comes, comitīs, m. if., companion 
13 quiētus, -a, -um, quiet 
14 placidus, -a, -um, placid, gentle 
15 gradus, -ūs, step 
16 latrō, -ōnis, m., bandit, robber 
17 advolvō (1), fly, hasten 
18 luncinō (1), mangle 
19 diripībīs, -ere, -ripūrūm, plunder 
20 nummum, -ī, currency, money 
21 rūs, -ē, cheap 
22 spoliō (1), rob 
23 ēmisum, -īs, accident 
24 laeexus, -īs, laesus, injure 
25 tenuītās, -ītās, f., poverty 
26 perficulum, -ī, early Lat. form, used instead of periculum in classical Lat. poetry whenever it was metrically convenient 
27 obnoxius, -a, -um, subject to, exposed to 
28 amoenissimam, agreeing with villam understood as subject of esse 
29 à composère, to compose oneself, to rest 
30 the man, apparently referring to a former owner who had been happier (felicior) on this estate as an ordinary person (homō) before he could realize his ambition of becoming "most happy" (felícissimus), i.e., before he could achieve some very high position which did not give him supreme happiness after all. 
31 antequam + subj. 
32 lit. in the Tuscans = on my Tuscan estate 
33 vēnō (1), hunt 
34 quae, n. pl. referring to vēnō and studeō as antecedents
Loci

5 dum alteris, interdum simul faciō; nec tamen adhuc possim pronuntiāre utrum sit difficilior capere aliquid an scribere. Vale. (Pliny, Epistulae 5.18)

37. C. PLINIUS CANINIΟ S. U. S.


38. HAPPY MARRIED LIFE

C. PLINIUS GEMINO S. U. S.

Grave vulnus Macrinus noster accēpit: āmisit uxorem singulāris . . . Vixit cum hac triginta novem annīs sine iurgio, sine offensa. Quam illa reverentiam marītus suo praestitit, cum ipsa summam mereretur! Quat quantasque virtūtes ex diversis aeōribus sumptas collegit et miscuit! Habet quidem Macrinus grandis solāciōm, quod tantum bonum tam diū temuit; sed hinc magis exacerbātūrum quod āmisit. Nam fruendĭs volup-

15 interdum, adv., sometimes, at times

16 alterīs, adv., alternately, by turns

17 simul, adv., at the same time, simultaneously. In another letter (1.6), Pliny tells how he combined hunting and studying in one operation.

18 adhuc, adv., thus far, till now

37 Pliny and Caniniōs were fellow townsman from Como (Como) at the south end of beautiful Lake Larius (Como) in northern Italy.

2 in questions, or

3 piscor (1), to fish

4 Larius, -i, Lake Larius (now Lake Como)

5 lacus, -ūs, lake

6 piscis, -is, m., fish

7 fera (ae, hēsita), -e, wild animal

8 cingō, -ere, circum, circumvallō, surround, gird

9 sēcessus, -ūs, retreat, summer place

10 adfatim, adv., sufficiently, abundantly

11 sug-gestō, -ere, -gestum, furnish, afford, supply

12 sive . . . sive, (sī-re), if . . . or if, whether . . . or

13 angō, -ere, torment

14 artus, -i, -um, close, narrow; lacus, -i, noose, cord

15 ab-rumpō, -ere, -ruptum, break off, sever. Pliny is tied up in Rome.

16 negotiōs, -ās, business; duty

17 accrēscō, -ere, -crevi, -cre rents, increase; nova (negotiō) accrēscunt (veteribus negotiōs) new duties increase by . . . or are added to . . .

18 per-aγē, complete

19 nexus, -ūs, coils, obligations

20 catēnā, -ae, chain

21 in diēs, from day to day

22 occupātiō, -ūs, f., occupation, employment

23 agmen, -minis, n., line of march, column

24 ex-tendō, -ere, -tendō, -tendent, extend, increase

38

1 he lost (not sent away)

2 singulāris, -ās, extraordinary

3 The abl. is sometimes used instead of the acc. to express the idea of extent of time.

4 iūrgiōm, -ī, quarrel

5 offensā, -ae, hatred, affront

6 reverentia, -ae, respect

7 mārius, -ǐ, husband

8 merēris, -ēris, meritum sum, deserve

9 diversus, -a, -um, diverse, different

10 grandis, -ēs, great

11 hinc here = from this cause

12 exacerbō (1), exasperate; embitter
tātibus crēscit carendī dolor. Erō ergō suspēnsus prō homine amicissimō dum admittere āvocāmentum et cicārtīcem patī possit, quam nihil aequē ac necessitās ipsa et diēs longa et satis et dōlōris indiciēt. Valē. (Pliny, Epīsulae 8.5, excerpts)

39. FAITHFUL IN SICKNESS AND IN DEATH

C. PLINIUS NEPŌTĬ SUŌ S.

(... Fannia neptis Arriae illius quae maritō et sōlāecium mortis et exemplum fuit. Multa referēbat aviae suae non minus hoc, sed obscūrōra, quae tibi existimā tam mirābilia legentī fore quam mihi audienti fuērunt.

슈기아 팔리토스 Caecina Paetus, maritus eius, aegrotābat et filius, uterque mortiferē, ut vidēbūtur. Filius dēcessit eximī pulchritūdine, parī verēcundīa, et parentibus non minus ob alia cărus quam quod filius erat. Huic illa ita fānus parāvit ... ut ignōrāret maritus. Quōn immō, quotiens cubicum eius intrāret, vīvere filium atque etiam commodōrem esse simulābat; ac persaepe interrogant quid aeger puer respondēbat, "Bene quēvit, libenter cibum sūmpsit." Deinde, cum diū cōhibīt, lacri-

13 suspēnsus, -a, -um, in suspense, anxious
14 dum, conj., until, used with the subj. to imply intention or expectancy
15 ad-mittō, admit, receive
16 āvocāmentum, -i, diversion
17 cicārtīx, -tīcis, f., scar, which implies healing
18 aequē ac, equally as, quite so well as
19 necessitās (-tātīs, f.) ipsa, necessity itself, sheer necessity
20 here = time
21 satietās, -ātīs, f., satiety
22 in-dūcō, bring on, induce

1 Fannia (est)
2 neptis, -is, f., granddaughter
3 Arria, -ae, Arria (Maior), brave wife of Caecina Paetus. When, because of his part in a conspiracy against the emperor Claudius, he had to commit suicide in 42 A.D., Arria committed suicide with him, actually selling him an end of the story immediately following its noun
5 maritō, dat.
6 referēbat, subject = Fannia, who related these episodes during a conversation with Pliny on the preceding day.
7 avis, -ae, grandmother; aviae, gen. case
8 hōc, abl. of comparison, referring to the rel. cl. of the preceding sent.
9 obscurās, -a, -um, obscure, unknown
10 legendē, to be construed with tīm
11 fore = futūra esse, fut. inf. in ind. state, depending on existimō (1), think
12 aegrotāb (1), be sick
13 mortiferē, adv. (mors-ferō), fatally
14 dē-cēōdō, go away, die (cp. deceased)
15 eximius, -a, -um, extraordinary
16 pulchritūdinō, -īnis, f., beauty; eximī pulchritūdīne, abl. describing filius but more easily translated if we supply a word like puer: filius dēcessit—puer eximī pulchritūdīne, etc.

17 verēcundia, -ae, modesty
18 ob, prep. + acc., on account of, toward
19 fānus, -eris, n., funeral
20 quōn immō, why, on the contrary
21 quotiens, adv., as often as
22 cubiculum, -i, bedroom
23 intro (1), enter, intrāret: in Silver Lat. the impf. subj. of customary action is often found in place of the indic.
24 commodus, -a, -um, suitable, satisfactory; here = better
25 simulō (1) pretend
26 persaepe, adv., very often
27 interrogō (1), ask, inquire (cp. rogo); (maritō) interrogaō
28 quiēscō, -ere, -ēs, -ēsēs, rest, be quiet
29 cibus, -i, food
30 cōhibēō, -ere, -ūlī, -ūtum, hold together, hold back, restrain
mae vincerent prorumperentque, 31 ēgrediēbatur; tune sē dolōri dabant. Satāta, siccēs 32 oculis, compositō vultū redibat, tamquam orbitātēm 33 foris reliquisset. 24 Praeclārum quidem illud 15 eiusdem: ferrum stringere, 36 perfodere 27 pectus, extrahere 28 puggiōnum, 39 porrigere 40 marītō, addere 41 vocem immortālem ac paene 42 dīvinam, 43 “Paete, nōn dōlet...” Valē. (Pliny, Epistulae 3.16, excerpts)

40. A SWEET, BRAVE GIRL

C. PLINIIUS MARCELLINŌ SUŌ S.

Trīstissimus haec tibi scrībō, Fundānī nostri filiā minōre defunctā, 1 quā puellā 2 nihil unquam fēstivius, 3 amābilis, 4 nec longōre viūa... dignius vīdi. Nōndum annōs trēdecim implēverat, 5 et iam illā anīlis 7 prōvidentia, mātrōnālis 8 gravitas 9 erat, et tamen suāvitās 10 puellāris 11... Ut iiā patris cervīcibus 13 inhaerēbat 41! Ut nōs, amīcos paternōs, 15 et amanter 16 et modestē 17 complectēbātur! 18 Ut nūtrīcēs, 19 ut paedagogōs, 20 ut praeceptōres 21 pro suō quemque oculō dīligebant! Quam studiōse, 22 quam intelligenter 23 lectībat! ut... Qua ilīa temperantia, 25 qua patientia, qua etiam constantia 26 novissimam valetūdinem 27 tulit! Medicīs obsequēbatur; sororem, patrem adhortābatur 29; ipsamque se destitutam 30 corōribus vīgōre 31 susti-

31 prōrumpō, -ere, -ruptum, burst forth
32 siccus, -a, -urn, dry; siccīs oculis
33 dotantias, -tatis, jov., bereavement, loss
34 What kind of condition in the tanquam cl?
35 that deed; sc. fuit
36 stringō, -ere, -strīxi, strictus, draw; stringere, in apposition with illud
37 perfodio, -ere, -ffidi, -fōsum, pierce (lit. dig through)
38 ex-traho, pugiō, -onis, -di, -dīnum, add
39 paene, adv., almost
40 dīvinus, -a, -um = Eng.
41 studiōse, adv. of studium, full of study
42 intellegetur, adv. of intellegēns
43 lectūtō (1), read (eagerly)
44 temperantia, -ae, self-control
45 constantia, -ae, firmness
46 valetudinō, -inis, f., here = bad health, illness
47 ob + sequor, obey
48 adhortor = hortor
49 desert, abandon
50 aequāris, -is, m., vigor, vigōre, abl. of means with sustinēbat
51 unīlis, -e, of an old woman
52 mātrōnālis, -ae, of a matron, matronly
53 gravitas, -tatis, f., seriousness, dignity
54 suāvitās, -tatis, f., sweetness
55 puellāris, -e, girl
56 how
57 cervīx, -vels, f., usually pl. (cervīces) as here, neck
58 inhaerō, -ere, -haest, -haesum, cling
59 paternus, -a, -urn, paternal, of a father
60 amanter, adv. of amāns
61 modestē, adv. modestly
62 complector, -er, -plexus sum, hold in the arms, embrace
63 nūtrīx, -vels, f., nurse
64 paedagogus, -i, tutor (slave who escorted children)
65 praeceptōr, -āris, m., teacher (in a school, not a private tutor)
nēbat. Dūrāvit hic illī ὀψε αὐτοῖς, τοίς aut metū mortis infractus est. Ὑδρί βλέψ ἀκερβομενόνique ἐς τῆς plane, ὕδρι ἡμέραι ἡμών. Iam δεῖνατα erat egregius iuvenis, iam electus nuptiārum diēs, iam nós vocāt. Quod gaudium quō maerōre manifestum est!

Neō possimus exprimere verbēs quantum animō vulnus accēperim cum audī Fundānum ipsum praeceptāntem, quod 14 in vestēs, margarītās, gemmās fuerat etrogātūrus, hoc in tūs et unguenta et odores impendērunt. Si quās ad cūm de dōlōre tam instā litterās mittēs, mementō adhibēre sōlācium. (Plin. Epistulae 5.16, excerpts)

41. Pliny’s Concern about a Sick Freedman

C. Plinius Valerius Paulinus Suō S.

Videō quam molliter1 tus2 habeás3; quō simplicius4 tibi ònēfēbor quō indulgentiā5 meōs tractēm. Quod si essem nātūrā aspēriōr et dūrior, frangert mē tamen infirmitās7 libertās8 meī Zōsimī,9 cui tantō maier hūnūnūtās10 exhibēnda11 est, quantō nunc illā magis eget. Homō probus,12 officiōsus,13 litterātus14, et ars quidem eius et quasi inscriptīō15—cōmoedus... Ùtitur et

1 molliter, adv. of mollis
2 tus (survēs et libertās); so meōs below
3 treat
4 simpliciter, adv. frankly, candidly; quō simplicius by which (degree of difference) more frankly = the more frankly
5 indulgentiā, -ae, kindness
6 tractō (1), handle, treat
7 infirmītās, -ātis, f., illness, weakness
8 libertās, -ātis, f., freedman (a slave who had somehow secured his freedom) in contrast to a libertas (one who was born free). A freedman commonly remained closely attached to his former master.
9 Zōsimus, -ī, Zosimus, apparently a Greek
10 hūnūnūtās, -ātīs, f., kindness
11 ex-litterātis, show, exhibit
12 probus, -a, -um, honorable, fine
13 officiōsus, -a, -um, obliging, courteous
14 litterātus, -ātis, well-educated; Greek slaves especially were often well educated.
15 inscriptiō, -ātis, f. here = label, a placard hung around a slave’s neck in the slave market to indicate his special abilities—cōmoedus, -ī, comic actor, often a slave trained to read at dinners scenes from famous comedies. Although this was Zosimus’ specialty, we find him in the next two sons: surprisingly versatile and talented.
cithari peritē.16 Ídem tam commodē17 orātiōnēs et historiās18 et carmina legīt ut hoc sōlum didicisse videātur.

Haec tibi sēdulō19 exposuī quō magis sōrēs quam multa ūnus mihi et quam īucunda ministeria20 præstārēt. Accēdī longā iam cāritās21 hominīs, quam ipsa periculā auxērunt22 . . . Ante aliquid23 annōs,24 dum intentē instanterque25 prōnuntiāt, sanguinem26 reiecit27; atque ob hoc in Aegyptum28 missus ā mē, post longam peregrinātiōnem29 confirmātūs30 reedit nūper. Deinde . . . veteris infirmitātis31 tussiculā32 admonitus,33 redux sanguinem reddidit.34

Quā ex causā dēstināvī35 eum mittere in praedīa tua36 quae Foro Iliī37 possidēs.38 Audīvi enim tē referentem esse ibī āera39 salūbrem40 et lac41 eius modi cūrātiōnibus42 accommodātissimum.43 Rogō ergō scribās44 tuī45 ut illī villa, ut domus46 patēat . . . Valē. (Pliny, Epistulae 5.19, excerpts)

ON BEHALF OF A PENITENT FREEDMAN (42–43)

42. C. PLINIUS SABINIANO SUO S.

Lībertus tuus, cui suscēnsēre1 tē dīxeras, vēnit ad mē . . . Flēvit multum, multum rogāvit, multum etiam tacuit; in sumnā,2 recit hūi fidem paenitentiae.3 Verē crēdō ēmundātum4 quia dēlīquisse5 sē sentit. Īrāsceris, scīo; et īrāsceris meritō,6 id quoque scīo; sed tunc praecipua7 mansuetūdīnis8 laus cum ūrae causa īustissīma est. Amāsti9 hominem et, spērō, āmābis; interim10

16 peruī, adv., skillfully
17 commodē, adv., fitly, satisfactorily
18 historia, -ae = Eng.
19 sēdulō, adv., carefully
20 ministerium, -i, service
21 cāritās, -ātis, f., dearness, affection (cp. carus)
22 augeō, ēre, auxī, auctum, increase
23 aliquot, indecl. adv., several, some
24 ante . . . amōs, several years ago
25 earnestly and emphatically
26 sanguis, -inis, 1., blood
27 re-iciō, reject, spit out
28 Aegyptus, -i, f., Egypt
29 peregrinātiō, -onis, f., travel or sojourn abroad
30 confirmō (1), strengthen
31 infirmitās, -ātis, f., weakness, sickness
32 tussiculā, -ae, slight cough
33 ad-monitus = monitus
34 reddidit = reiecit
35 dēstinā (1), intend, resolve
36 praedīum, -i, country seat
37 Forum Iliī, Fori Iliī, Forum of Julius, modern Frejus, a coastal town of southern France; Forō, place where
38 possessō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, possess, own
39 āër, āeris, m., air; āera = Grk. acc. sg.
40 salūbris, -e, healthful; still so regarded
41 lac, lactis, n., milk; i.e., for the milk cure
42 cūrātiō, -onis, f., cure
43 accommodātus, -a, -um, suited
44 (ut) scribās: ut is sometimes omitted in such cIs.
45 tuī, your servants
46 ut villa (patēat), ut domus patēat: i.e., he is to have access to the great house itself as well as to the estate.

42

1 suspēnsē, -ēre, -censūr, -censum, + dat., be angry with
2 summa, -ae, sum
3 paenitentia, -ae, repentance
4 ēmundātum (1), correct; (eum) ēmundātum (esse)
5 dēlīquō, -ēre, -quit, -āctum, fail (in duty), commit a crime
6 meritō, adv., rightly (with merit)
7 praecipuus, -a, -um, special; ae est
8 mansuetūdō, -inis, f., gentleness, mildness
9 contracted form = amāvīstī
10 interim, adv., meanwhile (cp. interēs)

43. C. Plínius Sabíniánó Suò S.

Bene fécisti¹ quod lìbertım² alicuandó³ tibi cárüm reducentibus⁴ epistúlfis⁵ meís in domum,⁶ in animum recipísti. Invébit hoc tè, mé certè iuvat; prínum,⁷ quod tè tam tractábilem⁸ videó ut in írá regí possís; deinde, quod tantum mihi tribus⁹ ut vel¹⁰ auctóritáte meae paraeás vel precibus indulgeás.¹¹ Igitur laudó et grátiás agó . . . Valé. (Pliny, Epistulae 9.24, excerpts)

44. SELECTION OF A TEACHER

C. Plínius Maurícó Suò S.

Quid a té mihi iúcundíus potuit iniungó¹ quam lìbertım bálum carum redeó et illum dulcis-simam aetátém quasi resímō.⁴ Sedeó inter iuvenes, ut solebam, atque eíam expeírio quantum apud illós auctóritáte ex studiós habeam. Nam prox-imé⁵ frequenté⁶ audítórió⁷ inter sè córam⁸ multís órdinis⁹ nostrí cláré¹¹

¹ sufficit, subject = ut-él.
² ex-órfí, stronger form of orfó
³ sinó, -ere, sívi, situm, allow, permit
⁴ torquérís, you are tormented = you torment yourself (reflexive use of the pass.)
⁵ lénis, -e, gentle, kind; agreeing with subject of trásceris: you, such a gentle person
⁶ prínum, adv., first
⁷ tractábilem, -e, tractable, compliant
⁸ tribus, -e, -bud, -búnum, attribute, ascribe
⁹ vel . . . vel, either . . . or
¹⁰ indulgeó, -ere, -dulsi, -dultum, yield to, gratify
¹¹ iúcundíus, in thought, the oN (of both reducentibus and recipísti)
¹² alicuandó, adv., once
loquebantur: intrivi, conticuerunt; quod non referrem, nisi ad illorum magis laudem quam ad meam pertinuerit. Cum omnès qui profiteretur audierò, quid dè quòque sentiám scribam efficiamque, quantum tamen epistulà consequi poterò, ut ipse omnès audìsse videáris. Debo enim tibi, debo memoriae fratris tuò hanc fidem, hoc studium, præsertim super tanta re. Nam quid magis interest vestra quam íberi . . . digni illò patre, tè patruò reperian? . . . Valè. (Pliny, Epistulae 2.8 excerpts)

45. THE OLD BOY DYED HIS HAIR

Mentirìs iuvenem tìntìs, Laetìne, capìllìs, tam subitò corvus quò modo cyncus eras. Nòn omnès fallis; scit té Pròserpina canum: persònàm capìt détrabèt ilìa tuò.

(Martial 3.43)

46. WHAT'S IN A NAME?

Cinnam, Cinnamus, tè iubes vocàri. Nòn est hic, rogo, Cinna, barbarismus?

Tù si Fùrus ante dictus essès, Furius ista ratione dicerèris.

(Martial 6.17)
47. FAKE TEARS

Āmissum non flet cum sōla est Gellia patrem;
šī quis adest, iussae prōsiliunt lacrīnae.
Nōn īgēt quisquis laudārī, Gellia, quaeīt;
ille dolet vēre quī sine testē dolet.

(Martial 1.33)

48. EVEN THOUGH YOU DO INVITE ME—I'LL COME!

Quod convīvāris sine mē tam sæpe, Luperce,
invēni noceam quā ratīōne tibi.
Trāscor; licet usque vocēs mittāsque rogēsque—
"Quid faciēs?" inquis. Quid faciām? Veniam!

(Martial 6.51)

49. PRO-CRAS-TINATION

Crās tē vīctūrum, crās dīcis, Postume, semper.
Dīc mīhi, crās istud, Postume, quando venīt?
Quam longē est crās istud? ubi est? aut unde petendum?
Numquid apud Parthōs Armenīōsque latet?

5 iam crās istud habet Priām vel Nestoris annōs. 
Crās istud quantō dīc mīhi possit emī?
Crās vivēs? Hodīe iam vivere, Postume, serum est.
Ille sapit quisquis, Postume, vīxit hērī.

(Martial 5.58)

47

METER: Elegiac couplet.
1 âmissum patrēm
2 Gellia, -ae, Gellia
3 at her bidding; how literally?
4 prōsillō (4), leap forth
5 īūgerō, -ēre, īūxī, īūctūm, mourn
6 tests, -is, m., witness

48

METER: Elegiac couplet.
1 convīvāris (1), to feast
2 Luperce, -ī, Luperce
3 licet īūsque (at) vocēs (it is even permitted that you call), you may even invite me, or even though you invite me
4 i.e., send a slave as a special messenger

49

METER: Elegiac couplet.
1 vīctūrum, -re, esse
2 No doubt Martial intended to have us think of Horace's Postumus in L.1. 25 above.
3 crās istud, that "tomorrow" of yours, subj. of vēlt
4 petendum (est)
5 numquid latet, it does not lie hidden, does it?
6 among the Parthians and Armenians, i.e., in land's end in the East
7 latēō, -ēre, -ūi, lie hidden
8 Priāmus, -ī, Priam, aged king of Troy
9 Nestor, -οrīs, Nestor, Greek leader famed for his years and wisdom
10 quantō, gen. of indef. value: at what price, for how much can that tomorrow be bought
11 emī, -ēre, īmptō, emptūm, buy
12 serum, -a, -um, late; sērum, pred. adj. in n. to agree with hodie vivīre, which is subject of est
50. ISSA

Issa\(^1\) est passere\(^2\) nēquior\(^3\) Catulli:
Issa est pūrior osculō columbae;\(^4\)
Issa est blandior\(^4\) omnibus puellanis;
Issa est cārior Indicīs\(^5\) lapillis;\(^6\)
Issa est dēliciae\(^8\) catella\(^9\) Pūblī.\(^10\)

Hanc tī, si queritur,\(^11\) loquī putābis,
Sentit tristitiaque\(^12\) gaudiumque.

Hanc nē lūx rapiat suprēma\(^13\) tōtam,
pictā\(^14\) Pūblius exprimīt\(^15\) tabellā
in quā tam simulēm videbis Issam\(^16\)
út sit tam similis sībī nec\(^17\) ipsa.
Issam dēnique pōne cum tabellā:
aut utramque putābis esse vērām
aut utramque putābis esse pictam.
(Martial 1.109)

---

**METER:** Hendecasyllabic.

1 Issa, colloquial and affectionate form for Iupsa and here used as the name of a pet dog
2 passer Catulli, see L. I. 3
3 nēquam, indecl. adj.; compar. nēquior, -ius, worthless, good for nothing, mischievous
4 columba, -ae, dove
5 blandus, -a, -um, flattering, caressing, coaxing
6 Indicus, -a, -um, of India
7 lapillus, -i, precious stone, gem
8 see L. I. 3
9 catella, -ae, little dog
10 Pūblī = Pūblīt, gen. sg. of Pūblīus
11 here = whimper
12 tristitia, -ae, sadness
13 lūx (diēs) suprēma = mors
14 plēgō, -ere, plēgī, pictum, paint; pictā tabellā, by a painted tablet = in a painting
15 exprimō, -ere, -pressī, pressum, express, portray
16 tam simulēm . . . Issam: an Issa (of the painting) so similar (to the real Issa)
17 nec here = not even
Optional Self-Tutorial Exercises

These optional exercises have been included in the hope of enriching the potential of this book for its various types of users.

1. *Repetitio est māter memoriae.* In language study the value of repetition is indisputable. To the already large amount of repetition achieved in the regular chapters these exercises add even more of this practice. The phrases and sentences have deliberately been made simple so that the immediate points in forms and syntax may stand out strikingly. The words are purposely limited to those of the formal lesson vocabularies, which obviously should be memorized before turning to these tutorial exercises. As a result of their very nature and purpose, such sentences can make no claim to inspiration. Some hints of the worthwhile reading matter for which one studies Latin are to be found in the *Sententiae Antiquae* and the reading passages from the ancient authors, which are the heart of this book; but if one wants additional repetitious drill by which to establish linguistic reflexes, one can find it here in these self-tutorial exercises. As has been suggested elsewhere, be sure always to read aloud every Latin word and sentence—carefully, for such a practice enables one to learn through the ear as well as the eye and can provide many of the benefits of a language laboratory.

2. To students enrolled in a regular Latin course these exercises with their keys can prove valuable for review and self-testing and can be helpful in preparation for examinations.

3. Also to the private individual who wishes to learn or review Latin independently, these exercises are certain to be valuable, since they can be used as self-tests which can be corrected via the key. Likewise, completing
these practice exercises with benefit of key will provide greater confidence in tackling the regular exercises of the book.

4. All students can test themselves in simple Latin composition by translating the English sentences of the key back into Latin and checking this work via the corresponding Latin sentences of the exercises.

5. In the translations ordinarily only one of the various meanings of a word given in the vocabulary will be used in any specific instance. If at times the translations are somewhat formal, the reason is that they can in this way follow the Latin more closely; and certainly these particular sentences are intended to provide practice in understanding Latin rather than practice in literary expression. Polished literary expression in translation is most desirable and should be practiced in connection with the other exercises in this book.

6. The answer keys have been placed by themselves after the exercises to facilitate self-testing and so that the exercises may be used for practice in class when the instructor wishes. It hardly need be added that the surest way to test oneself is to write out the answers before turning to the key.

7. Finally, let it be emphasized once again that for maximum value you must say aloud all the Latin words, phrases, and sentences, and that you must have studied the text of each lesson carefully through the vocabulary before turning to these exercises.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 1

1. Give the English pronouns equivalent to each of the following Latin personal endings: (1) -t, (2) -mus, (3) -ēs, (4) -nt, (5) -s, (6) -tis.

2. Name the following forms and translate each: (1) monēre, (2) vidēre, (3) valēre, (4) dēbere.

3. Name the following forms and translate each: (1) vocāre, (2) servāre, (3) dare, (4) cōgitāre, (5) laudāre, (6) amāre, (7) errāre.

4. Name the following forms and translate each: (1) vocēre, (2) servāre, (3) dāre, (4) cōgitāre, (5) laudāre, (6) amāre, (7) monēre, (8) vidēre, (9) valēre.

5. Name the following forms and translate each: (1) vocēt, (2) servātē, (3) dātē, (4) cōgitātē, (5) laudātē, (6) amātē, (7) monētē, (8) vidētē, (9) valētē.


EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 2

1. Give the Latin for the definite article “the” and the indefinite article “a.”
2. Name the Latin case for each of the following constructions or ideas:
   (1) direct object of a verb; (2) possession; (3) subject of a verb; (4) means; (5) direct address; (6) indirect object of a verb.
3. Name the case, number, and syntactical usage indicated by each of the following endings of the first declension: (1) -ās; (2) -ā; (3) -am; (4) -ae (pl.).
4. Name the case(s) and number indicated by the following endings, and wherever possible name the English preposition(s) which can be associated with them: (1) -ārum; (2) -ā; (3) -ae; (4) -is.
5. Translate the following nouns and state the syntactical usage of each as indicated by its ending: (1) puellam; (2) puella; (3) puellās; (4) puellae (plural form); (5) patriās; (6) patriam; (7) patria; (8) patriae (pl.); (9) pectūniam; (10) poenās; (11) poenā; (12) poenām.
6. Translate the following nouns in accordance with their case endings:
   (1) puellae (sg.); (2) puellārum; (3) Ī patria; (4) patriae (sg.); (5) pectūniās; (6) pectūniam (sg.); (7) poenās; (8) poenā; (9) poenārūm.
7. Given the following nominative singular forms, write the Latin forms requested in each instance: (1) multa pecūniā in the genitive and the accusative singular; (2) magna fāma in dat. and abl. sg.; (3) vita mea in gen. sg. and nom. pl.; (4) fortūnā tua in acc. sg. and pl.; (5) magna patria in gen. sg. and pl.; (6) fortūna mea in abl. sg. and pl.; (7) magna poena in dat. sg. and pl.; (8) multa philosophia in dat. and abl. pl.
8. Translate each of the following phrases into Latin according to the case either named or indicated by the English preposition in each instance:
   (1) by much money; (2) of many girls; (3) to/for my country; (4) great life (as direct object of a verb); (5) by your penalties; (6) many countries (subject of a verb); (7) to/for many girls; (8) of my life; (9) Ī fortune; (10) girls; (11) girls; (12) girls (direct address); (13) the girls (direct object of a verb); (14) the girls (subject of a verb).

Optional Self-Tutorial Exercises

22. Vitam sine pecunia non amatis. 23. Sine fāmā et fortūnā patria non valet. 24. Řam puellārum laudāre non dēbēs. 25. Vitam sine poenis amāmus. 26. Sine philosophiā non valēmus. 27. Quid est vita sine philosophiā?

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 3

1. Name the case, number, and syntactical usage indicated by each of the following endings of masculines of the 2nd declension: (1) -um; (2) -i (pl.); (3) -us; (4) -ōs; (5) -e.

2. Name the case(s) and number of the following endings, and name the English preposition which can be associated with each: (1) -ō; (2) -ōrum; (3) -i (sg.); (4) -is.

3. Translate the following nouns and state the syntactical usage of each as indicated by its ending: (1) filiōs; (2) filiī (pl.); (3) filiūm; (4) populum; (5) popule; (6) populus; (7) viris; (8) virōs; (9) virī (pl.); (10) virum; (11) amīcē; (12) amīcē (pl.); (13) amīcōs; (14) amīcum.

4. Translate the following in accordance with their case endings: (1) filiōrum meōrum; (2) filiō meō; (3) populi Rōmānī (sg.); (4) populō Rōmānō; (5) virīs; (6) virī (sg.); (7) virōrum; (8) amīcōrum paucōrum; (9) amīcīs paucīs; (10) amīcō meō; (11) amīcī meī (sg.); (12) multīs puérīs.

5. Given the following nom. sg. forms, write the Latin forms requested in each instance: (1) populus Rōmānus in gen. and abl. sg.; (2) magnus vir in acc. and abl. pl.; (3) puor meus in dat. and abl. pl.; (4) magnus numerus in dat. and abl. sg.; (5) magnus vir in voc. sg. and pl.; (6) filius meus in gen. sg. and pl.

6. Translate the following phrases into Latin according to the case named or indicated by the English preposition in each instance: (1) of many boys; (2) to/for the Roman people; (3) my sons (object of verb); (4) Of my sons; (5) a great number (obj. of verb); (6) by the great number; (7) Of great man; (8) to/for many boys; (9) the great man (subj. of verb); (10) of the Roman people.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 4

1. A 2nd-declension neuter has the same forms as the regular 2nd-declension masculine except in three instances. Name these three instances and give their neuter endings.

2. Name the case(s), number, and syntactical usage indicated by each of the following endings of the 2nd-declension neuter nouns: (1) -a; (2) -um.

3. Name the case(s) and number of the following 2nd-declension neuter endings and name the English preposition(s) which can be associated with each: (1) -ō; (2) -ōrum; (3) -t; (4) -īs.

4. Translate the following neuter nouns and state the syntactical usage of each as indicated by its ending: (1) bella; (2) bellum; (3) officium; (4) officia; (5) pericula.

5. Translate the following phrases in accordance with their case endings: (1) bellōrum malōrum; (2) bellō malō; (3) bellī malī; (4) bellīs malīs; (5) officī magnī; (6) officīs magnīs; (7) periculō parvō.

6. Given the following nom. sg. forms, write the Latin forms requested in each instance: (1) bellum parvum in nom. and acc. pl.; (2) òtium bonum in acc. sg. and pl.; (3) periculum magnum in gen. sg. and pl.; (4) officium vērum in acc. and abl. sg.

7. Translate the following phrases into Latin in accordance with the case named or indicated by the English preposition in each instance: (1) òtium bonum est; (2) tofor great duty; (3) by the great danger; (4) good leisure (object of verb); (5) by many wars; (6) of good leisure; (7) by the dangers of many wars; (8) small wars (subject of verb); (9) small wars (obj. of verb); (10) òtium foolish wars; (11) the small war (subj.)


EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 5

1. Identify the personal endings of the future and imperfect tenses of the first two conjugations.

2. Are these the same as the endings of the present tense? If not, point out the differences.
Optional Self-Tutorial Exercises 361

3. Identify the future and imperfect tense signs in the first two conjugations.

4. How, in effect, can the following verb endings be translated: (1) -bāmus; (2) -bit; (3) -bitis; (4) -bū; (5) -bunt; (6) -bat?

5. When an adjective of the 1st and 2nd declensions has the masculine ending in -er, how can you tell whether the e survives in the other forms or is lost?

6. How do English words like liberty, pulchritude, and nostrum help with the declension of Latin adjectives?

7. Translate the following forms: (1) manēbant; (2) manēbit; (3) manēbimus; (4) dabam; (5) dabitis; (6) dabit; (7) videbīs; (8) videbimus; (9) vocābant; (10) vocābis; (11) habēbis; (12) habēbant.

8. Translate into Latin: (1) we shall give; (2) you (sg.) were remaining; (3) they will see; (4) we shall call; (5) he was calling; (6) you (pl.) will see; (7) I shall see; (8) they were saving; (9) we shall have; (10) we were having; (11) he will have; (12) he has.


EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 6

1. What connection can be traced between the spelling of complementary in the term complementary infinitive and the syntactical principle?

2. In the verb sum and its compounds what do the following personal endings mean: (1) -mus; (2) -nt; (3) -s; (4) -t; (5) -a; (6) -m; (7) -tis?

3. If the verb possum is composed of pot + sum, where among the various forms is the t changed to s and where does it remain unchanged?

4. Translate the following random forms: (1) erat; (2) poterat; (3) erit; (4) poterit; (5) sumus; (6) possumus; (7) poteramus; (8) poterimus; (9) poteram; (10) eram; (11) erō; (12) poterō; (13) erunt; (14) poterunt; (15) poterant; (16) esse; (17) posse.

5. Translate into Latin: (1) we are; (2) we were; (3) we shall be; (4) we shall be able; (5) he is able; (6) he will be able; (7) he was able; (8) to be able; (9) they were able; (10) they are able; (11) they will be able; (12) they are; (13) to be; (14) I was able.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 7

1. In the 3rd declension do the case endings of feminine nouns differ from those of masculine nouns as they do in the 1st and 2nd declensions already learned?

2. Do neuter nouns of the 3rd declension have any case endings which are identical with those of neuter nouns of the 2nd declension? If so, name them.

3. Name the gender(s) and case(s) indicated by each of the following endings in the 3rd declension: (1) -és; (2) -a; (3) -em.

4. Name the case(s) and number of the following 3rd-declensional endings: (1) -ibus; (2) -i; (3) -e; (4) -em; (5) -um; (6) -is; (7) -és.

5. To indicate the gender of the following nouns give the proper nominative singular form of magnus, -a, -um with each: (1) tempus; (2) viribus; (3) labor; (4) civitas; (5) mos; (6) pax; (7) rex; (8) corpus; (9) veritas; (10) amor.

6. Translate the following phrases in accordance with their case endings wherever possible; where they are nominative or accusative so state: (1) labore multo; (2) labori multo; (3) laboris multum; (4) laboris multis; (5) pacis perpetua; (6) pace perpetua; (7) paci perpetuæ; (8) civitatum parvorum; (9) civitatem parvam; (10) civitatis parvae; (11) civitatis parvae; (12) civitate parvæ; (13) tempora mala; (14) tempus malum; (15) temporum malorum; (16) temporum malorum; (17) temporis malis; (18) mori tuo; (19) more tuo; (20) moris tuæ; (21) moris tuæ; (22) moris tuos; (23) morum tuorum.

7. Translate the following phrases into Latin in accordance with the case named or indicated by the English preposition: (1) to/for great virtue; (2) great virtue (subject); (3) great virtues (object of verb); (4) of great virtues; (5) with great courage; (6) our time (obj. of verb); (7) our times (subj.); (8) our times (obj.); (9) to/for our times; (10) to/for our time; (11) of our time; (12) of our times; (13) my love (obj.); (14) my loves
(obj.); (15) to for my love; (16) by my love; (17) of my love; (18) of my loves.


EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 8

1. (1) In the 3d conjugation what tense is indicated by the stem vowel e? (2) Can you think of some mnemonic device to help you remember this important point?

2. (1) In the 3d conjugation what tense is indicated by the vowels i, ē, u? (2) What mnemonic device may help here?

3. State the person, number, and tense indicated by the following 3d conjugation endings: (1) -imus; (2) -ēs; (3) -unt; (4) -et; (5) -itis; (6) -ēmus; (7) -ē; (8) -ent; (9) -it; (10) -ēs; (11) -is; (12) -am; (13) -ēbant.

4. What form of the verb does each of the following endings indicate: (1) -e; (2) -ere; (3) -ite?

5. Given the verbs mittō, mittere, send; agō, agere, do; scribō, scribere, write, translate each of the following forms according to its ending: (1) mittēbant; (2) mittit; (3) mittunt; (4) mittam; (5) mitte; (6) mittimus; (7) mittēbatis; (8) mittis; (9) mittite; (10) mittitis; (11) mittet; (12) mittēmus; (13) agit; (14) agent; (15) agunt; (16) agētis; (17) agēbāmus; (18) agum; (19) agēmus; (20) agis; (21) agitis; (22) scribēt; (23) scribunt; (24) scribām; (25) scribēbant; (26) scribītis; (27) scribēmus; (28) scribit; (29) scribis; (30) scribent; (31) scribē.

6. Given pōnō, pōnere, put, translate the following phrases into Latin: (1) they were putting; (2) we shall put; (3) put (imperative sg.); (4) he puts; (5) they will put; (6) I shall put; (7) you (sg.) were putting; (8) you (pl.) will put; (9) put (imper. pl.); (10) we put; (11) you (pl.) are putting; (12) he will put.

15. Cōpiamne librōrum bonōrum habētis? 16. Magister multōs pueros do-
cet. 17. Puerī magistrō grātiās nōn agunt. 18. Patēf cūvitātī nostrae grā-
tiās agēbant. 19. Tyrannus magnās cōpiās ex cūvitātī nostrā dūcet.
20. Magna cōpiā pecūniāe hominēs ad sapientiam nōn dūcit. 21. Librīne
bonō multōs ad ratiōnem dūcent? 22. Dūcimusne séepe hominēs ad ratiō-
nem? 23. Ratiō hominēs ad bonam vitam dūcere potest. 24. Agitisne bo-

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 9

1. Explain the term demonstrative pronoun and adjective.
2. Translate each of the following according to case(s) and number, indicat-
ing also the gender(s) in each instance:

(1) illī (10) illīs (19) huīus (28) ūnā
(2) illa (11) illō (20) hunc (29) tōtī
(3) illūs (12) illārum (21) hōs (30) tōfūs
(4) ille (13) hōc (22) huic (31) tōta
(5) illā (14) hoc (23) hōrum (32) tōtum
(6) illūd (15) haec (24) hās (33) nūlīus
(7) illūrum (16) haec (25) hīs (34) nūlī
(8) illae (17) hāc (26) ūnīus (35) nūlla
(9) illōs (18) hanc (27) ūnī (36) nūlōs

3. How can the presence of a noun be helpful in determining the form of
a modifying demonstrative?
4. Translate the following phrases into Latin in the declensional forms indi-
cated:

(1) this girl (nom.) (16) to/for that boy alone
(2) these girls (nom.) (17) to/for that girl alone
(3) these times (acc. pl.) (18) of that girl alone
(4) to/for this time (19) of tyrants alone
(5) to/for this boy (20) the whole state (acc.)
(6) of this time (21) of the whole country
(7) of that time (22) to/for the whole country
(8) by this book (23) of no reason
(9) by that book (24) no reason (acc.)
(10) that girl (nom.) (25) no girls (nom.)
(11) those times (nom.) (26) to/for no book
(12) those times (acc.) (27) no books (acc.)
(13) that time (nom.) (28) to/for one state
(14) to/for this state alone (29) to/for one girl
(15) of this state alone (30) of one time
Optional Self-Tutorial Exercises 365

(31) of one war (32) to/for the other book

5. Hi tōtam cīvitātem dūcent (dūcent, dūcēbant).
6. Ille haec in illā terrā vidēbit (videt, vidēbat).
7. In illō librō illā dē hoc homine scribet (scribam, scribēbam).
8. Unus vir istās cópiās in hanc terram dūcit (dūcet).
11. Tōtā patria huic sōli grātīās agit (aget, agēbat).
12. Tōtām cūrām illō cōnsiliō nunc dant.
13. Amīcus huius bānc cīvitātem illō cōnsiliō cōnservābit.
15. Hic vir sōlus mē dē vitēs huius tyranni monēre poterat.
17. Illī sōli nulla pericula in hoc cōnsiliō vident.
18. Nōn sōlūn mōrēs sed etsiām insidiās illius laudāre audēs.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 10

1. Name the conjugation indicated by each of the following endings:
   (1) -ere; (2) -ere; (3) -ire; (4) -are.
2. State the person, number, and tense indicated by the following endings from the 4th conjugation and the -īō 3d: (1) -iunt; (2) -ies; (3) -is; (4) -ībāmus; (5) -īmus; (6) -īt; (7) -ītis; (8) -īte; (9) -ītis; (10) -īs; (11) -īt; (12) -e; (13) -ībās.
3. State three points at which -īō verbs of the 3d conjugation differ from verbs of the 4th conjugation.
4. Translate the following in accordance with their specific forms:
   (1) veniēt (6) audiētis (11) veniēre (16) faciēunt
   (2) venit (7) audītis (12) facit (17) facis
   (3) veniunt (8) venīte (13) facēt (18) faciam
   (4) veniēnt (9) veniēs (14) faciēmus (19) faciēs
   (5) audīs (10) venī (15) facimus (20) facere
5. Given sentiō, sentīre, feel, and iaciō, iacere, throw, translate the following phrases into Latin:
   (1) I shall feel (8) feel (imper. sg.) (15) throw (imper. sg.)
   (2) we shall feel (9) he will feel (16) you (pl.) are throwing
   (3) he feels (10) we feel (17) we shall throw
   (4) you (pl.) feel (11) he is throwing (18) throw (imper. pl.)
   (5) they will feel (12) he will throw (19) to throw
   (6) they do feel (13) I shall throw (20) you (sg.) are throwing
   (7) to feel (14) we are throwing
6. Ex hāc terrā fugiēbāmus. 7. Cum filiā tuā fugē. 8. In illum locum fugiēnt. 9. Tempus fugiēt; hōrēs fugiēunt; senectūs venit. 10. Venīt cum...
amīcis vestrīs. 11. In patriam vestram veniebant. 12. Ὀ vir magne, in civi-
pecēniam in vīs inventīre possunt. 15. Tyrannus viam in hanc civitātem in-
venit. 16. Illōs cum amīcis ibi capiētis. 17. Ad tē cum magnīs cōpiīs ven-
mus. 18. Invenietne multām fānam gloriāmque ibi? 19. Iste bellum sem-
per faciēbat. 20. Iste hominēs pācem nōn faciēnt. 21. Multī hominēs illa
faciunt sed haec nōn faciēnt. 22. Officium nostrum facimus et faciēmus.
23. Magnām cōpiām librōrum faciam. 24. Puerī cum illō virō bonō vivē-
bant. 25. In librīs virōrum antiquōrum multam philosophīam et sapientīam inveniētis.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 11

1. Name the nominative singular and plural of the following:
   (1) 3d personal pronoun; (2) 1st per. pron.; (3) 2nd per. pron.

2. Translate the following pronouns in accordance with case(s) and num-
   ber; where a form is nom. or acc. so specify:
   (1) vōbīs; (2) nōbīs; (3) nōs; (4) vōs; (5) tuī; (6) mēi; (7) mīhi; (8) tībi;
   (9) tē; (10) mē.

3. Translate the following third-person pronouns in accordance with their
   gender(s), number(s), and case(s): (1) eōs; (2) eās; (3) eōrum; (4) eārum;
   (5) eiōs; (6) eā; (7) ea; (8) eō; (9) eī; (10) eīs; (11) eae; (12) id.

4. Give the Latin for the following:
   (1) his
   (2) her (possess.)
   (3) their (masc.)
   (4) their (fem.)
   (5) them (fem.)
   (6) them (masc.)
   (7) them (neut.)
   (8) its
   (9) to him
   (10) to her
   (11) by/w.fr. her
   (12) by/w.fr. him
   (13) to/for you (pl.)
   (14) to/for you (sg.)
   (15) they (masc.)
   (16) they (neut.)
   (17) they (fem.)
   (18) to/for it
   (19) it (neut. acc.)
   (20) you (emphatic nom. pl.)
   (21) you (emphatic nom. sg.)
   (22) you (acc. pl.)
   (23) us
   (24) we
   (25) to/for us
   (26) I (emphatic form)
   (27) to/for me

8. Eī idem dabō. 9. Nōs eī ea dabimus. 10. Ille mīhi id dabat. 11. Vōbīs
librōs eiōs dabimus. 12. Nōbīs librōs eōrum dabis. 13. Pecūniam eōrum
tībi dabimus. 14. Pecūniam eiōs mīhi dabant. 15. Eōs librōs ad eam mit-
tēmus. 16. Librum eiōs ad tē mittam. 17. Ille autem pecūniam eōrum ad
nōs mittēbat. 18. Eās cum eā mittimus. 19. Eum cum eīs mittēbat. 20. Eōs
cum amīcōs eiōrum mittēmus. 21. Tū mē cum amīcō eōrum mittēs. 22. Vōs
mēcum ad amīcōm eōrum mittēbatis. 23. Nōs tēcum in terram eōrum mittit.
24. Eās nōbiscum ad amīcōs eōrum mittent. 25. Eum vōbīscum ad amīcōs
eōrum mittam. 26. Tē cum eō ad mē mittent.
EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 12

1. Name the principal parts of a Latin verb in their regular sequence.

2. Give the principal parts of mittō, labeling and translating each one.

3. What is the major difference between the perfect and imperfect tenses?

4. You must be able to tell from what verb any specific verb form comes.

   Practice on the following list by naming the first principal part of each of the verbs in the list.

   (1) misērunt  (6) āctum  (11) remānserant  (16) dīxērunt
   (2) laudāveram  (7) est  (12) scripsimus  (17) erat
   (3) vincēbāmus  (8) dedimus  (13) fuit  (18) vīxī
   (4) dicitum  (9) futūrum  (14) fēcit  (19) faciēbās
   (5) fēcisti  (10) ēgimus  (15) fugere  (20) visum

5. Translate the following endings of the perfect system according to person, number, and tense in each instance, using these conventions: -i = I (perfect) . . . ; -eram = I had . . . ; -erābī = I shall have . . . ; (1) -ēris; (2) -ét; (3) -erunt; (4) -ētī; (5) -īmus; (6) -ērat; (7) -erimus; (8) -erāmus; (9) -ērās; (10) -erint; (11) -ērant; (12) -ēnt; (13) -ērātis.

6. Translate the following in accordance with the person, number, and tense of each:

   (1) videbant  (10) vīxisisti  (19) fugit  (28) remānserimus
   (2) viderant  (11) vīxērunt  (20) fūgit  (29) remānserāmus
   (3) vidiētā  (12) vincer  (21) fugiunt  (30) vēnit
   (4) fēcit  (13) vīcit  (22) fūgērunt  (31) venit
   (5) faciēbat  (14) vīcimus  (23) servāvit  (32) veniēbātis
   (6) fēcerāmus  (15) vīcinus  (24) servāverunt  (33) vēnistis
   (7) fēcimus  (16) dēcisti  (25) servāvistis  (34) vēnerunt
   (8) faciēmus  (17) dederātis  (26) servāverat  (35) veniunt
   (9) fēcērunt  (18) dēdimus  (27) servāverum  (36) vēnerant


22. Mihi grātiās ēgērunt (agent; agēbant; ēgerant; agunt). 23. Vōs fruīstis (eratīs; erīstis; eritīs; erērātis) virī īberī.
EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 13

1. State the essential nature of reflexive pronouns, showing how, as a logical consequence, they differ from other pronouns.
2. Explain why the declension of reflexive pronouns begins with the genitive rather than with the nominative.
3. In what reflexive pronouns is the spelling the same as that of the corresponding simple pronoun?
4. Translate the following reflexive forms in accordance with their case(s) and number(s): (1) mihi; (2) tē; (3) nōbīs; (4) sībī; (5) vōs; (6) sā; (7) vōbīs.
5. Explain why the singular of suus can mean their own as well as his own, and the plural can mean his own as well as their own.
6. Explain why ēorum always means their and eius always means his (her, its) regardless of whether the nouns on which they depend are singular or plural.
7. Although sē and ipse can both be translated into English by himself, explain the basic difference between the Latin words.

8. Caesar eōs servāvit.
10. Caesar sē servāvit.
11. Rōmānī sē servāvērunt.
12. Rōmānī eōs servāvērunt.
13. Rōmānī eum servāvērunt.
15. Caesar amīcōs suōs servāvit.
17. Caesar amīcōs eīus servāvit.
18. Caesar amīcum eōrum servāvit.
20. Rōmānī amīcum suum servāvērunt.
22. Rōmānī amīcum eōrum servāvērunt.
23. Rōmānī amīcōs eōrum servāvērunt.
24. Rōmānī amīcum eīus servāvērunt.
25. Rōmānī amīcōs eīus servāvērunt.
27. Caesar ipse sē servāvit.
28. Caesarīm ipsum servāvērunt.
30. Amīcum Rōmānōrum ipsōrum servāvērunt.
31. Amīcus Caesaris ipsīus sē servāvit.
32. Amīci Caesaris ipsīus sē servāvērunt.
33. Amīcus Caesaris ipsīus eum servāvit.
34. Ipsī amīcī Caesaris eum servāvērunt.
35. Nōs nōn servāvērunt.
36. Nōs servāvīmus.
37. Rōmānōs ipsōs servāvīmus.
38. Rōmānī ipsī tē nōn servāvērunt.
39. Tū tē servāvīsti.
40. Tū Rōmānōs ipsōs servāvīstī.
41. Mihi nihil dabat.
42. Mihi nihil dēcit.
43. Sībī nihil dēcit.
44. Sībī nihil dedērunt.
45. Eī nihil dedērunt.
46. Eī nihil dedērunt.
47. Mē vicī.
48. Mē vicīrunt.
49. Ŵam eōrum vicīrunt.
50. Ŵam suam vicīrunt.
51. Ŵam suam vicīt.
52. Fīlīōs suōs vicīt.
53. Fīlīōs suōs vicīrunt.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 14

1. In what specific case ending of all i-stem nouns does the characteristic i appear?
2. What are the other i-stem peculiarities of neuters in -e, -al, and -ar?
3. Translate each of the following according to its case(s) and number; when a form is nom. or acc. label it as such.

(I) arte (9) corporum (17) régum (25) virós
(2) artium (10) partis (18) rēgī (26) virī
(3) artēs (11) partibus (19) nōmina (27) virēs
(4) mari (12) partium (20) animalia (28) virīs
(5) maribus (13) urbe (21) animalī (29) vīs
(6) mare (14) urbi (22) animalīs (30) vīm
(7) maria (15) urbium (23) animalium (31) vīribus
(8) corpora (16) urbis (24) virium (32) vī

4. Of the forms in #3 above, list those which are i-stem forms.

5. Translate the following phrases into Latin:

(I) by/w.lfr. great force
(2) great man (acc.)
(3) of great strength
(4) to/t)r great force
(5) of many citizens
(6) by/w.lfr. a good citizen
(7) to/for many citizens
(8) many seas (nom.)
(9) by/w.lfr. a great sea
(10) a great sea (acc.)
(11) great force (acc.)
(12) of many men (vir)
(13) by/w.lfr. great strength
(14) great strength (ace.)

6. What kind of idea is expressed by each of the following ablatives?
(1) cum rēge; (2) ocūlis meīs; (3) cum cūrā; (4) lābōre meō.

7. Translate each of the following verb forms and name the verb from which each comes:

(I) cucurrērunt; (2) currēbāmus; (3) cucurrīstī; (4) trāxerāmus; (5) trahet; (6) trahunt; (7) gerēbat; (8) gerit; (9) gerunt; (10) gerēmus; (11) tenent; (12) tenēbunt; (13) tenuerunt; (14) tenuimus.


22. Name the type of ablative found in each of the following sentences above: 8, 9, 10, 12, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 20.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 15

1. State the difference between cardinal and ordinal numerals.
2. What cardinals are declined?
3. What ordinals are declined?
4. State the form or possible forms of each of the following: (1) duōbus; (2) mīlia; (3) tria; (4) duo; (5) quīnque; (6) mīlia; (7) decem; (8) duābus; (9) centum; (10) trium; (11) vīgintī; (12) octō.

5. Why is the genitive of the whole so called?

6. What construction did the Romans use after cardinal numerals?

7. Translate each of the following phrases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>unus cīvis</td>
<td>one citizen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decem cīvēs</td>
<td>ten citizens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pars cīvium</td>
<td>part of the citizenry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tres cīvēs</td>
<td>three citizens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tres ex sex cīvibus</td>
<td>three out of six citizens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīnque cīvēs</td>
<td>five citizens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīnque cīvēs</td>
<td>five citizens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>centum cīvēs</td>
<td>hundred citizens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>centum ex elvibus</td>
<td>hundred out of the elves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīlia cīvēs</td>
<td>thousands of citizens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīnovī</td>
<td>five times</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>satis pecuniāe</td>
<td>enough money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nihil aquae</td>
<td>nothing of water</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. When the Romans put a word of time in the ablative case without a preposition, what kind of ideas did they express?

9. Study the ablatives in the following sentences. Then translate the sentences and name the type of ablative found in each one.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cum amīcis veniebat.</td>
<td>When he met his friends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dnā hora veniet.</td>
<td>At a certain hour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eadem tempore venit.</td>
<td>At the same time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illo tempore librum scripsi.</td>
<td>He wrote a book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cum cuīta librum scribēbat.</td>
<td>When she was writing a book.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10. Illo tempore sōlō illā tria pericula timuit; sed mortem semper timēbat.


EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 16

1. If one has carefully learned the declension of cīvis and māre one can easily decline the 3d-declension adjective fortis, forte with the exception of one form. What is that form?
2. (1) Adjectives of the 3d declension may be classified as adjectives of 3 endings, 2 endings, or 1 ending. Which type is by far the most common? (2) In what one case do adjectives of 1 and 3 endings differ from those of 2 endings?

3. Cite and label three endings in which adjectives of the 3d declension show themselves to be i-stems.

4. Of the endings of the 3d-declension adjectives none is likely to cause recognition difficulty except perhaps the ablative singular. What is the normal ending of the ablative singular in all genders?

5. Can 3d-declension adjectives be used with nouns of the 1st or the 2nd declension?

6. Translate the following phrases in accordance with their case(s) and number. When they are nom. or acc., so indicate.

(1) dulcī puellae (8) omnia nōmina (15) beātō hominī
(2) dulcī puellā (9) omnia marīa (16) omnī marī
(3) dulcī mātrē (10) omnia partē (17) omnī bonae artī
(4) dulcī mātrī (11) omnium partium (18) omnī bonā arte
(5) beātē mātrē (12) omnium rēgum (19) omnis bonae artis
(6) beātā mātrē (13) omnium bellōrum (20) vī celerī
(7) omnia bella (14) beātō homine


20. Hominēs officia difficilia in omnibus terrīs timent.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 17

1. Define the terms “antecedent” and “relative pronoun.”

2. (1) What determines the case of the Latin relative pronoun? (2) What determines the gender and the number of the relative pronoun?

3. State in what ways a relative agrees with its antecedent.

4. Name (1) the English relative pronoun which refers to persons and (2) the one which refers to anything else. (3) Since in Latin the one relative pronoun serves both purposes, what two English meanings does it have?

5. Translate the following in accordance with their case(s) and number(s).
When a form is nom. or acc., so indicate if the translation does not make
the point clear.

(1) cui (4) cuius (7) quâ (10) quâs
(2) quôs (5) quibus (8) quî (11) quorum
(3) qua (6) quod (9) quem (12) quam

6. Civem laudáverunt quem miserátus. 7. Decem civés laudáverunt quós
miserátus. 8. Civem laudáverunt qui patriam serváverat. 9. Centum civés
laudáverunt qui patriam serváverant. 10. Civem laudáverunt cuius filius
patriam serváverat. 11. Civés laudáverunt quórum septem filii patriam ser-
civibus laudáverunt quibus patriam commíserunt. 14. Civem laudáverunt
quócum venerant. 15. Civés laudáverunt quibuscum vénérant. 16. Cum
cive vénit cui vítam suam commíserat. 17. Tyranní iúra cívium déle­nt quós
capíunt. 18. Tyrannus urbem délevit ex quâ milia cívium fugerant. 19.
Tyrannus urbem délevit in quam illí novem civés fugerant. 20. Tyrannus
urbès délevit ex quibus civès fugerant. 21. Tyrannus urbes délevit in quás
civés fugerant. 22. Perrículum superávit quod timuimus. 23. Perícula su­
perávit quae timuimus. 24. Puellís quás laudábát libros dedit. 25. Vir cui­s
filiam amás in urbem veniebat. 26. Vîrō cuius filiam amás vítam suam
commísit. 27. Mâtrems adiuvábát, quae multum virtús habuit. 28. Mâtri­
bus quae multós filís habuérunt réx pecúniam dábât.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 18

1. Define the term “passive voice” by explaining the etymology of
“passive.”
2. What is the difference between the ablative of means and the ablative of
agent in both meaning and construction?
3. (1) What one letter occurs in 5 of the 6 passive personal endings and can
thus be regarded as the peculiar sign of the passive?
(2) Does this characteristically passive letter occur in any of the corre­
sponding active personal endings?
4. Give the English pronoun by which each of the following passive endings
can be translated: (1) -mur; (2) -tur; (3) -r; (4) -ntur; (5) -ris; (6) -mini.
5. (1) Name the tense signs of the imperfect and the future in the passive
voice of the 1st and 2nd conjugations.
(2) Are these the same as the tense signs in the active voice?
6. If -bar can be translated “I was being ...” and -bor, “I shall be ...,”
translate each of the following: (1) -bimur; (2) -bámini; (3) -bâtur;
(4) -beris; (5) -buntur; (6) -bâmur; (7) -bitur; (8) -bãris; (9) -bimini;
(10) -buntur.
7. Mâ terrent; ab eis terreor; vi eorum terreor. 8. Tyrannus hanc urbem dé-

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 19

1. Name the two basic verbal elements (1) of which the perfect passive indicative of all verbs is composed, and (2) of which the pluperfect passive indicative is composed.

2. In translation how does (1) vir missus est differ from vir mittitur, and (2) vir missus erat, from vir mittēbatur?

3. What is the use of the interrogative pronoun?

4. In what forms does the interrogative pronoun differ conspicuously in spelling from the relative?

5. By what two syntactical criteria can the interrogative pronoun be distinguished from the relative even when both have the same spelling?

6. Translate the following in accordance with their forms:

| (1) movētur | (6) delēbantur | (11) tenēbāmur |
| (2) mōtus est | (7) delētī sunt | (12) mūtātus erat |
| (3) mōtum erat | (8) tenēmur | (13) mūtātus est |
| (4) movēbātur | (9) tentī sumus | (14) mūtātur |
| (5) delētī erant | (10) tentī erāmus | (15) mūtābātur |

7. Translate the following forms of the interrogative pronoun: (1) cuius?; (2) quem?; (3) qui?; (4) quid?; (5) quōrum?; (6) cui?; (7) quās?; (8) quis?; (9) quae?


EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 20

1. Indicate the force of the following masculine and feminine endings of the 4th declension: (1) -um; (2) -uum; (3) -i; (4) -us; (5) -us; (6) -uī.

2. Translate the following nouns in accordance with their case forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Case</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>manu</td>
<td>(6) fructibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manus</td>
<td>(7) fructum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manuum</td>
<td>(8) fructūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manū</td>
<td>(9) fructuum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manūs</td>
<td>(10) fructū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(11) senātūs (sg.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(12) senātu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(13) senātus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(14) senātū</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. (1) What gender predominates in the 4th declension?
   (2) Name the noun which is the most common exception to this rule.

4. (1) Explain the difference of idea between the ablative of place from which and the ablative of separation.
   (2) Which of the two is regular with verbs of freeing, lacking, and depriving?
   (3) Which of the two is regular with verbs of motion?

5. State any differences of construction between them.


11. Cōpiāe nostrae bellum longum contrā ācrēs manus tyrannī gessērunt.
26. What idea is expressed by each of the following ablatives, respectively?
- tempore (6), patria (7), cō (8), vírō (9), méttū (10), nóbbīs (12), patria (13),
- sceleribus (14), méttū (15), studīō (16), manibus (17), cópiā (22), aetāte
- (23), méttū (24).

**EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 21**

1. Give the passive personal endings of the present and future tenses.
2. Repeat *aloud* the present and future passive of the model verbs agō,
   audiō, and capiō.
3. How can the present passive infinitive be distinguished from the active
   in the 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations? Illustrate by changing the following
   active infinitives into passive ones: (1) sentīre; (2) movēre; (3) servāre;
   (4) scīre; (5) tenēre. Translate each.
4. What is exceptional about the form of the present passive infinitive of
   the 3d conjugation? Illustrate by changing the following active infinitives
   into passive ones: (1) mittēre; (2) iscere; (3) tangere; (4) trahere. Trans­
   late each.
5. Translate each of the following in accordance with its form:

   (1) mittar
   (7) raperit
   (13) raperis
   (19) tangēmini

   (2) mitteris
   (8) rapiētur
   (14) rapiēris
   (20) sciēris

   (3) mitteris
   (9) rapi
   (15) tanguntur
   (21) sciēris

   (4) mitti
   (10) rapimur
   (16) tangentur
   (22) sciātur

   (5) mittuntur
   (11) rapientur
   (17) tangī
   (23) sciitur

   (6) mitter
   (12) rapinuntur
   (18) tangeris
   (24) sciēri

6. Quis mittitur (mittētur, mittēbātur, missus est)? 7. Ā quō hae litterae mitt-
   tentur (missae sunt, mittuntur)? 8. Cuius manū illae litterae scripāe sunt
   (scribentur)? 9. Quid dictum est (dīcēbātur, dīcētur, dīcitur)? 10. “Quis ra-
   legēris/neglegēmini (neglēctus es/neglēctī estis). 13. Post multās hōrās
15. Libertātis causā ċivītās nostrā ab alterō virō gerī dēbet. 16. Animus eius
   pecūniā tangī nōn poterat. 17. Amor patriae in omnī animō sentiēbātur
   (sentīētur, sentītur, sensus est). 18. Amōre patriae cum aliis ĉivibus iun-
   gimur (iungēbāmuri, iungēmùr). 19. Amīcitia nōn semper intellegitur, sed
   sentītur. 20. Sapientia et vēritās in illīs duōbus homīnibus nōn invenientur
   (inveniuntur, inventae sunt). 21. Sapientia etiam multā pecūniā nōn parā-
   tur (parābītur, parāta est). 22. Vēritās saepe nōn scitur (sciētur, scīta est),
   quod studium eius est difficīle. 23. Nōn sīne magnā labōre vēritās inveniē-
   tur (invenīta est, potēst invenītī). 24. Aliī studīō pecūniāe atque laudis tra-
   huntur, nōs dēbēmus amōre vēritātis sapientiaeque trahī.
EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 22

1. As u is characteristic of the 4th declension, what vowel is characteristic of the 5th declension?

2. List the case endings of the 5th declension which are enough like the corresponding endings of the 3rd declension that they can be immediately recognized without difficulty.

3. (1) What is the gender of most nouns of the 5th declension?
   (2) Name the chief exception.

4. Translate each of the following in accordance with its case(s) and number(s). Where a form is nom. or acc., so state.

   (1) spēl
   (2) sperum
   (3) spēm
   (4) spēbus
   (5) spēs

   (6) fidē
   (7) fidem
   (8) fidei
   (9) dīērum
   (10) dieis

   (11) dīēbus
   (12) rem
   (13) rērum
   (14) rē
   (15) rēbus

   (16) reī
   (17) ignium
   (18) ignem
   (19) ignibus
   (20) ignes

5. Name the type of adverbial idea in each of the following, and then translate the sentence.

   (1) In urbe remānisit.
   (2) Únā hōrā veniet.
   (3) Eō tempore vēnit.
   (4) Cum eīs vēnit.
   (5) Ex urbe vēnit.
   (6) Ignē carent.
   (7) Illud ignē factum est.
   (8) Id ab eīs factum est.
   (9) Id cum fidē factum est.

6. Concerning each of the following adverbial ideas, state whether in Latin the ablative alone expresses the idea, or whether the Romans used a preposition with the ablative, or whether a preposition was sometimes used and sometimes not. Base your answers on the rules learned thus far.

   (1) personal agent
   (2) accompaniment
   (3) separation
   (4) place where
   (5) means
   (6) manner
   (7) place from which
   (8) time when or within when

7. Eō tempore libertātem illōrum decem cūvium cum fidē cōnservāvit.

8. Rem pūblīcām māgnā cum eūrā gessit.

9. Rēs pūblīcā māgnā eūrā ab eō gestā est.

10. Multae rēs bonae in mediā urbe visae sunt.

11. Eō dīē multās rēs cum spē parāvērunt.

12. Ignem ex manibus puerī eripuimus.

13. Quīnque dīēbus Cicerō rem pūblīcām ē pericūlō ēripīt.


15. Terra homīnēs fruētūs bonīs alīt.

16. Incertās spēs eōrum virtūte suā auiīt.

17. Hāc actūte spēs nostrae ē īūs tribūs tyrannōs tolūntur.

18. Septem ex amīcis nostrīs ex illā rē pūblīcā māgnō cum mētū vēnērunt.

19. Tōtā gēns ē finēs huiūs rē pūblīcāe māgnā cum manū amīcōrum ūnō dīē vēnit.


21. Si illī fide carent, nūlla spēs est amīcitiae et pācis.
22. Bona fidēs et amor huius rei pūblicae possunt nōs cōnservārē. 23. Tōtam vītam huic rei pūblicae dedistī.

24. What idea is expressed by each of the following ablatives? (The numbers refer to the sentences.) (7) tempore, fidē; (8) cūrā; (9) cūrā; (10) urbe; (11) diē, spē; (13) diēbus, pérīculō; (14) metū; (15) fructūs; (16) vir­tūte; (17) aetāte, tyrannīs; (18) ré pūblīcā, metū; (19) manū, diē; (21) fidē.

**EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 23**

1. State what Latin participle is indicated by each of the following endings and give the English suffix or phrase which can be used as an approximate equivalent in each instance: (1) -tus; (2) -ns; (3) -sūrus; (4) -ntem; (5) -tūrus; (6) -ndus; (7) -sus; (8) -ntēs; (9) -st; (10) -tīs. Such forms should be practiced aloud until you have an immediate linguistic reflex to each one. These reflexes can be tested in the following exercise.

2. Translate the following participles in accordance with their tense and voice.

   (1) futūrus    (7) versus    (13) faciendus    (19) datū
   (2) pressūrus  (8) versūrus  (14) raptūntēs  (20) datūrōs
   (3) premēns    (9) dictus     (15) raptūrōs   (21) dantem
   (4) pressus    (10) dicēns    (16) cupidā     (22) mōtus
   (5) premendus  (11) dictūrus  (17) cupidēntēs (23) moventem
   (6) vertēns    (12) factus    (18) dandum     (24) mōtūrī

3. Translate the following participles or participial phrases into Latin in their nom. sg. masc. form.

   (1) (having been) seen          (10) (having been) conquered
   (2) seeing                       (11) about to conquer
   (3) about to see                 (12) conquering
   (4) to be written                (13) about to join
   (5) about to write               (14) joining
   (6) (having been) written        (15) (having been) dragged
   (7) sending                      (16) dragging
   (8) (having been) sent           (17) about to throw
   (9) about to send                (18) (having been) thrown


EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 24
1. (1) What are the two essential parts of a regular ablative absolute in Latin? (2) Can the noun or pronoun of an ablative absolute also appear as the subject or the object of the verb?
2. (1) Explain the term “absolute.” (2) Guided by the examples in Chapter 24, p. 156, tell what punctuation usually indicates an ablative absolute, and show how this harmonizes with the term “absolute.”
3. Should the ablative absolute always be translated literally? Explain.
4. Name five subordinating conjunctions in English which may be used to translate the ablative absolute depending on the requirements of the context.
5. State whether the Romans would have regarded any or all of the following sentences as incorrect, and explain why. (Examples in Chapter 24 will help you.)
   (1) Urbe captā, Caesar eam dēlivit.
   (2) Caesar, urbem captus, eam dēlivit.
   (3) Caesar urbem captam dēlivit.
   (4) Urbe captā, Caesar multās gentēs dēlivit.
6. (1) What idea is expressed by the -odus participle (gerundive) + sum? (2) Explain the agreement of the -odus, -oda, -udum participle. (3) What Latin verb + the infinitive expresses a similar idea?
7. (1) Explain the syntax of mihi in the following sentence: Cīvītās mihi cōnservanda est. (2) Fill out the blank in the following sentence with the Latin for “by me” and explain the construction: Cīvītās—cōnservātā est.

26. From the above sentences list:
A. 10 instances of the ablative absolute.
B. 7 instances of the -ndus sum construction (passive periphrastic).
C. 5 instances of the dative of agent.
D. 2 instances of the ablative of agent.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 25

1. Review the present active and passive infinitives of all four conjugations.
2. If -tūrus (-sūrus) marks the future active participle, what form logically is -tūrus (-sūrus) esse?
3. If -tus (-sus) marks the perfect passive participle, what form logically is -tus (-sus) esse?
4. With what do the participial elements of the above infinitives (the -tūrus, -tūrō, -tūrum and the -tus, -a, -um) agree?
5. To what English verb phrase is the Latin ending -isse equivalent? Repeat this sufficiently so that when you see -isse your linguistic reflex automatically and instantly gives you the proper tense and voice of the infinitive.
6. Now try your reflexes by translating the following forms in accordance with their tense and voice.

| (1) mōvisse | (11) sustulisse | (21) quaesītum esse |
| (2) mōtus esse | (12) trāxisse | (22) expulsum esse |
| (3) mōttūrus esse | (13) tētigisse | (23) relictōs esse |
| (4) mōvērī | (14) amāvisse | (24) data esse |
| (5) dīcī | (15) vīcisse | (25) datūra esse |
| (6) scīrī | (16) vīxisse | (26) versūrum esse |
| (7) servārī | (17) trāctōs esse | (27) pressūrōs esse |
| (8) raptī | (18) vīsam esse | (28) raptūrōs esse |
| (9) mitī | (19) raptum esse | (29) iussūrum esse |
| (10) cōrēdidisse | (20) missōs esse | (30) tāctūrōs esse |

7. Explain the difference between a direct and an indirect statement.
8. Indicate what verbs in the following list may introduce an indirect statement and give their meanings.
9. In what four main categories can we list most verbs which introduce indirect statements?

10. In English the indirect statement most often appears as a “that” clause, though an infinitive with subject accusative is sometimes used (“I believe that he is brave”; “I believe him to be brave”). What is the form of the indirect statement in classical Latin?

11. In what case did the Romans put the subject of an infinitive?

12. In Latin indirect statement does the tense of the infinitive depend on the tense of the verb of saying? In other words, must a present infinitive be used only with a present main verb, a perfect only with a perfect main verb, etc.?

13. What time relative to that of the main verb does each of the following infinitive tenses indicate: (1) perfect; (2) future; (3) present?


18. Čras audīēt (A) eōs veniēre (i.e., crās); (B) eōs vēnisce (e.g., heri); (C) eōs ventūrōs esse (e.g., paucaēs diēbus).

19. Hodiē audīēt (A) eōs veniēre (hodiē); (B) eōs vēnisce (heri); (C) eōs ventūrōs esse (max, suōn).

20. Heri audīēvit (A) eōs veniēre (heri); (B) eōs vēnisce (e.g., prēdiē, the day before yesterday); (C) eōs ventūrōs (paucaēs diēbus).


25. Scītis illōs esse (futūrōs esse, fuisse) semper fīdēlēs.

26. Scīvītis illōs esse (futūrōs esse, fuisse) semper fīdēlēs. 27. Putābant tyrannum sibi expellendum esse.

28. Crēdīmus pācem omnībus ducibus quaerendam esse.

29. Dīcit pācem ab decem ducibus quaerī (quaetsītam esse).

30. Dīxit duōs duēs pācem quaesīturōs esse (quaerīere, quaetsīvīse).

31. Hostēs spērant sē omnēs rēs pūblicās victūros esse.

32. Bene scīō mē multa nescīre; nēmō enim potest omnia scīre.

33. All infinitives except one in the above sentences are infinitives in indirect statement. Name that one exception.

34. Explain the syntax of the following words by stating in each instance (A) the form and (B) the reason for the form: (14) tē; fācisse; (16) eōs; (17) ventūrōs esse; (21) eum; (22) hoc; (23) eō; (24) hostibus; (25) fīdēlēs; (27) sibi; (28) pācem; ducibus; (29) ducibus; (30) pācem; (31) rēs pūblicās.
EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 26

1. (1) In the comparison of adjectives, to what English ending does the Latin -ior correspond?
   (2) What mnemonic aid can be found in their superficial similarity?
2. (1) To what English adjectival ending does -issimus correspond?
   (2) Can any mnemonic device be found here?
3. (1) To what part of an adjective are -ior and -issimus normally added?
   (2) Illustrate by adding these endings to the following adjectives: turpis; vēlōx, gen. vēlōcis, swift; prūdēns, gen. prūdentis, prudent.
4. If acerbus means harsh give (1) three possible forces of the comparative acerbior and (2) two possible forces of the superlative acerbissimus.
5. Give the meaning of quam (1) with the comparative degree (e.g., hic erat acerbior quam ille) and (2) with the superlative (e.g., hic erat quam acerbissimus).
6. What case follows quam, than?
7. (1) Do most adjectives of the third declension have consonant stems or i-stems?
   (2) Do comparatives have consonant stems or i-stems?

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 27

1. (1) What is peculiar about the comparison of adjectives in which the masculine of the positive degree ends in -er?
   (2) Does this hold for adjectives of any declension or only for those of the 1st and 2nd declension?
2. (1) What is peculiar about the comparison of facīlis?
   (2) Do all adjectives in -īlis follow this rule? Be specific.
3. Some of the most common adjectives are the most irregular in their comparison. To illustrate how helpful English can be in learning these
irregular forms, write each of the following Latin words on a separate line:

parvus, malus, bonus, (prō), magnus, superus, multus;
and then, choosing from the following list, write opposite each of them the English words which suggest the comparative and the superlative respectively:
pessimist, prime, minus, ameliorate, summit, maximum, supreme,
optimist, plus, superior, pejorative, prior, major, minimum.

4. Translate the following:

(1) bellum minus
(2) bellum pessimum
(3) bellum maius
(4) bella priōra
(5) liber simillimus
(6) liber difficilior
(7) puer minimus
(8) puer melior
(9) puella pulcherrima
(10) puella pulchrior
(11) puellae plurimae
(12) fidēs maior
(13) fidēs minima
(14) mare minus
(15) in mari minōre
(16) maria maiōra
(17) fructūs optimī
(18) fructūs peior
(19) homīnēs acerrimī
(20) homīnēs aciōrēs
(21) homīnēs plūrēs
(22) labor difficilīmus
(23) labor suprēmus
(24) fidēs labōrēs
(25) fidēs labōrēs
(26) duces optimī
(27) duces maiōrēs
(28) duces meliōrēs
(29) dōna minima
(30) dōna plurēs
(31) dōna prīma
(32) plūs laudīs
(33) plūres laudēs
(34) civīs pessimi
(35) civīs meliōrēs
(36) civīs liberrimi


EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 28

1. What does the subjunctive usually indicate in Latin—a fact or something other than a fact?
2. Is the subjunctive more or less common in Latin than it is in English?
3. What vowel is the sign of the present subjunctive (1) in the first conjugation and (2) in the other conjugations?
4. When the verb of the main clause is in the subjunctive, what is the force of this subjunctive?
5. What idea is expressed by the subjunctive in a *subordinate clause* introduced by *ut* or *quod*?

6. In this chapter when *nec* is used with a *main verb* in the subjunctive, what kind of subjunctive is it?

7. Did the Roman prose-writers of the classical period use the infinitive to express purpose as we do in English?

8. Whenever in the following list a form is subjunctive, so label it, indicating also its person and number. The indicative forms are to be translated in accordance with their person, number, and tense.

   (1) mittet (11) audiēmur (21) liberaēmini
   (2) mittat (12) audiāmur (22) liberaēbimini
   (3) mittit (13) audiēmur (23) delentur
   (4) det (14) eripīās (24) déleantur
   (5) dat (15) eripīās (25) vincēris
   (6) crēdant (16) eripīēs (26) vincēris
   (7) crēdunt (17) scientur (27) vincāris
   (8) crēdent (18) scientur (28) dicimus
   (9) movent (19) scientur (29) dicēmus
   (10) moveant (20) liberaēminī (30) dicāmus


24. Explain the syntax of the following words (i.e., copy the words each on a new line, state the form, and give the reason for that form): (9) veniat; (10) discēdant, vīvāmus; (11) faciant; (12) praestat, amētur; (13) discēdātis; (14) faciāmus; (15) date, armīs, careant; (16) eōs, factūrōs esse, vitent; (17) parēmus, tollātur; (18) armīs, ēripētur; (19) scribant; (20) accipiēmus; (21) faciat, agat; (22) nārrā, scribantur; (23) quaeōmus.

**EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 29**

1. What is the easy rule for the recognition and the formation of the imperfect subjunctive active and passive?
2. Does this rule apply to such irregular verbs as *sum* and *possam*?
3. The indicatives in the following list are to be translated according to their forms. The subjunctives are to be so labeled, with indication also of their tense, person, and number.

| (1) vocaret | (11) dicat | (21) possimus |
| (2) inveniērent | (12) dicet | (22) essent |
| (3) vidērēmus | (13) dicit | (23) accipiam |
| (4) dicērem | (14) sint | (24) accipiam |
| (5) ēriperēs | (15) posset | (25) acciperēs |
| (6) servet | (16) possit | (26) expellēmini |
| (7) servārētis | (17) discēderent | (27) expellerēmini |
| (8) videat | (18) discēdent | (28) expellāmini |
| (9) inveniēs | (19) discēdant | (29) moverentur |
| (10) inveniās | (20) dēmus | (30) moventur |

4. How can the idea of result be expressed in Latin?
5. How can result clauses be distinguished from purpose clauses?
6. When and where is the imperfect subjunctive used?

7. *Optimōs librosum tantā cum curā légurunt ut multum sapientiae discerent.*
8. *Bonōs libros cum curā legēbamus ut sapientiam discerēmus.*
9. *Optimi libri disciplīs legēndī sunt ut vēritātem et mōres bonōs discant.*
10. *Sapientissimī auctōrēs plurēs librōs scribant ut omnēs gentēs adiuvaē possint.*
11. *Animī plurimōrum hominum tam stultī sunt ut discere nōn cupiant.*
12. *At multae mentēs ita acrēs sunt ut bene discere possint.*
13. *Quīdam magistrī disciplīs tantā cum arte docēbant ut ipsī disciplī quidem discere cuperent.*
14. *Imperium istūs tyrannī tantum erat ut senātus cūm expellere nōn possit.*
15. *Omnēs cīvēs sē patriae dent nē hostēs libertātem tollant.*
16. *Caesar tām acer dux erat ut hostēs mihiēs Romanōs nōn vincerent.*
21. *Libertātem sēc amāvērunt ut numquam ab hostibus vincerentur.*

22. Explain the syntax of the following words: (7) discerent; (8) discerēmus; (9) discant; (10) scribant, possint; (11) cupiant; (12) possint; (13) cuperent; (14) posset; (15) dent, tollant; (16) vincerent; (17) cōnservētur; (18) amārent; (19) amāret; (20) opprimerentur; (21) vincerentur.

**EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 30**

1. As the form of the imperfect subjunctive active is the present active infinitive plus personal endings, how can the pluperfect subjunctive active be easily recognized?
2. As the pluperfect indicative passive is the perfect passive particle + eram (i.e., the imperfect indicative of *sum*), what parallel rule holds for the pluperfect subjunctive passive?

3. If *positus* est is the perfect indicative passive, what most naturally is *positus* sit?

4. What forms of the active indicative do the forms of the perfect subjunctive active resemble in most instances?

5. State the tense, voice, person, and number of each of the following subjunctives:

   (1) ponērētur
   (2) posuissem
   (3) posītī sint
   (4) ponārum
   (5) posuerint
   (6) ponērēmus
   (7) posuissestis
   (8) positus esset
   (9) darent
   (10) datū essēmus
   (11) det
   (12) datus sīs
   (13) dedissēs
   (14) daretur
   (15) dederīmus
   (16) dedissent

6. (1) Name the primary tenses of the indicative.
   (2) Name the primary tenses of the subjunctive.
   (3) Name the historical tenses of the indicative.
   (4) Name the historical tenses of the subjunctive.

7. (1) What time does the present subjunctive indicate relative to that of a primary main verb?
   (2) What time does the imperfect subjunctive indicate relative to that of a historical main verb?
   (3) What time does the perfect subjunctive indicate relative to that of a primary main verb?
   (4) What time does the pluperfect subjunctive indicate relative to that of a secondary main verb?


   Dīc mihi quis vēnerit (veniat).

   18. Quae rōrī rogāvit cūr cēterī cīvēs hae cōnsilia nōn cognōvissent.
   19. Quī rogāvit cūr cēterī cīvēs hae cōnsilia nōn cognōvissent.
   20. Dūc nūnītāvīmus cēterōs mīlītēs in illam terram fugere (fugisse).
   22. Audivīmus cīvēs tam fīdēs esse ut rem pūblicam cōnservārent.
   23. Audivīmus quid cīvēs fēcissent ut rem pūblicam cōnservārent.
   24. Quae rēbant quōrum in rē pūblicā pāx invenītī posset.
   25. Cognōvīmus pācem in patriā eōrum nōn inventam esse.
   26. Iīt stultī semper rogant quid sit melius quam imperium aut pecūnīa.
   27. Nōs quidem pūtāmus pecūnīam ipsam nōn esse malam; sed crēdīmus vēritātem et libertātem et amīcitiam esse melīōsēs et maiōrēs.
   28. Haec cupīmus ut vītam pulchri­ōrem agāmus; nam pecūnīa sōla et imperium possunt hūminēs dūrōs fācere,
ut felicès non sint. 29. Denique omnia expônat ut iam comprehendátis quanta scelera contra rem públicam commissa sint.

30. Explain the syntax of the following: (15) posita esset; (16) fäcerit; (17) fecisset; (18) vänerit; (20) fugere; (21) fugerent; (22) esse, cônser värent; (23) fecissent, cônser värent; (24) posset; (25) inveniant esse; (26) sit; (27) esse; (28) agámus, sint; (29) expônat, comprehendâtis, commissa sint.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 31

1. Name the three possible meanings of cum + the subjunctive.
2. When tamen follows a cum-cause, what does cum regularly mean?
3. (1) To what conjugation does fera belong?
   (2) State the irregularity which the following forms of fera have in common: ferre, fers, fert, fertis, ferris, fertur.
4. In the following list label the subjunctives and translate the rest according to their forms.

   (1) ferat  (6) ferunt  (11) fertis  (16) tulisse
   (2) fert   (7) ferent  (12) ferëris  (17) lätirus esse
   (3) feret  (8) ferant  (13) ferris  (18) ferendus
   (4) feret  (9) fertur  (14) fer  (19) latus esse
   (5) ferre  (10) ferte  (15) ferrf  (20) tulisset

11. Cum dōna iùcunda tulissent, potuī tamen insidiâs eórum cognōscre.

20. Explain the syntax of the following words: (5) dixissâmus, oblatûros esse; (6) contulissent; (7) offerant; (8) esset; (9) offerantur; (10) exposuisset, peteret; (11) tulissent; (12) comprehendâmus; (13) cōnfer; (14) férant; (15) nāvibus, lâttûros esse; (16) vicissent; (17) offerent; (19) dixisset.
EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 32

1. What is the regular positive ending (1) of adverbs made from adjectives of the first and the second declensions and (2) of adverbs made from adjectives of the third declension?

2. In English what adverbial ending is equivalent to the Latin adverbial -e or -iter?

3. Do all Latin adverbs of the positive degree end in -e or -iter?

4. (1) What is the ending of the comparative degree of an adverb in Latin? (2) With what form of the adjective is this identical? (3) In English how is the comparative degree of the adverb usually formed?

5. How does the base of the superlative degree of a Latin adverb compare with that of the corresponding adjective?

6. Translate each of the following adverbs in two ways: (1) liberius; (2) liberrime.

7. Translate each of the following adverbs in accordance with its form.

   (1) iucundë   (6) breviter   (11) minimë   (16) minus
   (2) iucundius (7) celerrimë   (12) magis   (17) facile
   (3) iucundissimë (8) peius   (13) diütius   (18) maximë
   (4) melius   (9) fidëlius   (14) male   (19) gravissimë
   (5) fidëliissimë (10) facilius   (15) miseræ   (20) celerius

8. (1) What is the stem of volô in the indicative? (2) What is the stem of volô in the present and the imperfect subjunctive?

9. To what other irregular verb is volô similar in the present subjunctive?

10. Label the subjunctives in the following list and translate the other forms.

    (1) volës   (7) mällëmus   (13) voluissës (19) voluisst
    (2) vefts   (8) voluissës (14) volunt   (20) vellet
    (3) vis   (9) volam   (15) voluimus (21) nolunt
    (4) velës   (10) volabant (16) velle   (22) nölett
    (5) mävult (11) volet   (17) voluerat (23) mäilt
    (6) velëmus (12) vultis   (18) voluerunt (24) nölet


EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 33

1. (1) What form of the verb is found in both clauses of a future less vivid condition?
   (2) Explain why this construction is called “less vivid” as compared with the simple future (or “future more vivid?”)

2. (1) Name the specific type of condition (A) that has the imperfect subjunctive in both clauses and (B) that has the pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses.
   (2) In each of these conditions which part of the sentence is essentially the same in both Latin and English?

3. What is the regular negative of the conditional clause in Latin?

4. What type of Latin condition is translated by “should ... would” and hence can be called a “should-would condition”?

5. What is the meaning of quis, quid after sī, nisi, nē, and num?


39. Name in sequence the types of conditions found in sentences 6–10 and 21–26.
EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 34

1. State the chief peculiarity of deponent verbs.
2. Write a synopsis of the following verbs in the 6 tenses of the indicative and the 4 tenses of the subjunctive as indicated:
   (1) cōnōr in the 1st person plural.
   (2) loquor in the 3rd person singular.
3. (1) Write, label, and translate all the participles of patior.
   (2) Write, label, and translate all the infinitives of patior.
4. Using the proper form of illud cōnsilium fill in the following blanks to complete the idea suggested by the English sentence in each instance.
   (1) He will not follow that plan: nōn sequētur ____.
   (2) He will not use that plan: nōn utētur ____.
   (3) He will not permit that plan: nōn patiētur ____.
5. Explain the proper form of illud cōnsilium in #4 (2) above.
6. Name the active forms found in deponent verbs.
7. Give the imperative forms of (1) cōnōr and (2) loquor, and translate each one.
8. Translate the following participles: (1) locūtus; (2) mortuus; (3) cōnātus; (4) passus; (5) secūtus; (6) ēgressus; (7) profectus.
9. In the following list label any subjunctive forms and translate the rest:
   (1) ētētur (6) ūsus esset (11) pātī (16) patitur
   (2) ētētur (7) ūsūrum esse (12) passī sunt (17) patiēmur
   (3) ētētur (8) patiēris (13) passum esse (18) arbitriētur
   (4) ētērētur (9) paterīs (14) patientēs (19) arbitriētūr
   (5) ūsus (10) paterē (15) patiētur (20) patiēndum est
10. Arbitrātur haec mala patienda esse. 11. Cōnābimur haec mala pātī.

28. Name the type of condition found above in each of the following sentences: 12, 16, 20, 26.
29. Explain the syntax of the following: (14) passūrōs esse; (17) verbīs; (18) locōrī, moremūrī; (19) cōnsiliō, arbitrārētur; (21) diē; (22) utāmūr; (25) nocte; (26) librīs.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 35

1. A certain number of verbs, which in English apparently take a direct object, in Latin take a dative. In lieu of a good rule to cover such verbs, what procedures can prove helpful?
2. Some other verbs also, when compounded with certain prepositions, may take a dative.
   (1) What is the concept that underlies this?
   (2) Do all compound verbs take the dative?
3. Copy each of the following verbs on a new line; after it write that one of the three forms eī, eum, eī which is in the case required by the verb; and then translate the whole expression, using the pronoun to mean “him” generally and “it” where necessary.
   (1) cognōscunt (7) patiuntur (13) superant (19) persuādēnt
   (2) ignōscunt (8) inventī (14) crēdunt (20) ātūntur
   (3) serviunt (9) nocent (15) carent (21) pellunt
   (4) servīt (10) iuvant (16) student (22) parēnt
   (5) parāvī (11) placent (17) hortantur (23) imperant
   (6) pārūi (12) iacīunt (18) sequuntur (24) iūbent
4. Ducem servāvit.
5. Ducī servīvit.
7. Viī fortēs aliōs servant.
8. Ille servus filiō meō servīvit et eum servāvit.
9. Si quis sibi sōlī serviet, rem publicam numquam servābit.
10. Si quis hunc labōrem suscēpisset, mīlē virōs servāvisset.
11. Deī mīhi ignōscent; vōs, ē civēs, tūtī exercitūs ignōscite.
12. Si Deum nōbis ignōscere volumus, nōs dēbēmus aliīs hominibus ignōscere.
15. Cum bonā fīdē carērēs, tībī crēdere nōn poterant.
17. Nisi Caesar civibus placēbit, vitae eius nōn parcent.
18. Litterīs Latīnīs studeō, quae mīhi placent etiam si amīcis mēs persuādere nōn possīm.
19. Vēritātī et sapientiēs semper studēamus et pārēamus.
20. Optīmīs rēbus semper studēte si vērē esse fēlicēs vultūs.
22. Vir bonus nēminē nocēre vult; omnibus parcit, omnēs iuvat.
23. Praemia mea sunt simillima tuīs.
24. Explain the syntax of the following: (5) ducī; (8) eum; (9) sībi; (11) exercitūs; (12) hominibus; (13) filiīs; (14) mīhi; (15) fīdē; (16) ducī, pārēamus, servet; (17) civibus, vitae; (18) litterīs, amīcis; (21) rēbus, librīs, ātūmūr; (22) omnibus; (23) tuīs.
EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 36

1. We have already learned how the Romans expressed indirect statements (Chapter 25) and indirect questions (Chapter 30). Now after a verb having the connotation of command, how did the Romans express an indirect command?

2. List some common Latin verbs which can take an indirect command.

3. In the following list label the subjunctives and translate the other forms.

\[
\begin{array}{llllll}
1. \text{fiert} & 2. \text{fit} & 3. \text{fit} & 4. \text{fieret} & 5. \text{fier} & 6. \text{fiunt} \\
7. \text{fit} & 8. \text{fies} & 9. \text{factus esse} & 10. \text{fierent} & 11. \text{fimus} & 12. \text{fient} \\
13. \text{fis} & 14. \text{fierem} & 15. \text{fiant} & 16. \text{fiant} & 17. \text{fiamus} \\
18. \text{fiant} & 19. \text{fierent} & 20. \text{fierent} & 21. \text{factus esse} & 22. \text{fierent} & 23. \text{fierent}
\end{array}
\]


26. Explain the syntax of the following: (4) studēre; (5) studērent; (6) studērent; (7) studērent; (8) cognōscāmus; (9) parcās; (10) eīs, pācem; (11) hostibus; (13) fīcerēs; (14) faciās; (16) fācerent; (18) fītās; (22) lēgibus; (23) lēgibus; (24) futūram esse; (25) hortēmur.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 37

1. (1) Name the tenses and moods in which the stem of ire is changed to e before a, o, and u.

(2) Otherwise, what is the stem of eō in the indicative, subjunctive, imperative, and infinitives?

2. State the nominative singular and the nominative plural of the present participle of eō.
3. Write a synopsis of eo in the 2nd singular and the 3d plural indicative and subjunctive active.

4. In the following list label thesubjunctives and translate the other forms.

(1) iimus (7) iturus esse (13) iif (19) euntēs
(2) īmus (8) euntēm (14) ībat (20) ībō
(3) ëēimus (9) īerunt (15) īerant (21) īit
(4) ëēimus (10) eunt (16) īerm (22) ībāmus
(5) issēimus (11) eant (17) īret (23) īset
(6) ēāmus (12) ībunt (18) īse (24) īeat

5. State how the Romans regularly expressed the following place concepts and translate the English example into Latin:

(1) place from which: from (out of) that land.
(2) place where: in that land; on that island.
(3) place to which: into (to) that land.

6. State the general rules for these place constructions when the name of a city is involved.

7. Define the locative case, and state the nature of the locative forms.

8. State how the Romans expressed each of the following time concepts and translate the English example:

(1) time when: on the same day.
(2) time how long: for many days.
(3) time within which: in one day.

9. What is peculiar about the principal parts of licet? Explain. Translate into Latin “You may go.”

10. Translate each of the following words or phrases in accordance with the principles of this chapter.

(1) unum diem (7) paucēs diebus (13) domum
(2) unō die (8) eādem nocte (14) Athēnēs
(3) illō die (9) multōs diēs (15) domē
(4) Rōmā (10) in nāvem (16) Athēnēs
(5) Rōmae (11) in nāve (17) domō
(6) Rōmam (12) ex nāve (18) paucēs hōrās

24. Cum frater meus domi remaneret, ego tamen in novas terras domo abi.

27. Explain the syntax of the following words: (11) hōris, Rōmam; (12) domum; (13) Rōmā, Athēnās, ire; (14) domō; (15) Rōmam; (17) frātre; (18) tempore, eat, hōris; (19) velle, diēs; (20) domum, Athēnās, hōrā, redītūrum esse; (21) tempore, redēs; (22) diēbus, Athēnās; (23) amīcis, Rōmae, redīsset; (24) domī, terrās, domō; (26) studeant.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 38

1. What does a relative clause with the indicative tell about the antecedent?
2. What does a relative clause with the subjunctive tell about its antecedent, and what is the nature of the antecedent?
3. What is the basic difference between the dative of indirect object and the dative of reference?
4. How are supines formed and what are their functions?


25. Analyze the relative clauses in the following pair of sentences, showing how they differ in their force: 5 and 6.

26. Explain the syntax of the following words: (7) metuēnt; (8) dubitēt; (9) Rōmae, amārent; (10) abēt, passus est; (11) fēcerat; (12) ducē, potest; (13) possiēt; (14) erīt, mihi; (15) cōnsulī; (16) amīcis; (17) salūtī, antepōneret; (18) vellēmus; (19) mihi, possiēt; (21) rogātum; (22) cēperant, dictī; (23) virīs; (24) animō, possiēt.
EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 39

1. (1) Define the term gerund.
   (2) What is the ending of the gerund in English?
   (3) How is the gerund declined in Latin?
   (4) As a noun, what is the syntax of the gerund in Latin?
   (5) What serves in place of the nominative of the gerund in Latin?

2. (1) What part of speech is the Latin gerundive?
   (2) What mnemonic device may help you to remember this?
   (3) As an adjective, what is the syntax of the gerundive?
   (4) How is the gerundive declined?
   (5) How can the gerundive be distinguished from the gerund in Latin usage (though not in English translation)?

3. (1) How is the Latin gerund to be translated?
   (2) How is the gerundive in agreement with its noun to be translated?
   (3) For example, translate:
     (A) Discimus legendo cum cura (gerund).
     (B) Discimus libris legendis cum cura (gerundive).


   (1) glóriae quaerendae. (9) iniūris oppugnandis.
   (2) bellō gerendō. (10) libris scribendis.
   (3) pecūniae faciendae. (11) libris legendis.
   (4) imperió accipendō. (12) philosophiae discendae.
   (5) cívitātibus delendīs. (13) litteris Latinīs discendīs.
   (6) huic ducí sequendō. (14) véritātī intellegendae.
   (7) patriae servandae. (15) sapientiae quaerendae.
   (8) pāci petendae. (16) hominibus adiuvandis.

13. Rōmam vēnit—

   (1) ad hoc opus suscipiendum. (5) huius operis suscipiendī causā.
   (2) ad ēdūros Rōmānōs videndōs. (6) philosophiae discendae causā.
   (3) ad aedificia vetera videnda. (7) novōrum librorum legendo rorum
causā.
   (4) ad pācem petendam. (8) lūdōs visum.

14. Librum scripsit—

   (1) dē dolōre ferendō. (5) dē bellō gerendō.
   (2) dē metū superandō. (6) dē libertāte défendendā.
   (3) dē bonā vitā vivendā. (7) dē hostibus vincendīs.
   (4) dē rē públicā gerendā. (8) dē dōnīs diandīs.
15. Sapientiores firmus—
   (1) Latinitis litteris legendis.  (4) metu vincendō.
   (2) philosophiā discenda.  (5) veritate sequendā.
   (3) vita experienda.

16. Nōs ipsōs adiuvāmus—
   (1) bonis libris semper legendis.  (3) auxiliō offerendō.
   (2) virīs miserīs metī liberandīs.  (4) aliis adiuvandis.

17. Multum tempus cōnāmpsit—
   (1) in cōgitandō (loquendō, currēndō).  (4) in exercitū parandō.
   (2) in his operibus faciendīs.  (5) in oōpiis parandīs.
   (3) in viā inveniendā.

18. Tempus huic librō sōli scribendō habuit.

EXERCISES FOR CHAPTER 40

1. Explain the essential differences involved in introducing questions with -ne, nōnne, and num.

2. What word is used to introduce a positive fear clause? a negative fear clause? Can you explain why this is the opposite of what one might expect?

3. In order for a noun to function as either a descriptive genitive or a descriptive ablative, what condition must be met?


20. Numquam satis ōtī habēbit; at aliquid ōtī melius est quam nihil.


22. Magna fīdēs et virtūs omnibus virīs reperiendae sunt.
Key to Exercises

KEY FOR CHAPTER 1

1. (1) he, she, it; (2) we; (3) I; (4) they; (5) you (sg.); (6) you (pl.)
2. The forms are present active infinitives of the 2nd conjugation. (1) to advise; warn; (2) to see; (3) to be strong; (4) to owe.
3. The forms are present active infinitives of the 1st conjugation. (1) to call; (2) to save; (3) to give; (4) to think; (5) to praise; (6) to love; (7) to err.
4. The forms are present active imperatives 2nd person singular of the 1st or the 2nd conjugations. (1) call; (2) save; (3) give; (4) think; (5) praise; (6) love; (7) advise/warn; (8) see; (9) be strong/good-bye.
5. The forms are present active imperatives 2nd person plural of the 1st or the 2nd conjugations. (1) call; (2) save; (3) give; (4) think; (5) praise; (6) love; (7) advise/warn; (8) see; (9) be strong/good-bye.
6. (1) he/she/it calls, is calling, does call; (2) we think; (3) they love; (4) you (sg.) owe/ought; (5) he sees; (6) they see; (7) we owe/ought; (8) you (sg.) are strong; (9) you (pl.) err/are mistaken; (10) we see; (11) he/she/it loves; (12) you (pl.) see; (13) you (sg.) err; (14) they give; (15) we save; (16) he gives; (17) they love; (18) you (sg.) see.

7. They warn me if I err. 8. He warns me if they err. 9. Warn me if he errs. 10. You (sg.) ought to warn me. 11. You (pl.) ought to save me. 12. They ought not to praise me. 13. “What does he give?” “He often gives nothing.” 14. They often call me and advise me. 15. I see nothing. What do you see? 16. Praise me, please, if I do not make a mistake. 17. If you (pl.) are well, we are well. 18. If he is well, I am well. 19. If he (she) loves me, he (she) ought to praise me. 20. Save me. 21. I ought not to err. 22. What ought we to praise? 23. He sees; he ponders; he advises.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 2

1. In classical Latin there was no regular definite or indefinite article. The words the and a have to be added in the English translation according to the sense of
a Latin passage. Thus *puella* may mean *the girl or a girl*, and *puellae* may mean *the girls or girls* according to the Latin context. Often in an isolated sentence *the* and *a* can be used interchangeably, or perhaps no article at all need be used.

2. (1) acc. case; (2) gen. case; (3) nom. case; (4) abl.; (5) voc.; (6) dat.

3. (1) acc. pl. as direct object of a verb; (2) nom. sg. as subject of a verb or voc. sg. for direct address; (3) acc. sg. as direct object; (4) nom. pl. subject, or voc. for direct address.

4. (1) gen. pl., of; (2) abl. sg., by/with/from, etc.; (3) gen. sg., of; dat. sg., to/for: nom. pl.; voc. pl.; (4) dat. pl., to/for; abl. pl., by/with/from, etc.

5. (1) girl, direct obj. of verb; (2) girl, subject or vocative; (3) girls, object; (4) girls, subj. or voc.; (5) countries, obj.; (6) country, obj.; (7) country, subj. or voc.; (8) countries, subj. or voc.; (9) money, obj.; (10) money, subj. or voc.; (11) penalties, obj.; (12) penalty, obj.

6. (1) of the girl, girl's, or to/for the girl; (2) of the girls, girls'; (3) O fatherland; (4) of or to/for the fatherland; (5) by/with, etc., money; (6) of or to/for money; (7) to/for or by/with, etc., penalties; (8) by/with etc., a penalty; (9) of penalties.

7. (1) multae pecuniae, multam pecuniam; (2) magnae famae, magnae famae; (3) vitae meae, vitae meae; (4) fortunam tuam, fortunam tuas; (5) magnae patriae, magnam patriam; (6) fortunae meae, fortunae mea; (7) magnae poenae, magnae poene; (8) multis philosophiis, multis philosophiis.

8. (1) multa pecuniae; (2) multarum puellarum; (3) meae patriae; (4) magnam vitam; (5) tuae poenae; (6) multae patriae; (7) multis puellis; (8) meae vitae; (9) tua fortuna; (10) puellae; (11) puellam; (12) puellas; (13) puellae; (14) puellae.

9. Farewell (goodbye), my native land. 10. The fortune of the girl (the girl’s fortune) is great. 11. The girl is praising the fortune of your (sg.) country. 12. O girl, save your country. 13. Many girls love money. 14. You (pl.) are giving nothing to the girl, or you give nothing to a girl. 15. He sees the money of the girl, or the girl’s money. 16. You (sg.) do not see the girls’ money. 17. We ought to warn the girls. 18. They ought to praise the girl. 19. Life gives (good) fortune to many girls. 20. You (sg.) are saving my life by or with your money. 21. Fame is nothing without fortune. 22. You (pl.) do not like life without money. 23. A country is not strong without fame and fortune. 24. You (sg.) ought not to praise the anger of the girls. 25. We like a life without punishments. 26. We are not strong without philosophy. 27. What is life without philosophy?

**KEY FOR CHAPTER 3**

1. (1) acc. sg., obj.; (2) nom. pl. as subj., voc. pl. for direct address; (3) nom. sg., subj.; (4) acc. pl. obj.; (5) voc. sg., direct address.

2. (1) dat. sg., to/for; abl. sg., by/with, etc.; (2) gen. pl., of; (3) gen. sg., of; (4) dat. pl., to/for; abl. pl., by/with, etc.

3. (1) sons, obj.; (2) sons, subj. or direct address; (3) son, obj.; (4) people, obj.; (5) people, direct address; (6) people, subj.; (7) man, subj. or direct address; (8) men, obj.; (9) men, subj. or direct address; (10) man, obj.; (11) friend, direct address; (12) friends, subj. or direct address; (13) friends, obj.; (14) friend, obj.

4. (1) of my sons; (2) to/for my son, by/with, etc., my son; (3) of the Roman people; (4) to/for the Roman people, by/with, etc., the Roman people; (5) to/for the men,
by/with, etc., the men; (6) of the man; (7) of the men; (8) of a few friends; (9) to/ for or by/with, etc., a few friends; (10) to/for or by/with, etc., my friend; (11) of my friend; (12) to/for or by/with, etc., many boys.

5. (1) populi Rōmānī, populo Rōmānō; (2) magnōs virōs, magnēs virīs; (3) puerīs meis, puerīs meīs; (4) magnō numerō, magnō numerō; (5) magne vir, magnē virī; (6) filī meī, filūrōnum medīrum.

6. (1) multōrum puerōrum; (2) populō Rōmānō; (3) filīs meōs; (4) filī meī; (5) magnō numerō; (6) magnō numerō; (7) ē vir magne; (8) multīs puerīs; (9) vir magnus; (10) populi Rōmānī.

7. Good-bye, my friend. 8. The Roman people praise your (sg.) son’s wisdom. 9. O great man, save the Roman people. 10. The number of the Roman people is great. 11. Many boys love girls. 12. You (pl.) are giving nothing to my son. 13. I see men in the field. 14. You (sg.) see the friend of my son. 15. He does not see your (sg.) sons’ friend. 16. We ought to warn my sons. 17. They ought to praise your (sg.) son. 18. Life gives fame to few men. 19. You (sg.) consider me in the number (circle) of your friends. 20. Great men often have few friends. 21. My friend is always thinking. 22. The son of a great man is not always a great man. 23. We do not always see (understand) the wisdom of great men. 24. You (pl.) ought to praise philosophy, the wisdom of great men.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 4

1. Nom. sg. in -am; nom. and acc. pl. in -a. Actually the vocative should also be added here; but henceforth, since aside from the singular of 2nd-declension masculines in -us the vocatives follow the rule of having the same form as the nominative, little specific mention is made of the vocative.

2. (1) nom. pl. as subject; acc. pl. as obj.; (2) nom. sg. as subj.; acc. sg. as obj.

3. (1) dat. sg., to/for; abl. sg., by/with, etc.; (2) gen. pl., of; (3) gen. sg., of; (4) dat. pl., to/for; abl. pl., by/with, etc.

4. (1) wars, subj. or obj.; (2) war, subj. or obj.; (3) duty, subj. or obj.; (4) duties, subj. or obj.; (5) dangers, subj. or obj. Of course any of these forms could also be vocative.

5. (1) of evil wars; (2) to/for evil war, by/with, etc., evil war; (3) of evil war; (4) to/for evil wars, by/with, etc., evil wars; (5) of great duty or service; (6) to/for great duties, by/with, etc., great duties; (7) to/for small danger, by/with, etc., small danger.

6. (1) bella parva, bella parva; (2) ētium bonum, ētia bona; (3) perkūli magnī, perkūliōrum magnīōrum; (4) officium vērum, officīō verō.

7. (1) ē bellum malum; (2) officīō magnō; (3) perkūliō magnō; (4) ētium bonum; (5) multīs bellīs; (6) ētī bonī; (7) perkūliōs multōrum bellōrum; (8) bella parva; (9) bella parva; (10) ēbīlla stultā; (11) bellum parvum.

8. Peace (leisure) is good. 9. Many wars do not preserve peace. 10. The danger is great. 11. We are in great danger. 12. And leisure often has dangers. 13. Life is not without many dangers. 14. Good men love peace. 15. The foolish man praises the dangers of war. 16. Often we do not preserve the peace by war. 17. The Roman people do not always have good peace. 18. They often save the fatherland and
peace by small wars. 19. Many girls are pretty. 20. True friends are few. 21. My friend is a man of great service. 22. The duties of a teacher are many and great. 23. You (sg.) are a man of little leisure. 24. You (pl.) are men of great care. 25. We ought to give attention to duty without delay. 26. Life is nothing without eyes.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 5

1. future: -ō, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt; imperfect: -m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt.
2. They are the same in the future, but the imperfect has -m instead of -ō in the first pers. sg.
3. future: -bī- (-b- in 1st pers. sg.; -bu- in 3d pers. pl.); imperfect: -bī- (with the -a- shortened before -m, -t, and -nt).
4. (1) we were; (2) he will; (3) you (pl.) will; (4) I shall; (5) they will; (6) he was.
5. By learning the vocabulary form of the adjective: liber, libera, liberum, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum; and often by learning English derivatives.
6. They show whether the e of a masculine in -er survives throughout the rest of the paradigm; liberty, liber, libera, liberum; pulchritude, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.
7. (1) they were remaining, remained; (2) he will remain; (3) we shall remain; (4) I was giving, I gave; (5) you (pl.) will give; (6) he will give; (7) you (sg.) will see; (8) we shall see; (9) they were calling, called; (10) you (sg.) will call; (11) you (sg.) will have; (12) they were having, had.
8. (1) dabimus; (2) manēbās; (3) vidēbunt; (4) vocābimus; (5) vocābat; (6) vidēbītis; (7) vidēbō; (8) servābant; (9) habēbimus; (10) habēbāmus; (11) habēbit; (12) habēt.
9. Our teacher praises me and he will praise you tomorrow (sg.). 10. Free men were overcoming our dangers. 11. Our sons love pretty girls. 12. Our friend will not stay in the company (number) of fools. 13. We used to have many faults and always shall have. 14. Great dangers do not overcome our courage. 15. Our beautiful country is free. 16. You (pl.) are free men; you will have a beautiful country. 17. Free teachers were giving attention to duty. 18. Therefore, we shall overcome evil men in our country. 19. If you (sg.) overcome (lit., will overcome) your anger, you will overcome yourself. 20. Because of our courage many men are free. 21. Free fatherland, we always used to love you and we always shall love (you). 22. You (pl.) will not preserve wisdom by means of money. 23. Does your (sg.) soul possess enough wisdom?

KEY FOR CHAPTER 6

1. See Ch. 6, p. 38, s.v. “Complementary Infinitive.”
2. (1) we; (2) they; (3) you (sg.); (4) he, she, it; (5) I; (6) I; (7) you (pl.).
3. See p. 38.
4. (1) he, she, it was; (2) he, etc., was able; (3) he will be; (4) he will be able; (5) we are; (6) we are able; (7) we were able; (8) we shall be able; (9) I was able; (10) I was; (11) I shall be; (12) I shall be able; (13) they will be; (14) they will be able; (15) they were able; (16) to be; (17) to be able.
5. (1) sumus; (2) erāmus; (3) erimus; (4) poterimus; (5) potest; (6) poterit; (7) poterat; (8) posse; (9) poterant; (10) possunt; (11) poterunt; (12) sunt; (13) esse; (14) poteram.
6. Your (pl.) country was free. 7. I was able to be a tyrant. 8. Your friend will be a tyrant. 9. Where (there) is a tyrant, there men cannot be free. 10. He could not remain in our country yesterday. 11. Tyrants will always have many faults. 12. We were not able to overcome the tyrants. 13. We ought to overcome our tyrant. 14. The tyrant was able to overcome (the) good men; but he will not be able to remain there. 15. You (pl.) will be able to see the dangers of a tyrant. 16. We cannot tolerate the faults of tyrants. 17. You (sg.) were not tolerating (did not tolerate) the treachery of the tyrant. 18. The peace in your (pl.) country cannot be perpetual. 19. You (sg.) ought to warn free men about tyrants. 20. Your (pl.) teacher always used to like (liked) fine books. 21. Good and true books were able to save the country. 22. You (pl.) will be able to save your country with good books. 23. Tyrants will not be able to overcome the wisdom of good books. 24. Bad men cannot tolerate good books.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 7
1. No.
2. Yes: nom. and acc. pl.
3. (1) nom. and acc. pl. of masc. and fem.; (2) nom. and acc. pl. neut.; (3) acc. sg. masc. and fem.
4. (1) dat. and abl. pl.; (2) dat. sg.; (3) abl. sg.; (4) acc. sg. masc. and fem.; (5) gen. pl.; (6) gen. sg.; (7) nom. and acc. pl. masc. and fem.
5. (1) magnum tempus; (2) magnae virtutes; (3) magnus labor; (4) magna civitas; (5) magnus mos; (6) magna pax; (7) magnus rex; (8) magnus corpus; (9) magnae virtutes; (10) magnus amor.
6. (1) by/with much labor; (2) to/for much labor; (3) of much labor; (4) many labors (nom.); (5) of perpetual peace; (6) by/with perpetual peace; (7) to/for perpetual peace; (8) of small states; (9) a small state (acc.); (10) small states (acc.); (11) small states (nom.); (12) by a small state; (13) bad times (nom. or acc. pl.); (14) bad time (nom. or acc. sg.); (15) to/for a bad time; (16) of bad times; (17) of a bad time; (18) to/for your habit; (19) by your habit; (20) of your habit; (21) your character (nom.); (22) your character (acc.); (23) of your character.
7. (1) magnae virtutes; (2) magnae virtutes; (3) magnae virtutes; (4) magnum virtutum; (5) magnae virtutes; (6) tempus nostrum; (7) tempora nostra; (8) tempora nostra; (9) temporibus nostris; (10) temporibus nostris; (11) temporibus nostris; (12) temporum nostro; (13) amorem meum; (14) amores meos; (15) amori mei; (16) amore meo; (17) amoris mei; (18) amoribus meos.
8. My time for leisure is small. 9. Your (sg.) courage is great. 10. Money is nothing without good character. 11. The virtues of many human beings are great. 12. The character of a good man will be good. 13. They will give a letter to the man. 14. We were able to see many men in the great state. 15. We used to see (saw, were seeing) a great love of money in many men. 16. Few men give attention to excellence. 17. Our state will give peace to many men. 18. Peace cannot be perpetual. 19. Without good peace the states of our times will not be strong. 20. Times are bad after many wars. 21. In many states and lands peace could not be strong. 22. Without great labor the man will have nothing. 23. The beautiful
maiden loves friends of good character. 24. Men of great courage were daring to overcome tyrants. 25. Love of country was strong in our state.

**KEY FOR CHAPTER 8**

1. (1) Future. (2) See Ch. 8. Perhaps a better device is found in the fact that our word "future" ends in -e: futur/e. The -a- in dūcam is the only exception among six forms.
2. (1) Present. (2) See Ch. 8.
3. (1) 1st pers. pl. pres.; (2) 2nd sg. fut.; (3) 3d pl. pres.; (4) 3d sg. fut.; (5) 2nd pl. pres.; (6) 1st pl. fut.; (7) 1st sg. pres.; (8) 3d pl. fut.; (9) 3d sg. pres.; (10) 2nd pl. fut.; (11) 2nd sg. pres.; (12) 1st sg. fut.; (13) 3d pl. impf.
4. (1) imper. sg.; (2) pres. inf.; (3) imper. pl.
5. (1) they were sending; (2) he is sending; (3) they are sending; (4) I shall send; (5) send (sg.); (6) we are sending; (7) you (pl.) were sending; (8) you (sg.) are sending; (9) send (pl.); (10) you (pl.) send; (11) he will send; (12) we shall send; (13) he does; (14) they will do; (15) they are doing; (16) you (pl.) will do; (17) we were doing; (18) I shall do; (19) we shall do; (20) you (sg.) are doing; (21) you (pl.) are doing; (22) he will write; (23) they are writing; (24) I shall write; (25) I was writing; (26) you (pl.) are writing; (27) we shall write; (28) he is writing; (29) you (sg.) are writing; (30) they will write; (31) write!
6. (1) pōnēbat; (2) pōnēmus; (3) pōne; (4) pōnit; (5) pōnent; (6) pōnēs; (7) pōnētās; (8) pōnētēs; (9) pōnēs; (10) pōnēmus; (11) pōnētis; (12) pōnēt.

7. What are they doing? What will you (pl.) do? 8. They were leading the man to me. 9. Lead (sg.) the man to me, and I shall thank the man. 10. While the tyrant leads the troops, we can do nothing. 11. He is writing a letter to the maiden. 12. You (sg.) were writing a great book. 13. You (sg.) will write good books. 14. We shall write books about peace. 15. Do you (pl.) have an abundance of good books? 16. The teacher teaches many boys. 17. The boys do not thank the teacher. 18. Few men were thanking our state. 19. The tyrant will lead great forces out of our state. 20. A great abundance of money does not lead men to wisdom. 21. Will good books lead many men to reason? 22. Do we often lead men to reason? 23. Reason can lead men to a good life. 24. Are you (pl.) leading a good life? 25. Always thank (pl.) a good friend.

**KEY FOR CHAPTER 9**

1. See p. 55.
2. (1) to/for that (m., f., n.); (2) that (nom. f.); those (nom./acc. n.); (3) of that (m., f., n.); (4) that (nom. m.); (5) by that (f.); (6) that (nom./acc. n.); (7) of those (m., n.); (8) those (nom. f.); (9) those (acc. m.); (10) to/for by/w.fr. those (m., f., n.) (11) by that (m., n.); (12) of those (f.); (13) by this (m., n.); (14) this (nom./acc. n.); (15) this (nom. f.); those (nom./acc. n.); (16) these (nom. f.); (17) by this (f.)
(18) this (acc. f.)
(19) of this (m., f., n.)
(20) this (acc. m.)
(21) these (acc. m.)
(22) to this (m., f., n.)
(23) of these (m., n.)
(24) these (acc. f.)
(25) to/for these; by these (m., f., n.)
(26) of one (m., f., n.)
(27) to/for one (m., f., n.)
(28) by one (f.)

(29) to/for the whole (m., f., n.); whole (nom. pl. m.)
(30) of the whole (m., f., n.)
(31) the whole (nom. f.); whole (nom./acc. pl. n.)
(32) the whole (acc. m.; nom./acc. n.)
(33) of no (sg. m., f., n.)
(34) to/for no (sg. m., f., n.); no (nom. pl. m.)
(35) no (nom. sg. f.; nom./acc. pl. n.)
(36) no (acc. pl. m.)

3. See text and examples on p. 56.

4. (1) haec puella
(2) haec puellae
(3) haec temporae
(4) huic tempore
(5) huic pueri
(6) huius temporis
(7) illius temporis
(8) hoc libri
(9) illi libri
(10) illa puella
(11) illa temporae
(12) illa temporae
(13) illud tempus
(14) huic civitatis soli
(15) huius civitatis soli
(16) illi puero soli
(17) illi puellae soli
(18) illius puellae soli
(19) tyrannorum solium
(20) totam civitatem
(21) totius patriae
(22) toti patriae
(23) nullius rationis
(24) millam rationem
(25) nullae puellae
(26) nulli librō
(27) nullis librōs
(28) uni civitati
(29) unī puellae
(30) unius temporis
(31) unius belli
(32) alterī libri
(33) aliī librō

5. These men will lead (lead, were leading) the whole state. 6. That man will see
(see, was seeing/saw) these things in that land. 7. In that book he will write (I shall
write, I was writing) those things about this man. 8. One man is leading (will lead)
these forces into this land. 9. The teacher gives these things to the other boy.
10. We are writing (shall write) this book about another war. 11. The whole coun-
try thanks (will thank, was thanking) this man alone. 12. They are now giving their
entire attention to that plan. 13. This man’s friend will save this state by that plan.
14. The other friend will lead (his) entire life in another land. 15. This man alone
was able to warn me about the faults of this tyrant. 16. You (pl.) had no forces in
the other land. 17. Those men alone see no dangers in this plan. 18. You (sg.)
dare to praise not only the character but also the treachery of that man. 19. In
fact, on account of the treachery of one man this state was not strong.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 10

1. (1) 3d; (2) 2nd; (3) 4th; (4) 1st.
2. (1) 3d pl. pres.; (2) 2nd sg. fut.; (3) 2nd sg. pres.; (4) 1st pl. impf.; (5) 1st pl. pres.;
   (6) imper. sg.; (7) 2nd pl. fut.; (8) imper. pl.; (9) 2nd pl. pres.; (10) 1st sg. pres.;
   (11) 3d sg. pres.; (12) imper. sg. (13) 2nd sg. impf. Note: nos. 3, 5, 6, 8, 9 are 4th
   only; 12 is 3d only. The chief difference is the -e- of the 4th and the -i- of the 3d.
   See p. 64.
3. (1) pres. inf.; (2) imper. sg.; (3) short stem vowels in 2nd sg. and 1st and 2nd pl.
of pres. ind. and in the imper. pl.
4. (1) he will come (11) to come
(2) he is coming (12) he makes/does
(3) they are coming (13) he will make/do
(4) they will come (14) we shall make
(5) you (sg.) hear (15) we are making
(6) you (pl.) will hear (16) they make
(7) you (pl.) hear (17) you (sg.) make
(8) come (pl.) (18) I shall make
(9) you (sg.) will come (19) you (sg.) will make
(10) come (sg.) (20) to make

5. (1) sentiam (11) iacit
(2) sentiemus (12) iacet
(3) sentit (13) iaciam
(4) sentitis (14) iacemus
(5) sentient (15) iacce
(6) sentiunt (16) iacere
(7) sentire
(8) senti
(9) sentier
(10) sentier

6. We were fleeing from this land. 7. Flee (sg.) with your daughter. 8. They will flee into that place. 9. Time flees; the hours flee; old age is coming. 10. Come (pl.) with your friends. 11. They were coming into your country. 12. O great man, come into our state. 13. You (sg.) will find your daughter in that state. 14. They can find little money in the streets. 15. The tyrant is finding a way into this state. 16. You (pl.) will capture those men there with (their) friends. 17. We are coming to you with great forces. 18. Will he find much fame and glory there? 19. That man was always making war. 20. Those men (of yours or such men) will not make peace. 21. Many men do those things but do not do these things. 22. We are doing and will do our duty. 23. I shall make a great supply of books. 24. The boys were living with that good man. 25. In the books of ancient men you (pl.) will find much philosophy and wisdom.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 11

1. (1) is, ea, id and ei, eae, ea; (2) ego and nōs; (3) tē and vēs.
2. (1) to/for you (pl.); by/w/fr. you; (2) to/for us; by/w/fr. us; (3) we (nom.); us (acc.); (4) you (nom. pl.); you (acc. pl.); (5) of you (sg.); (6) of me; (7) to/for me; (8) to/for you (sg.); (9) you (acc. sg.); by/w/fr. you; (10) me (acc.); by/w/fr. me.
3. (1) them (masc.); (2) them (fem.); (3) their (masc., neut.); (4) their (fem.); (5) his, her, its; (6) by/w/fr. her; (7) she (nom.); they (nom. and acc. pl. neut.); (8) by/w/fr. him, it; (9) to/for him, her, it; they (masc. nom.); (10) to/for them (masc., fem., neut.); by/w/fr. them; (11) they (nom. fem.); (12) it (nom. or acc. sg.). N.B. in the sg. any one of the three Latin genders of is, ea, id may be translated by it when the antecedent of the pronoun is a word which in English is neuter. For instance, suppose that in a preceding sentence the word pāx appears. Then we read: Sae eī nīlla civilīs valet. The Latin feminine eī becomes English it because in English peace is regarded as neuter.
4. (1) eius (4) eārum
(2) eius (5) eās
(3) eārum (6) eās
(7) ea (11) eā
(8) eius (12) eā
(10) eī
5. These men will give it to you (sg.). 6. I was giving it to you (pl.). 7. You (pl.) will give them this gift to them. 8. I shall give the same thing to him (her, it). 9. We shall give them (= those things) to him (her). 10. That man will give it to me.
11. We shall give you (pl.) his books. 12. You (sg.) will give us their (masc.) books. 13. We shall give their money to you (sg.). 14. They will give his (her) money to me.
15. We shall send these/those books to her. 16. I shall send his (her) book to you (sg.). 17. That man, however, was sending their money to us. 18. We are sending them (fem.) with her. 19. I am sending him with them. 20. We shall send them with his (her) friends. 21. You (sg.) will send me with their friend. 22. They were sending you (pl.) with me to his friend.
23. He is sending us with you (sg.) into their land. 24. They will send them (fem.) with us to their friends. 25. I shall send him with you (pl.) to their friends. 26. They will send you (sg.) with him to me.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 12

1. (1) pres. act. ind.; (2) pres. act. inf.; (3) perf. act. ind.; (4) perf. pass. partic.
2. (1) mittō, pres. act. ind., I send
   (2) mittere, pres. act. inf., to send
   (3) mittis, perf. act. ind., I sent
   (4) missum, perf. pass. partic., having been sent, sent

3. The perfect is like a "snapshot" of a past, completed action; the imperfect looks at continuing or progressive past action, like a video.

4. (1) mittō  (6) ago  (11) remaneō  (16) dicō
   (2) laudō  (7) sum  (12) scribō  (17) sum
   (3) vincō  (8) dō  (13) sum  (18) vīvō
   (4) dicō  (9) sum  (14) faciō  (19) faciō
   (5) faciō  (10) ago  (15) fugiō  (20) video

5. (1) you (pl. perf.) . . . ; (2) he (perf.) . . . ; (3) they (perf.) . . . ; (4) you (sg. perf.) . . . ; (5) we (perf.) . . . ; (6) he had . . . ; (7) we shall have . . . ; (8) we had . . . ; (9) you (sg.) had . . . ; (10) they will have . . . ; (11) they had . . . ; (12) he will have . . . ; (13) you (pl.) had . . .

6. (1) they saw, were seeing (12) he will conquer
   (2) they had seen (13) he conquered
   (3) you (sg.) saw (14) we conquered
   (4) he did (15) we conquer
   (5) he was doing (16) you (sg.) gave
   (6) we had done (17) you (pl.) had given
   (7) we did (18) we gave
   (8) we shall do (19) he flees
   (9) they did (20) he fled
   (10) you (sg.) lived (21) they flee
   (11) they lived (22) they fled
7. Those men had fled (will flee; are fleeing; were fleeing; fled). 8. These men remained (remain; will remain; were remaining; had remained). 9. The king had conquered (is conquering; conquered; will conquer) Asia. 10. The kings conquered (will conquer; are conquering; had conquered) Asia. 11. Kings possessed (possess; will possess; had possessed) Asia. 12. Caesar had come (came; is coming; will come) into the same land. 13. Caesar said (says; had said; will say) the same things. 14. You (pl.) gave (will give; were giving; had given) us peace. 15. You (sg.) sent (will send; are sending; had sent) a letter to her. 16. We saw (see; had seen) them in the same street. 17. He had lived (lived; will live) a long time. 18. You (sg.) had done (will do; did; are doing) it well. 19. I saved (shall save; was saving; had saved) their (his) state. 20. They found (had found; will find) him in the same place. 21. God had given (gave; gives; will give) liberty to men. 22. They thanked (will thank; were thanking; had thanked; thank) me. 23. You (pl.) were (were; are; will be; had been) free men.

**KEY FOR CHAPTER 13**

1. See p. 82, s.v. “Reflexive Pronouns.”
2. See p. 82, s.v. “Declension of Reflexive Pronouns.”
3. In pronouns of the first and the second persons.
4. (1) to/for myself.
   (2) yourself (sg. acc.); by/w/fr. yourself.
   (3) to/for ourselves; by/w/fr. ourselves.
   (4) to/for himself (herself, itself); to/for themselves.
   (5) yourselves (acc.).
   (6) himself (acc.); by/w/fr. himself; themselves (acc.); by/w/fr. themselves.
   (7) to/for yourselves; by/w/fr. yourselves.
5. Since suus, -a, -um is an adjective, it must agree in number with the noun which it modifies. Since suus is a reflexive, it means his own or their own according to whether the subject of the verb is singular or plural. See, for example, sentences 15 and 20 below.
6. Eōrum and eius are fixed genitives of possession; and therefore, they do not, like suus, agree with the nouns on which they depend. See, for example, sentences 16–19 below.
7. See p. 85, s.v. “The Intensive Pronoun.” Sē, being reflexive, is used in the predicate and refers to the subject. Ipse can be used to emphasize a noun or pronoun in any part of a sentence. See, for example, sentences 27, 28, and 31 below.
8. Caesar saved them. 9. Caesar was saving him (= another person). 10. Caesar saved himself. 11. The Romans saved themselves. 12. The Romans saved them (=}
13. The Romans saved him. 14. Caesar saved his own friend. 15. Caesar saved his own friends. 16. Caesar saved his (= another’s) friend. 17. Caesar saved his (= another’s) friends. 18. Caesar saved their friend. 19. Caesar saved their friends. 20. The Romans saved their (own) friend. 21. The Romans saved their (own) friends. 22. The Romans saved their (= others’) friend. 23. The Romans saved their (= others’) friends. 24. The Romans saved his friend. 25. The Romans saved his friends. 26. Caesar himself saved him. 27. Caesar himself saved himself. 28. They saved Caesar himself. 29. They were saving the friend of Caesar himself. 30. They saved the friend of the Romans themselves. 31. The friend of Caesar himself saved himself. 32. The friends of Caesar himself saved themselves. 33. The friend of Caesar himself saved him. 34. Caesar’s friends themselves saved him. 35. They did not save us. 36. We saved ourselves. 37. We saved the Romans themselves. 38. The Romans themselves did not save you. 39. You (sg.) saved yourself. 40. You (sg.) saved the Romans themselves. 41. He was giving nothing to me. 42. I gave nothing to myself. 43. He gave nothing to himself. 44. They gave nothing to themselves. 45. They gave nothing to them (= others). 46. They gave nothing to him. 47. I conquered myself. 48. They conquered me. 49. They conquered their (= others’) anger. 50. They conquered their own anger. 51. He conquered his own anger. 52. He conquered his own sons. 53. They conquered their own sons.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 14

1. In the gen. pl.
2. -i in abl. sg.; -ia in nom. and acc. pl.
3. (1) by/wfr. art
   (2) of the arts
   (3) arts (nom. or acc.)
   (4) to/for the sea; by/wfr. the sea
   (5) to/for the seas; by/wfr. the seas
   (6) the sea (nom. or acc.)
   (7) the seas (nom. or acc.)
   (8) bodies (nom. or acc.)
   (9) of bodies
   (10) of a part
   (11) to/for parts; by/wfr. parts
   (12) of parts
   (13) by/wfr. the city
   (14) to/for the city
   (15) of cities
   (16) cities (nom. or acc.)
   (17) of the kings
   (18) to/for the king
   (19) names (nom. or acc.)
   (20) animals (nom. or acc.)
   (21) to/for an animal; by/wfr. an animal
   (22) of an animal
   (23) of animals
   (24) of strength
   (25) men (acc.)
   (26) of the man; men (nom.)
   (27) strength (nom. or acc. pl.)
   (28) to/for men; by/wfr. men
   (29) force (nom.); of force
   (30) force (acc.)
   (31) to/for strength; by/wfr. strength
   (32) to/for force; by/wfr. force
4. (2); (4) as abl.; (7); (12); (15); (20); (21) as abl.; (23); (24); (30); (32) as abl.
5. (1) vi magnā
   (2) vicum magnum
   (3) viriīum magna Bruno
   (4) vi magnāc
   (5) civium multōrum
   (6) cive bonō
   (7) cives multīs
   (8) maria multa
   (9) mari magnō
   (10) mare magnā
   (11) vim magnam
   (12) virōrum multōrum
   (13) vicībus magnīs
   (14) virēs magnās
6. (1) accompaniment; (2) means; (3) manner; (4) means
7. (1) they ran (currō); (2) we were running (currō); (3) you (sg.) ran (currō); (4) we had dragged (trahō); (5) he will drag (trahō); (6) they are dragging (trahō); (7) he was managing (gerō); (8) he manages (gerō); (9) they manage (gerō); (10) we shall manage (gerō); (11) they held (teneō); (12) they will hold (teneō); (13) they held (teneō); (14) we held (teneō).

8. He waged many wars with the Romans. 9. They were managing the state with great wisdom. 10. He himself held the state by the power of troops. 11. Those animals dragged many men into the sea. 12. You (sg.) said this with great skill. 13. We ran with care (carefully) across the city. 14. He was coming to us with a large part of the citizens. 15. He will conquer the rights of the citizens by force. 16. You (pl.) dragged him to death across his land. 17. We shall join ourselves with the citizens of many cities. 18. He wrote this letter to the king himself with courage (courageously). 19. The violence of those seas was great. 20. I have seen the art of the Greeks with my own eyes. 21. We have drawn many beautiful thoughts from the ancients.

22. 8, accompaniment; 9, manner; 10, means; 12, manner; 13, manner; 14, accompaniment; 15, means; 17, accompaniment; 18, manner; 20, means.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 15

1. See p. 97.
2. See p. 97–98.
3. See p. 98.
4. (1) dat./abl. pl. m. and n.; (2) indecl. adj. agreeing with noun in any case; (3) nom./acc. pl. n.; (4) nom. pl. m. and n., acc. pl. n.; (5) any form in pl.; (6) nom./acc. pl. n.; (7) any form in pl.; (8) dat./abl. pl. f.; (9) any form in pl.; (10) gen. pl. any gender; (11) any form in pl.; (12) any form in pl.
5. The word which indicates the whole number or amount out of which a part is taken is normally put in the genitive case. See p. 99 s.v. "Genitive of the Whole."
6. Ex or dē + abl.
7. (1) one citizen (6) 5 of the citizens (11) 3000 citizens (2) ten citizens (7) 5 citizens (12) what (is) new? (3) part of the citizens (8) 100 citizens (13) much praise (4) three citizens (9) 100 of the citizens (14) enough money (5) 3 of the 6 citizens (10) 1000 citizens (15) no water

8. Time when, at which, within which.
9. (1) He used to come (was coming, kept coming) with his friends. Ablative of accompaniment.
   (2) He will come in one hour. Abl. of time within which.
   (3) He came at the same time. Abl. of time when.
   (4) He wrote the book in a few hours. Time within which.
   (5) At that time he wrote a book. Time when.
   (6) He was writing the book with care. Manner.
10. At that time alone he feared those three dangers; but he always used to fear (was afraid of) death. 11. Those two kings used to throw money among the thousands of citizens. 12. That one tyrant (of yours) always used to praise himself. 13. The citizens of those five cities kept expecting liberty. 14. They saved the city in two hours by their own wisdom. 15. I used to come into the city with three of my friends. 16. You (pl.) used to wage great wars with courage (= courageously). 17. Therefore a hundred Romans conquered a thousand Greeks. 18. Fathers often used to fear their own sons—and now they have much (of) fear. 19. Did you (sg.) see our two fathers at that time? 20. Where did you (pl.) find enough freedom? 21. They came in three hours, and he kept saying the same thing to us. 22. I understood little of the argument. 23. We have changed no part of our lives. 24. Our state used to preserve the liberty and rights of the citizens. 25. The Romans used to praise the customs of ancient times. 26. The two fathers sent four of their sons. 27. The ten men had enough wisdom and much virtue. 28. What's new, my friend?

KEY FOR CHAPTER 16

1. Abl. sg. masc. and fem.: forti as compared with eive.
2. (1) The adjective of 2 endings.
   (2) Nom. sg. masc. and fem.: fortis, fortis; acer, acris; patens, potens.
3. -i, abl. sg. of all genders; -ium, gen. pl. of all genders; -ia, nom. and acc. neut.
   pl.; but see p. 105 n. 2.
4. -i; but see p. 105 n. 2.
5. Yes.
6. (1) to/for a sweet girl (11) of all parts
   (2) by/w./fr. a sweet girl (12) of all kings
   (3) by/w./fr. a sweet mother (13) of all wars
   (4) to/for a sweet mother (14) by/w./fr. a happy man
   (5) to/for a happy mother (15) to/for a happy man
   (6) by/w./fr. a happy mother (16) to/for or by/w./fr. every sea
   (7) all wars, nom. or acc. pl.
   (8) all names, nom. or acc. pl.
   (9) all seas, nom. or acc. pl.
   (10) by/w./fr. every part
7. A long life is often difficult. 8. A difficult life can be happy. 9. How brief was his sweet life! 10. The memory of a sweet period of life helps thousands of men. 11. You (sg.) wrote a short book in a hundred hours. 12. In every sea we kept finding these two powerful animals. 13. In every land you (pl.) will see many thousands of brave men. 14. Swift rumor ran through every land. 15. That short war was difficult. 16. We overcome all dangers in six hours. 17. The powerful tyrant will conquer their country with swift violence. 18. In a short time he will change all the rights of the citizens. 19. They did not understand the difficult art of sweet liberty, for they had little wisdom. 20. Men fear difficult duties in all lands.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 17

1. See Ch. 17, p. 110-11, s.v. "Usage and Agreement."
2. (1) Its use in its own clause. (2) The antecedent.
3. In gender and number.
4. (1) who, (2) which, (3) who, which.
5. (1) to/for whom or which, masc. sg.
    (2) whom or which, masc. pl.
    (3) who/which, nom. sg. fem.
        who/which, nom. pl. fem.
    (4) of whom/which, whose, sg.
6. They praised the citizen whom you (pl.) had sent.
7. They praised the ten citizens whom you (pl.) had sent.
8. They praised the citizen who had saved the country.
9. They praised the hundred citizens who had saved the country.
10. They praised the citizen whose son had saved the country.
11. They praised the citizens whose seven sons had saved the country.
12. They praised the citizen to whom they had entrusted the country.
13. They praised the citizens to whom they had entrusted the country.
14. They praised the citizen with whom they had come.
15. They praised the citizens with whom they had come.
16. He came with the citizen to whom he had entrusted his own life.
17. Tyrants destroy the rights of the citizens whom they capture.
18. The tyrant destroyed the city from which thousands of citizens had fled.
19. The tyrant destroyed the city into which those nine citizens had fled.
20. The tyrant destroyed the cities from which the citizens had fled.
21. The tyrant destroyed the cities into which the citizens had fled.
22. He overcame the danger which we feared.
23. He overcame the dangers which we feared.
24. He gave books to the girls whom he was praising.
25. The man whose daughter you (sg.) love kept coming into the city.
26. He entrusted his own life to the man whose daughter you (sg.) love.
27. He entrusted his own life to the man whose daughter you (sg.) love.
28. The king used to give money to the mothers who had many sons.

Key for Chapter 18

2. See p. 118 s.v. "Ablative of Personal Agent." Note that "agent" is a person;
   "means" is something other than a person.
3. (1) The letter r.
    (2) No.
4. (1) we; (2) he; (3) I; (4) they; (5) you (sg.); (6) you (pl.).
5. (1) -bà-, imperf.; -bē- (-bō-, -be-, -bu-), fut.
(2) Yes, with the minor exception of -bē- in the 2nd pers. sg.
6. (1) we shall be . . . ; (2) you (pl.) were being . . . ; (3) he was being . . . ; (4) you
They terrify me; I am terrified by them; I am terrified by their violence. The tyrant was destroying this city. This city was being destroyed by the tyrant; it will be destroyed by a plot. He used to be aroused (moved) by his friends; he used to be aroused by their plans. We are not being destroyed by the strength of men, but we can be destroyed by a plot. You (pl.) will be destroyed not by war but by love of leisure and by the plans of evil men. You yourself (sg.) are not being changed, but your name is being changed. Thousands of men are possessed by the love of money. Others used to be held by tyrants. A few will be possessed by love of truth and friendship. The boy will be saved by his friends. Books of this sort used to be given to the boys by the teacher. Liberty will be given to the people by the third king in a short time. Our country can even now be saved by brave citizens. We ought to be warned by the fortune of other men (others). We are terrified by the plans of that tyrant who lives across the sea; but we love liberty, and we shall wage war with great courage. We shall be helped by powerful friends. We praise all our men, who are moved by courage and truth, not by love of themselves.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 19
1. (1) The perfect passive participle plus the present of sum.
(2) The perfect passive participle plus the imperfect of sum.
2. (1) Vir missus est = a man was (has been) sent; vir mittitur = a man is (is being) sent.
(2) Vir missus erat = a man had been sent; vir mittebatur = a man was being (used to be) sent.
3. An interrogative pronoun introduces a question.
4. quis (nom. sg. m. and f.); quid (nom. and acc. sg. n.).
5. See p. 124.
6. (1) he is (is being) moved
(2) he was (has been) moved
(3) it had been moved
(4) he was being moved
(5) they had been destroyed
(6) they were being destroyed
(7) they were destroyed
(8) we are held
(9) we were held
(10) we had been held
(11) we were being held
(12) he had been changed
(13) he was (has been) changed
(14) he is (is being) changed
(15) he was being changed
7. (1) whose (sg.)?
(2) whom (sg.)?
(3) who (pl.)?
(4) what (nom. and acc. sg.)?
(5) whose (pl.)?
(6) to whom (sg.)?
(7) whom (fem. pl.)?
(8) who (sg.)?
(9) who (fem. pl.)?
(10) what (neut. nom. and acc. pl.)?
8. By whom was the book prepared (had been prepared; was being prepared)?
9. The teacher by whom the book was prepared is overcome with work.
who was the book given (was being given, had been given)? 11. What boy was
saved? 12. I myself saw the boy who was saved. 13. Whose (sg.) two sons were
saved? 14. I never saw the old man whose sons were saved. 15. Who (sg.) was
sent? 16. Peace and liberty were praised by the citizen who had been sent.
17. Who (pl.) were sent? 18. Friendship was praised by the ten citizens who had
been sent. 19. Whom (pl.) did you (sg.) see in the city? 20. Where are the three
friends whom you (sg.) saw in the city? 21. What things were found by you
(sg.) there? 22. Where are the three bodies which were found there by you (sg.)?
23. By whom was this (thing) said? 24. To whom was this said? 25. The eight
wretched men to whom these things were said fled from the city. 26. Whose sons
were praised by him? 27. The fathers whose sons were praised will thank him.
terrifies you has been conquered by brave citizens.

**KEY FOR CHAPTER 20**

1. (1) object, acc. sg.; (2) of, pl.; (3) by/w./fr., sg.; (4) subject, sg.; (5) of (sg.); subject
or object (pl.); (6) to/for, sg.

2. (1) to/for a hand (band) (8) of fruit; fruits (subj./obj.)
   (2) a hand (subj.) (9) of fruits
   (3) of hands (10) by/w./fr. fruit
   (4) by/w./fr. a hand (11) of the senate
   (5) of a hand; hands (subj./obj.) (12) to/for the senate
   (6) to/for or by/w./fr. fruits (13) the senate (subj.)
   (7) fruit (obj.) (14) by/w./fr. the senate

3. (1) Masculine; (2) manus.

4. (1) The ablative of place from which = motion apart; the ablative of separa-
tion = distance apart.

   (2) The ablative of separation.

   (3) The ablative of place from which.

5. Place from which regularly has a preposition (ab, de, ex); for separation, see
p. 130.

6. Who came to us at that time? 7. An old man of great fame fled from his country
to our senate. 8. What new was said by him? 9. This (thing) was said by that man:
“We lack liberty.” 10. Free us from slavery and heavy fear. 11. Our forces waged
long war against the tyrant’s fierce bands. 12. Those fierce bands which the tyrant
sent against us from that land were conquered by us. 13. After this (lit. these
things) the citizens who feared the tyrant were led from their own country into our
state. 14. We freed them from the crimes of that tyrant. 15. Now they lack (are
free from) every fear (anxiety). 16. Their sons eagerly (with zeal) read good books
in our schools. 17. And so they have written a thousand verses with their own
hands. 18. These one hundred verses give great thanks to us. 19. In these verses
the senate and the Roman people are praised. 20. For those unfortunate men now
have the fruits of peace and much liberty without fear. 21. Since we have helped
others, even we ourselves have great enjoyment. 22. Good men will never lack an
abundance of these fruits. 23. In our age many human beings pass their life in fear and slavery. 24. We ought to free those unfortunate men from fear. 25. For who can be happy if other human beings lack the enjoyments of peace and liberty?

26. (6) time when; (7) place from which; (8) agent; (9) agent; (10) separation; (12) agent; (13) place from which; (14) separation; (15) separation; (16) manner; (17) means; (22) separation; (23) time when; (24) separation.

**KEY FOR CHAPTER 21**

1. See p. 116-17.

2. Check with paradigms on p. 135-36 and repeat them until you can say them without hesitation.

3. In the passive infinitive the final -e of the active infinitive has been changed to -i: (1) sentīrī, to be felt; (2) moverī, to be moved; (3) servārī, to be saved; (4) scīrī, to be known; (5) tenērī, to be held.

4. The whole active ending -ere is changed to -i: (1) mittī, to be sent; (2) iacī, to be known; (3) tangī, to be touched; (4) tralī, to be touched.

5. (1) I shall be sent (2) you (sg.) are sent (3) you (sg.) will be sent (4) to be sent (5) they are sent (6) I am sent (7) he is seized (8) he will be seized (9) to be seized (10) we are seized (11) they will be seized (12) they are seized (13) you (sg.) are seized (14) you (sg.) will be seized (15) they are touched (16) they will be touched (17) to be touched (18) you (sg.) are touched (19) you (pl.) will be touched (20) you (sg.) will be known (21) you (sg.) are known (22) he will be known (23) he is known (24) to be known

6. Who is being sent (will be sent, used to be sent, was sent)? 7. By whom will this letter be sent (was sent, is sent)? 8. By whose hand was that letter written (will be written)? 9. What was said (was being said, will be said, is said)? 10. “Who (sg.) will be seized?” “You (sg.) will be seized.” 11. “Who (pl.) will be seized?” “You (pl.) will be seized.” 12. For a long time you (sg./pl.) will be neglected (were neglected). 13. After many hours we were freed (shall be freed). 14. For the sake of the state they ordered him to be seized. 15. For the sake of liberty our state ought to be managed by the other man. 16. His soul could not be touched by money. 17. In every soul the love of country used to be felt (will be felt, is felt, was felt). 18. We are joined (used to be joined, will be joined) to (lit., with) other citizens by love of country. 19. Friendship is not always understood, but it is felt. 20. Wisdom and truth will not be found (are not found, were not found) in those two men. 21. Wisdom is not obtained (will not be obtained, was not obtained) by even a great deal of (= much) money. 22. Truth often is not known (will not be known, was not known), because the study of it is difficult. 23. Not without great labor will truth be found (was found, can be found). 24. Others are drawn by eagerness for (lit., of) money and fame; we ought to be drawn by love of truth and wisdom.
KEY FOR CHAPTER 22

1. e.

2. -em, -ēs, -ēus, -ēs, -ēus (also -et, dat., and -ērum, gen.)

3. (1) Feminine. (2) Diēs.

4. (1) of hope; to/for hope (11) to/for or by/w./fr. days
   (2) of hopes (12) thing (acc.)
   (3) hope (acc.) (13) of things
   (4) to/for or by/w./fr. hopes (14) by/w./fr. a thing
   (5) hope (nom.); hopes (nom., acc.) (15) to/for or by/w./fr. things
   (6) by/w./fr. faith (16) of or to/for a thing
   (7) faith (acc.) (17) of fires
   (8) of or to/for faith (18) fire (acc.)
   (9) of days (19) to/for or by/w./fr. fires
   (10) day (nom.); days (nom., acc.) (20) fires (nom., acc.)

5. (1) place where; he remained in the city.
   (2) time within which; he will come in one hour.
   (3) time when; he came at that time.
   (4) accompaniment; he came with them.
   (5) place from which; he came from the city.
   (6) separation; they lack fire.
   (7) means; that was done by fire.
   (8) agent; it was done by them.
   (9) manner; it was done faithfully (with faith).

6. (1) ab + abl.
   (2) cum + abl.
   (3) abl. alone after verbs of freeing, lacking, and depriving; with other verbs ab, dē, ex is often used.
   (4) in + abl.
   (5) abl. alone
   (6) cum + abl.; cum may be omitted when the noun is modified by an adj.
   (7) ab, dē, ex + abl.
   (8) abl. alone.

7. At that time he faithfully preserved the liberty of those ten citizens. 8. He managed the state with great care (= very carefully). 9. The state was managed by him with great care. 10. Many good things were seen in the middle of the city. 11. On that day they prepared many things hopefully. 12. We snatched the fire from the hands of the boy. 13. In five days Cicero will rescue the republic from danger. 14. You (sg.) freed the two republics from fear. 15. The earth nourishes human beings with good fruits. 16. He nourished their uncertain hopes by his own courage. 17. In this age our hopes are being destroyed by these three tyrants. 18. Seven of our friends came from that state with great fear. 19. The whole clan came into the territory of this state with a large band of friends in one day. 20. Not all free men dare to join themselves with this republic. 21. If those men lack faith, there is no hope of friendship and peace. 22. Good faith and the love of this republic can save us. 23. You (sg.) have given (your) whole life to this state.
24. (7) time when; manner; (8) manner; (9) manner; (10) place where; (11) time when; manner; (13) time within which; separation; (14) separation; (15) means; (16) means; (17) time when; agent; (18) place from which; manner; (19) accompaniment; time within which; (21) separation.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 23

1. (1) perf. pass. = having been . . . or Eng. perf. partic.
   (2) pres. act. = -ing
   (3) fut. act. = about to . . .
   (4) pres. act. = -ing
   (5) fut. act. = about to . . .
   (6) fut. pass. = (about) to be . . .
   (7) perf. pass. = having been . . .
   (8) pres. act. = -ing.
   (9) perf. pass. = having been (e.g., nom. pl.)
   (10) perf. pass. = having been (dat. or abl. pl.)

2. (1) about to be
   (2) about to press
   (3) pressing
   (4) (having been) pressed
   (5) (about) to be pressed
   (6) turning
   (7) (having been) turned
   (8) about to turn
   (9) (having been) said
   (10) saying
   (11) about to say
   (12) (having been) done
   (13) (about) to be done
   (14) seizing
   (15) about to seize
   (16) (having been) desired
   (17) desiring
   (18) (about) to be given
   (19) (having been) given
   (20) about to give
   (21) giving
   (22) (having been) moved
   (23) moving
   (24) about to move

3. (1) visus
   (2) vidēns
   (3) visūr us
   (4) scribendus
   (5) scriptūr us
   (6) scriptus
   (7) mitiēns
   (8) missus
   (9) missūr us
   (10) victus
   (11) victūr us
   (12) vincēns
   (13) iunctūr us
   (14) iungēns
   (15) tractus
   (16) trahēns
   (17) iactūr us
   (18) iactus

4. When captured (lit., having been captured) he said nothing. 5. Freed from slavery he will lead a pleasant life. 6. He thanked those giving the gifts. 7. I do not like someone seeking gifts. 8. To a man desiring much money he used to give only a few gifts. 9. I sent my son to your school to be taught. 10. That man, when about to conquer another people, kept wishing to destroy (their) teachers and books. 11. Terrified by this plot we shall live a wretched life. 12. Long oppressed, they began to turn themselves against the oppressing tyrant. 13. Those four unfortunate men, when seen by the tyrant, ran across the border. 14. The orator, because he feared the tyrant, always used to say pleasing things. 15. We fear someone fearing us. (= who fears us). 16. These men, if they conquer, will take away all the rights of the conquered citizens. 17. That wretched man on the point of fleeing kept seek-
ing the advice of his three friends. 18. The old man, warned by two of his friends, fled to us. 19. Having himself been helped by the second old man, he kept giving many things to those lacking money. 20. Who, when freed from these dangers, will not thank the gods? 21. Joined with you (pl.), we shall save the republic. 22. To those having faith nothing is uncertain.

**KEY FOR CHAPTER 24**

1. (1) A noun (pronoun) + participle in abl.
   (2) No. (See p. 155.)

2. (1) See p. 155.
   (2) As a rule commas separate an abl. abs. from the rest of the sentence. This makes it appear somewhat apart from the rest of the sentence.

3. No. Since this “absolute” construction is not too commonly favored in English, the literal translation if regularly adhered to would make rather clumsy English.

4. When, since, after, although, if. (See p. 156.)

5. (1) Incorrect because the noun (urbe) of the abl. abs. is used (through its pronoun eam) as the object.
   (2) Incorrect because captus means having been captured, not having captured.
   (3) Correct because urbe captam (the captured city) stands as the natural object of delevit.
   (4) Correct because urbe capta is a normal abl. abs., the noun of which is not used elsewhere as subject or object.

6. (1) Obligation or necessity.
   (2) It is really a predicate adjective; and so it naturally agrees with the subject of sum.
   (3) Debo + inf., though debeo more often expresses the idea of moral obligation.

7. (1) Mihi is dat. of agent.
   (2) A me; abl. of agent.

8. If (since, etc.) these two men hold the power, the republic will be strong. 9. When (since, etc.) this rumor had been reported, the leader left the city without delay. 10. When every desire for (lit. of) money and glory had been banished from his soul, that leader conquered himself. 11. Every desire for evil things ought to be conquered by us (= we ought to conquer . . . ) if we wish to lead a good life. 12. If (since, etc.) the citizens love (their) country, we can have great hopes. 13. All citizens kept fearing that tyrant (of yours), who had to be banished. 14. When the tyrant had been overcome, the citizens regained their liberty and rights. 15. But after a tyrant has been expelled, another tyrant often gets the power. 16. Who in taking the power desires to help the state alone, not himself? 17. When many peoples had been conquered, you (sg.) desired to possess the whole world. 18. Slavery of every sort must be checked throughout the whole world. 19. If our republic is strong, nothing is to be feared by you (sg.). 20. Our country ought to be helped by each one who likes our mode of life. 21. All rights, therefore, ought to be preserved by the citizens with great care. 22. When duties have been deserted by the citizens, the state will be in great danger. 23. When these important things had
been said, the orator was praised by us. 24. Truth and virtue ought always to be sought by all men. 25. When (since) truth and virtue had been sought, the republic was saved.

26. A. (8) viris tenentibus; (9) fāmā narrātā; (10) cupiditāte expulsā; (12) cīvibus amantibus; (14) tyrannō superātō; (15) tyrannō expulsō; (17) gentibus victīs; (22) officiīs relictīs; (23) rēbus dictīs; (25) vérītāte . . . quaesītās.
B. (11) vincenda est; (13) expellendus erat; (18) opprimenda est; (19) timendum est; (20) adiuvanda est; (21) cōnservanda sunt; (24) quaerendae sunt.
C. (11) nōbis; (19) tibi; (20) eique; (21) cīvibus; (24) virīs.
D. (22) ā cīvibus; (23) ā nōbis.

**KEY FOR CHAPTER 25**

1. See p. 117, 136, 162.
2. Future active infinitive.
3. Perfect passive infinitive.
4. They agree with the subject of the infinitive. See p. 163, n. 4.
5. Since it is the ending of the perfect active infinitive, -isse in effect means "to have . . . ."
6. (1) to have moved
   (2) to have been moved
   (3) to be about to move
   (4) to be moved
   (5) to be said
   (6) to be known
   (7) to be saved
   (8) to be seized
   (9) to be sent
   (10) to have believed
   (11) to have destroyed
   (12) to have drawn
   (13) to have touched
   (14) to have loved
   (15) to have conquered
   (16) to have lived
   (17) to have been drawn
   (18) to have been seen
   (19) to have been seized
   (20) to have been sent
   (21) to have been sought
   (22) to have been expelled
   (23) to have been left
   (24) to have been given
   (25) to be about to give
   (26) to be about to turn
   (27) to be about to press
   (28) to be about to seize
   (29) to be about to order
   (30) to be about to touch
7. See p. 164.
8. (2) nuntiō, I announce
   (4) intellegō, I understand
   (7) videō, I see
   (8) nesciō, I do not know
   (10) credō, I believe
   (13) audīō, I hear
   (14) sentiō, I feel, think
   (16) scrībō, I write
   (19) ostendō, I show
   (20) sperō, I hope
   (22) putō, I think
   (24) negō, I say that . . . not, deny
10. The infinitive with subject accusative; not a "that" clause.
11. The accusative.
12. No.
13. (1) The perfect infinitive = time before that of the main verb.
(2) The future infinitive = time after that of the main verb.
(3) The present infinitive = the same time as that of the main verb. See p. 165.

14. I know that you did (will do, are doing) this (thing). 15. I knew that you had done (would do, were doing) this. 16. We believed that they would come (had come, were coming). 17. We believe that they will come (came, are coming).
18. Tomorrow he will hear (A) that they are coming (i.e., tomorrow); (B) that they came (e.g., yesterday) or that they have come; (C) that they will come (e.g., in a few days). 19. Today he hears (A) that they are coming (today); (B) that they came (yesterday); (C) that they will come (soon).
20. Yesterday he heard (A) that they were coming (yesterday); (B) that they had come (e.g., the day before yesterday); (C) that they would come (in a few days).
21. They hope that you (pl.) will see him.
22. I know that this was done by you. 23. I did not know that those things had been done by him.
24. They said that the city was not being captured by the enemy (had not been captured).
25. You (pl.) know that those men are (will be, were/have been) always faithful.
26. You (pl.) knew that those men were (would be, had been) always faithful.
27. They kept thinking that the tyrant ought to be driven out by them (by themselves).
28. We believe that peace ought to be sought by all leaders.
29. He says that peace is being sought (was sought) by the ten leaders.
30. He said that the two leaders would seek (were seeking, had sought) peace.
31. The enemy hope that they will conquer all states.
32. I well know that I do not know many things, for no one can know all things.

33. Scire (sentence 32) is a complementary infinitive depending on potest.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>34.</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Reason</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(14) tē</td>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>subj. of inf. (fēcissem)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(14) fēcisse</td>
<td>perf. act. inf.</td>
<td>indir. statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(16) eōs</td>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>subj. of inf. (ventūros esse)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(17) ventūros esse</td>
<td>fut. act. inf.</td>
<td>indir. state</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(21) eum</td>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>obj. of inf. (visūros esse)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(22) hoc</td>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>subj. of inf. (fāctum esse)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(23) eō</td>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>agent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(24) hostibus</td>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>agent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(25) fidēles</td>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>pred. adj. agreeing with illōs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(27) sibi</td>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>agent w. pass. periphrastic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(28) pācem</td>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>subj. of inf. (quaerendam esse)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(28) ducibus</td>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>agent w. pass. periphr.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(29) ducibus</td>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>agent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(30) pācem</td>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>obj. of inf. (quaesitūros esse)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(31) rēs pūblīcās</td>
<td>ncc.</td>
<td>obj. of inf.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

KEY FOR CHAPTER 26

1. (1) Latin -ior corresponds to English -er:
   (2) They have a slight similarity in sound and they both have a final -r as a sign of the comparative.
2. (1) Latin -issimus corresponds to English -est.
   (2) The s's which they have in common suggest s as a sign of the superlative.
3. (1) They are added to the base of the adjective. (See p. 171-72.)
(2) turpior, turpissimus; velōcior, velōcissimus; prūdentior, prūdentissimus
4. (1) Acerbior = harsher, rather harsh, too harsh.
(2) Acerbissimus = harshest, very harsh.
5. (1) Quam with the comparative = than (this man was harsher than that one).
(2) Quam with the superlative = as...as possible, -er possible (this man was as harsh as possible, the harshest possible).
6. There is no fixed case after quam, which is an adverb or conjunction of comparison. The second word of a comparison, which comes after quam, is put in the same case as that of the first of the two words compared. (See p. 173.)
7. (1) Most have i-stems.
(2) Comparatives have consonant stems. (Note, incidentally, that comparative and consonant both begin with the same sound.)

8. They announced that the bravest possible leader had come. 9. After a very clear light had been seen by the four men, the bravest troops were sent against the enemy.
10. When that very base man had been banished, the senate gave gifts to the more faithful citizens. 11. The more fortunate citizens used to do these pleasant things on behalf of the more unfortunate citizens. 12. This author is more famous than that one. 13. Certain men said that this author was more famous than that one. 14. Read the books of wiser authors if you wish to lead the wisest (a very wise) life. 15. The six authors whose books I have read are too (rather) harsh. 16. After certain very wise books had been read, we avoided those baser faults. 17. This man, who has overcome his base faults, is braver than the very brave leader. 18. Who is the happiest man? He who leads the wisest life is happier than the most powerful tyrant. 19. The cure of your vices seems rather (too) difficult. 20. That leader thought that his country was dearer to him than life. 21. A band of the most faithful young men possible ought to be sought by the senate.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 27
1. (1) and (2)—see p. 179 item II.
2. (1) and (2)—see p. 179 item I.
3. Positive Comparative Superlative
parvus minus (minor, minus) minimum (minimus)
malus peiorative (peior) pessimist (pessimus)
bonus ameliorate (melior) optimist (optimus)
(prō) prior (prior) prime (prīmus)
magnus maior (maior) maximum (maximus)
superus superior (superior) supreme (supremus)
multus plus (plūs) summit (summus)
4. (1) a smaller war (7) the smallest boy
(2) the worst (very bad) war (8) the better boy
(3) a greater war (9) a very (most) beautiful girl
(4) former wars (10) a more beautiful girl
(5) a very similar book (11) very many girls
(6) a more difficult book (12) greater faith
(13) very small faith  
(14) a smaller sea  
(15) in a smaller sea  
(16) larger seas  
(17) the best fruits  
(18) worse fruit  
(19) the fiercest (very fierce) men  
(20) fiercer men  
(21) more men  
(22) most (very) difficult labor  
(23) the last (supreme) labor  
(24) more labor  
(25) more labors  
(26) the best leaders  
(27) greater leaders  
(28) better leaders  
(29) the smallest gifts  
(30) more gifts  
(31) the first gifts  
(32) more praise  
(33) more praises  
(34) the worst citizens  
(35) better citizens  
(36) very free citizens

5. The easiest things often are not the best.  
6. The difficult things are often the greatest.  
7. The better pursuits are more (rather) difficult.  
8. The worst authors write very many books.  
9. These books are worse than the books of better authors.  
10. The smaller boy received a larger gift.  
11. That very small republic had the greatest hopes.  
12. More men believe that this war is worse than the first war.  
13. A better leader will come with greater forces.  
14. Fierce leaders often used to praise the fiercer forces of the fiercest enemy.  
15. When the very evil tyrant had been banished, the citizens sought a better and a wiser leader.  
16. They gave the better leader greater power and more money.  
17. Citizens of the smaller cities are not better than those of the largest cities.  
18. We are not better than very many men of former ages.  
19. Our ancestors used to call Apollo the god of the sun.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 28
1. Something other than a fact; e.g., the command and purpose clauses learned in this chapter. See p. 186.
2. See p. 186.
3. (1) ē; (2) ā (except that in the 3rd and 4th conjugations the forms dēcam and audiam are identical in the future indicative and the present subjunctive).
4. Command, called “jussive.”
5. Purpose.
7. No. (See p. 189.)
8. (1) he will send  
(2) subj., 3rd sg.  
(3) he is sending  
(4) subj., 3rd sg.  
(5) he gives  
(6) subj., 3rd pl.  
(7) they believe  
(8) they will believe  
(9) they move  
(10) subj., 3rd pl.  
(11) we shall be heard  
(12) subj., 1st pl. pass.  
(13) we are heard  
(14) subj., 2nd sg.  
(15) you (sg.) are seizing  
(16) you (sg.) will seize  
(17) they are known  
(18) they will be known  
(19) subj., 3rd pl. pass.  
(20) you (pl.) are freed  
(21) subj., 2d. pl. pass.  
(22) you (pl.) will be freed
9. Let that leader come. We are awaiting him. 10. Let the base citizens depart from (our) republic so that we may live in peace. 11. If those two men desire friends, let them do real kindnesses. 12. He shows kindnesses to others in order to be loved (so that he may be loved). 13. I say these happy words to you so that you may not depart. 14. Let us do these very difficult things for the sake of our country. 15. Give more money to those unfortunate people so that they may not lack arms against the enemy. 16. He thinks that they will do it to avoid my anger. 17. Let us prepare arms so that our liberty may not be taken away. 18. Will our freedom be rescued from danger by arms alone? 19. Let philosophers not write too difficult books. 20. For (= the truth is) we shall not receive enough wisdom from too difficult books. 21. Let him do better and greater things so that he may not lead a most wretched life. 22. Tell these things to that very famous author so that they may be written in his book. 23. Let us always seek the truth, without which the greatest souls cannot be happy.

24. \begin{array}{lll}
\text{Word} & \text{Form} & \text{Reason} \\
\text{(9) veniat} & \text{pres. subj.} & \text{command (jussive)} \\
\text{(10) discēdant} & \text{pres. subj.} & \text{command} \\
\text{vīvēmus} & \text{pres. subj.} & \text{purpose} \\
\text{(11) faciant} & \text{pres. subj.} & \text{command} \\
\text{(12) præstāt} & \text{pres. ind.} & \text{statement of fact} \\
\text{amētur} & \text{pres. subj.} & \text{purpose} \\
\text{(13) discēdātis} & \text{pres. subj.} & \text{purpose} \\
\text{(14) faciāmus} & \text{pres. subj.} & \text{command} \\
\text{(15) datē} & \text{imper.} & \text{command in 2nd per.} \\
\text{armīs} & \text{abl.} & \text{separation} \\
\text{careant} & \text{pres. subj.} & \text{purpose} \\
\text{(16) eōs} & \text{acc.} & \text{subj. of inf.} \\
\text{factūrōs esse} & \text{fut. act. inf.} & \text{indirect statement} \\
\text{vitent} & \text{pres. subj.} & \text{purpose} \\
\text{(17) parēmus} & \text{pres. subj.} & \text{command} \\
\text{tollētur} & \text{pres. subj.} & \text{purpose} \\
\text{(18) armīs} & \text{abl.} & \text{means} \\
\text{ēripētur} & \text{fut. ind.} & \text{fact} \\
\text{(19) scribant} & \text{pres. subj.} & \text{command} \\
\text{(20) accipēmus} & \text{fut. ind.} & \text{fact} \\
\text{(21) faciat} & \text{pres. subj.} & \text{command} \\
\text{agat} & \text{pres. subj.} & \text{purpose} \\
\text{(22) narrā} & \text{imper.} & \text{command in 2nd per.} \\
\text{scribantur} & \text{pres. subj.} & \text{purpose} \\
\text{(23) quaerēmus} & \text{pres. subj.} & \text{command} \\
\end{array}
KEY FOR CHAPTER 29

1. Present active infinitive + personal endings. See p. 194.

2. Yes.

(2) impf. subj., 3 pl.
(3) impf. subj., 1 pl.
(4) impf. subj., 1 sg.
(5) impf. subj., 2 sg.
(6) pres. subj., 3 sg.
(7) impf. subj., 2 pl.
(8) pres. subj., 3 sg.
(9) you (sg.) will find
(10) pres. subj., 2 sg.
(11) pres. subj., 3 sg.
(12) he will say
(13) he says
(14) pres. subj., 3 pl.
(15) impf. subj., 3 sg.

4. Ut or ut non + subjunctive.

5. See p. 196.


7. They read the best books with such great care that they learned much wisdom.

8. We used to read good books with care so that we might learn wisdom. 9. The best books ought to be read by students in order that they may learn the truth and good character. 10. Let the wisest authors write more books so that they may be able to help all peoples. 11. The souls of very many men are so foolish that they do not wish to learn. 12. But many minds are so keen that they can learn well. 13. Some teachers used to teach their pupils so skillfully (with such great skill) that even the pupils themselves wanted to learn. 14. The power of that tyrant was so great that the senate could not drive him out. 15. Let all citizens dedicate (give) themselves to the country so that the enemy may not take away their liberty. 16. Caesar was such a keen leader that the enemy did not conquer the Roman soldiers. 17. Are we leading other peoples with such great wisdom and courage that liberty is being preserved? 18. You (pl.) used to do such great kindnesses that all loved you. 19. He was so harsh that no one loved him. 20. Thousands of citizens kept fleeing from that land in order not to be oppressed by the tyrant. 21. They so loved liberty that they were never conquered by the enemy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Reason</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>discerent</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td>result</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discerēmus</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td>purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diseant</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scribant</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possint</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupiant</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>result</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(12) possint
(13) cuperent
(14) posset
(15) dent
tollant
(16) vincerent
(17) cōnservētur
(18) amārent
(19) amāret
(20) opprimerentur
(21) vincerentur

pres. subj. result
impt: subj. result
impt. subj. result
pres. subj. command
tollant subj. purpose
impt. subj. result
pres. subj. result
impt. subj. result
impt. subj. result
impt. subj. result
impt. subj. result

KEY FOR CHAPTER 30

1. It is the perfect active infinitive (-isse) + personal endings; e.g., pōnere-m and posuisse-m.
2. It is the perfect passive participle + essēm (the imperfect subjunctive of sum); e.g., positus eram and positus essēm.
3. Positus sit is perfect subjunctive passive.
4. The future perfect indicative.

5. (1) impf. pass., 3 sg. (9) impf. act., 3 pl.
   (2) plupf. act., 1 sg. (10) plupf. pass., 1 pl.
   (3) perf. pass., 3 pl. (11) pres. act., 3 sg.
   (4) pres. pass., 1 pl. (12) perf. pass., 2 sg.
   (5) perf. act., 3 pl. (13) plupf. act., 2 sg.
   (6) impf. act., 1 pl. (14) impf. pass., 3 sg.
   (7) plupf. act., 2 pl. (15) perf. act., 1 pl.
   (8) plupf. pass., 3 sg. (16) plupf. act., 3 pl.

   (2) Present and perfect.
   (3) The past tenses.
   (4) Imperfect and pluperfect.

7. (1) The same time or time after (contemporaneous or subsequent). See p. 205.
   (2) The same time or time after.
   (3) Time before (prior).
   (4) Time before (prior).

8. Where is (was) the leader? 9. They ask where the leader is (was). 10. They kept asking where the leader was (had been). 11. They will ask where the leader is (was). 12. I do not know where the money was put. 13. Do you (sg.) know where the money is being put? 14. They knew where the money was being put. 15. He did not know where the money had been put. 16. We shall tell you (pl.) why the soldier did (does) this. 17. They told me why the soldier had done (was doing) this. 18. Tell me who came (is coming). 19. The orator asked why the other citizens had not learned these plans. 20. We announced to the leader that the other soldiers were fleeing (had fled) into that land. 21. We announced to the leader into what
land the other soldiers were fleeing (had fled). 22. We heard that the citizens were so faithful that they preserved the state. 23. We heard what the citizens had done to preserve the state. 24. They kept inquiring in whose state peace could be found. 25. We learned that peace had not been found in their country. 26. Those foolish men always ask what is better than power or money. 27. We certainly think that money itself is not bad; but we believe that truth and liberty and friendship are better and greater. 28. These things we desire so that we may live a finer life; for money alone and power can make men harsh, so that they are not happy. 29. Finally, let him explain all things so that you (pl.) may now understand what great crimes have been committed against the republic.

### KEY FOR CHAPTER 31

1. When (circumstantial, which is to be distinguished from cum temporal), since, although.
2. Although.
3. (1) The 3rd conjugation.
   (2) They lack the connecting vowel eth, which is seen in the corresponding forms of duco. (See p. 212.)
   (2) he bears (9) he is borne
   (3) impf. subj. act., 3 sg. (10) bear (2 pl.)
   (4) he will bear (11) you (pl.) bear
   (5) to bear (12) you (sg.) will be borne
   (6) they bear (13) you (sg.) are borne
   (7) they will bear (14) bear (2 sg.)
5. When we had said this, those twenty men replied that they would offer a just peace. 6. Although he had gone into another country, nevertheless he found new friends. 7. Since they offer us friendship, we shall offer them aid. 8. Since the danger was great, they brought all their troops and arms together in a short time. 9. What do you (sg.) bring? What does he bring? Tell me why these gifts are offered. 10. When he had explained what he was seeking, you (sg.) said that such great aid could not be offered. 11. Although they had brought pleasing gifts, I was able nevertheless to recognize their treachery. 12. Since we now understand your plans, we will not endure your treachery. 13. Such great evils are not to be endured. Go (take yourself) into exile. 14. Finally, let these hundred citizens bear aid to the republic. 15. I kept thinking that they would bring the wine in ships (lit., by ships). 16. Although our soldiers had conquered the enemy, nevertheless they offered them many kindnesses. 17. When he had learned what great benefits the other three men were offering, he himself offered equal benefits. 18. We ought to offer sufficient aid to the unfortunate citizens of small nations. 19. When the consul had spoken these words, the senate replied that money had been brought together for this purpose.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>20.</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Reason</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(5)</td>
<td>dixissent</td>
<td>plupf. subj.</td>
<td>cum circumstantial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>obliturus esse</td>
<td>fut. inf.</td>
<td>ind. state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(6)</td>
<td>contulisset</td>
<td>plupf. subj.</td>
<td>cum although</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(7)</td>
<td>offerant</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>cum since</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(8)</td>
<td>esset</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td>cum since</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(9)</td>
<td>offerantur</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>ind. quest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(10)</td>
<td>exposissent</td>
<td>plupf. subj.</td>
<td>cum circumstantial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>peteret</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td>ind. quest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(11)</td>
<td>tulissent</td>
<td>plupf. subj.</td>
<td>cum although</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(12)</td>
<td>comprehendimus</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>cum since</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(13)</td>
<td>confer</td>
<td>imper. 2 sg.</td>
<td>command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(14)</td>
<td>ferant</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>jussive (command)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(15)</td>
<td>navibus</td>
<td>abl. pl.</td>
<td>means</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>latrōs esse</td>
<td>fut. inf.</td>
<td>ind. state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(16)</td>
<td>vicissent</td>
<td>plupf. subj.</td>
<td>cum although</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(17)</td>
<td>offerent</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td>ind. quest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(19)</td>
<td>dixisset</td>
<td>plupf. subj.</td>
<td>cum circumstantial</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**KEY FOR CHAPTER 32**

1. (1) -ē; (2) -iter (e.g., liberē, celeriter).
2. The ending -fy (e.g., freely, quickly).
3. No. For example, see the list on p. 221.
4. (1) -ius (e.g., liberius, celerius).
   (2) It is identical with the nom. and acc. neut. sg.
(3) It is usually formed by using more (too, rather) with the positive degree of the
adverb (e.g., more/too freely, more quickly).

5. The base is the same in both instances.

6. (1) liberus = more/too/rather freely.
   (2) liberinē = most/very freely.

7. (1) pleasantly
   (2) more/too pleasantly
   (3) most/very pleasantly
   (4) better
   (5) very faithfully
   (6) briefly
   (7) very quickly
   (8) worse
   (9) more faithfully
   (10) more easily

   (11) very little, least of all
   (12) more, rather
   (13) longer
   (14) badly
   (15) more wretchedly
   (16) less
   (17) easily
   (18) especially, most of all
   (19) very seriously
   (20) more swiftly

8. (1) vol-; (2) vel-. See p. 221.

9. It is similar to sum. See p. 221.

10. (1) you (sg.) will wish
    (2) pres. subj., 2 sg.
    (3) you (sg.) wish
    (4) impf. subj., 2 sg.
    (5) he prefers
    (6) pres. subj., 1 pl.
    (7) impf. subj., 1 pl.
    (8) plupf. subj., 2 sg.
    (9) I shall wish
    (10) they kept wishing
    (11) he will wish
    (12) you (pl.) wish
    (13) to have wished
    (14) they wish
    (15) we wished
    (16) to wish
    (17) he had wished
    (18) they wished
    (19) you (sg.) wished
    (20) impf. subj., 3 sg.
    (21) they do not wish
    (22) impf. subj., 3 sg.
    (23) pres. subj., 3 sg.
    (24) he will not wish

11. Certain men prefer to believe that all men are equal. 12. Certain men say that
    all men’s minds at least are not equal. 13. These men obtained wealth very quickly;
    those will be poor for a very long time. 14. This man wishes to get very many
    honors as easily as possible. 15. Do not lose this knowledge. 16. The citizens
    themselves managed the state better than the leader. 17. There the land is more
    level and is more open. 18. Free men will not wish to keep us from knowledge; but
    tyrants especially so wish. 19. The tyrant used to oppress his citizens so badly that
    they always wished to be free. 20. He will offer very many gifts very freely so that
    the army may be willing to help that tyrant. 21. Since they had very little wish to
    offer aid, we were unwilling to show them many favors. 22. Since the enemy are
    coming swiftly against us, we want to call our men to arms as quickly as possible.
    23. Although they truly wanted to preserve their liberty and laws, nevertheless the
    crimes of the tyrant had to be endured very long. 24. He prefers to do these things
    more wisely so that he may not lose this occasion at least. 25. Do not leave, my
    friend.
KEY FOR CHAPTER 33
1. (1) The present subjunctive. (2) See p. 229.
2. (1) (A) Present contrary to fact; (B) past contrary to fact.
   (2) The conditional clause. See p. 229.
3. Nisi.
4. The future less vivid condition.
5. See vocabulary p. 230.
6. If reason leads, you (sg.) are happy. 7. If reason leads, you will be happy. 8. If reason should lead, you would be happy. 9. If reason were leading, you would be happy. 10. If reason had led, you would have been happy. 11. If you (sg.) love money, you lack wisdom. 12. If you love money, you will lack wisdom. 13. If you should love money, you would lack wisdom. 14. If you were in love with money, you would lack wisdom. 15. If you had loved money, you would have lacked wisdom. 16. If we seek the truth, we find knowledge. 17. If we seek the truth, we shall find knowledge. 18. If we should seek the truth, we would find knowledge. 19. If we were seeking the truth, we would find knowledge. 20. If we had sought the truth, we would have found knowledge. 21. If you do not avoid anger, you will lose your two friends. 22. If you had not avoided anger, you would have lost your five friends. 23. If you should not avoid anger (if you should fail to avoid anger), you would lose many friends. 24. If you were not avoiding anger, you would be losing many friends. 25. If you do not avoid anger, you are losing many friends. 26. If you did not avoid anger, you lost many friends. 27. If anyone has a good character, we praise him. 28. If anyone had a good character, we would have praised him. 29. If anyone should have a good character, we would praise him. 30. If anyone had a good character, we praised (used to praise) him. 31. If anyone were in possession of a good character, we would praise him. 32. If anyone has a good character, we shall praise him. 33. If those men win, we shall depart. 34. If those men should win, we would depart. 35. If those men had won, we would have departed. 36. If you had read books well, you would have written better. 37. If you read books well, you will write better. 38. If you should read books well, you would write better.

39. (6) simple present
    (7) simple fut.
    (8) fut. less vivid
    (9) pres. contr. to fact
    (10) past contr. to fact

(21) simple fut.
(22) past contr. to fact
(23) fut. less vivid
(24) pres. contr. to fact
(25) simple present
(26) simple past

KEY FOR CHAPTER 34
1. See p. 234.
2. 
   | Pres. | Indicative | loquitor |
   | Impf. | conabamur | loquebatur |
   | Fut.  | conabimur | loquetur |
3. (1) Participle

- **Pres.** patiens, suffering
- **Perf.** passus, having suffered
- **Fut.** passurus, about to suffer
- **Ger.** patiendus, to be endured

(2) Infinitives

- **Pres.** poti, to suffer
- **Perf.** passus esse, to have suffered
- **Fut.** passurus esse, to be about to suffer

4. (1) illud consilium; (2) illud consilium; (3) illud consilium


6. Pres. partic.; fut. partic.; fut. inf.; e.g., patiens, passurus, passurus esse in 3 above.

7. (1) conor

- 2 sg. conāre, try
- 2 pl. conāmini, try

(2) loquer

- loquere, speak
- loquimini, speak

8. (1) locutus, having said

- mortuus, having died
- conatus, having tried
- passus, having suffered

(5) secutus, having followed

(6) egressus, having gone out

(7) profectus, having set out

9. (1) he will use

- pres. subj., 3 sg.
- he uses
- impf. subj., 3 sg.
- having used
- plupf. subj., 3 sg.
- to be about to use
- you (sg.) will endure
- you (sg.) are enduring
- endure (imper.)

(11) to endure

- they endured
- to have endured
- enduring
- having used
- pres. subj., 3 sg.
- he endures
- we shall endure
- pres. subj., 3 sg.
- impf. subj., 3 sg.

10. He thinks that these evils ought to be endured. 11. We shall try to endure these evils. 12. If you do not wish to die, endure these evils. 13. Having endured the greatest evils, the poor man died. 14. The tyrant thought that those two men would endure these evils a long time. 15. When they had endured three wars, they dared to force that tyrant into exile. 16. If you follow this new leader, you will enjoy liberty and leisure. 17. When these words had been said, we dared to follow him.
18. Having spoken these words, we set out so that we might not die in that miserable place. 19. Although he thought that you had used a bad plan, nevertheless he spoke with you freely. 20. If anyone should dare to use wine of that sort, he would quickly die. 21. His son was born and died on the same day. 22. Let us use all our resources so that our country may be saved. 23. When he tried to set out into another land, he was captured by soldiers. 24. I kept thinking that he would go out of the city with his ten friends. 25. Having set out that night, Caesar came to a certain very famous island. 26. If they had used better books, they would have learned more. 27. If you wish to have many friends, do not be arrogant.

28. (12) simple pres.; (16) simple fut.; (20) fut. less vivid; (26) past contrary to fact.

29. 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Reason</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(14) passūrōs esse</td>
<td>fut. inf.</td>
<td>ind. state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(17) verbis</td>
<td>abl.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(18) locūti</td>
<td>nom. pl. of perf. partic.</td>
<td>agrees w. subject of verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moterēmur</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(19) consiliō</td>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>special deponents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arbitrāretur</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td>cum although</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(21) diē</td>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>time when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(22) utāmur</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>jussive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(25) nocte</td>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>time when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(26) libris</td>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>spec. deponents</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

KEY FOR CHAPTER 35

1. See p. 246.
3. (1) eum; they recognize him. (13) eum; they overcome him.
   (2) ei; they forgive him.   (14) ei; they trust him.
   (3) et; they serve him.     (15) ei; they lack it.
   (4) eum; they save him.     (16) ei; they study it.
   (5) eum; I prepared him.    (17) eum; they urge him.
   (6) ei; I obeyed him.        (18) eum; they follow him.
   (7) eum; they endure him.    (19) ei; they persuade him.
   (8) eum; they will find him. (20) ei; they use it (him).
   (9) ei; they injure him.     (21) eum; they strike him.
   (10) eum; they help him.     (22) ei; they spare him.
   (11) ei; they please him.    (23) ei; they command him.
   (12) eum; they throw him.    (24) eum; they order him.

4. He saved the leader. 5. He served the leader. 6. Slaves serve other men. 7. Brave men save others. 8. That slave served my son and saved him. 9. If anyone serves himself alone, he will never save the republic. 10. If someone had undertaken this work, he would have saved a thousand men. 11. The gods will pardon me; you, O citizens, pardon the whole army. 12. If we want God to forgive us, we ought to forgive other men. 13. They do not trust me now, and they will never be willing to trust my two sons. 14. Those friends are very dear to me. 15. Since you lacked good faith, they could not trust you. 16. Let us obey this leader so that he
may spare us and save the city. 17. If Caesar does not please the citizens, they will not spare his life. 18. I am studying Latin literature, which I like (pleases me) even if I cannot persuade my friends. 19. Let us always study and obey truth and wisdom. 20. Always study the best subjects if you wish to be truly happy. 21. As we study these subjects, let us enjoy both books and life. 22. A good man wishes to harm nobody; he spares all, he helps all. 23. My rewards are very similar to yours.

### Word Form Reason

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Reason</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>duel</td>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>special vbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eum</td>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>obj. of servâtivit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sibi</td>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>spec. vbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exercitus</td>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>spec. vbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hominibus</td>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>spec. vbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>filii</td>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>spec. vbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mihi</td>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>dat. w. adjs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fidē</td>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>separation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duel</td>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>spec. vbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pifreōmus</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>jussive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>servet</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>civibus</td>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>spec. vbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vitae</td>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>spec. vbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>littera</td>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>spec. vbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>artes</td>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>spec. vbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rebus</td>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>spec. vbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libris</td>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>spec. depon. vbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utâmus</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>jussive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omnibus</td>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>spec. vbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuīs</td>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>dat. w. adjs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**KEY FOR CHAPTER 36**

1. Indirect command = ut (nē) + subjunctive. See p. 253.
2. E.g., imperō, dico, curo, moneō, hortor, persuādeo, petō, quaerō, dō, rogō. See p. 254.
3. (1) it will be made/done, he will become (9) to have been made/done, become (10) impf. subj., 3 pl.
   (2) it is made/done, he becomes (11) we are made, become (12) they will be made, become (13) you (sg.) are made, become (14) impf. subj., 1 sg.
   (3) pres. subj., 3 sg. (15) pres. subj., 3 pl. (16) gerundive, to be made/done (17) pres. subj., 1 pl.
   (4) impf. subj., 3 sg. (5) to be made/done, to become (6) they are made/done, they become (7) they were being made/done done, they were becoming (8) you (sg.) will be made, become

4. He said that they were studying Latin literature. 5. He told why they were studying Latin literature. 6. He said that they should study Latin literature (he told them to study . . .). 7. We asked them why they were studying Greek philosophy. 8. Do
you ask that we learn (= ask us to learn) the nature of all things? 9. I warn you to spare these wise men. 10. He warned the soldiers not to injure those seeking peace. 11. He will command us not to trust the enemy. 12. He commanded you to obey the leader. 13. I ask you why you did this. 14. I ask you to do this. 15. I beg of you that peace be made. 16. They kept begging me not to make war. 17. I begged him not to obey the disgraceful king. 18. We beg you to become very keen pupils. 19. Do not be like that harsh tyrant. 20. Caesar took care that his power be made greatest in the state. 21. The speaker urged us to serve our free country eagerly. 22. He persuaded us that we should always use just laws. 23. We are trying to persuade the leader not to harm the arts and laws of the country. 24. A tyrant commands that money be made; and money is made. But that fool does not perceive that this money will be nothing without good faith. 25. Let us urge more students certainly to study the Latin language.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>26.</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Reason</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(4)</td>
<td>studēre</td>
<td>pres. inf.</td>
<td>ind. state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5)</td>
<td>studērēnt</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td>ind. quest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(6)</td>
<td>studērēnt</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td>jussive noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(7)</td>
<td>studērēnt</td>
<td>impf. subj.</td>
<td>ind. quest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(8)</td>
<td>cognōscēmus</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>jussive noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(9)</td>
<td>parcēs</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>jussive noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pācem</td>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>obj. petentibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(11)</td>
<td>hostibus</td>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>spec. vbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(13)</td>
<td>fāceīs</td>
<td>perf. subj.</td>
<td>ind. quest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(14)</td>
<td>facēs</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>jussive noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(16)</td>
<td>factorēm</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>jussive noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(18)</td>
<td>mātis</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>jussive noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(22)</td>
<td>lēgibus</td>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>spec. dep. vbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(23)</td>
<td>lēgibus</td>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>spec. vbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(24)</td>
<td>futūram esse</td>
<td>fut. inf.</td>
<td>ind. state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(25)</td>
<td>hortēmur</td>
<td>pres. subj.</td>
<td>jussive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

KEY FOR CHAPTER 37

1. (1) Present indicative and present subjunctive.
   (2) It is T-.
2. Nom. sg. = ūns; nom. pl. = eunēs.
3. In writing the synopsis of a verb one should follow the sequence of tenses in the indicative and the subjunctive as given above in #2 of the Key of Chapter 34. If this is done there is no need to label the tenses.
   Eō 2nd sg.: Indicative—ēs, ēbas, ēbis, ēsit, ēreis, ēris.
   Subjunctive—ēs, ēbas, ēbis, ēsit, ēreis, ēris.
   Eō 3d pl.: Indicative—eunt, ēbant, ēbant, ērunt, ērunt, ērint, ērint.
   Subjunctive—eant, ērent, ērint, ēsent.
4. (1) we went     (3) impf. subj., I pl.
   (2) we are going (4) we shall go
| (5) plupf. subj., 1 pl. | (15) they had gone |
| (6) pres. subj., 1 pl. | (16) perf. subj., 1 sg. |
| (7) to be about to go | (17) impf. subj., 3 sg. |
| (8) going (acc. sg.) | (18) to have gone |
| (9) they went | (19) going (nom./acc. pl.) |
| (10) they are going | (20) I shall go |
| (11) pres. subj., 3 pl. | (21) he went |
| (12) they will go | (22) we were going |
| (13) I went | (23) plupf. subj., 3 sg. |
| (14) he was going | (24) pres. subj., 3 sg. |

5. (1) ab, de, ex + abl.; ab (ex) ea terrā.  
    (2) in + abl.: in ea terrā; in ea Insulā.  
    (3) in or ad + acc.: in (ad) eam terram.

6. (1) Place from which = abl. without a preposition.  
    (2) Place where = locative without a preposition.  
    (3) Place to which = accusative without a preposition.

7. The locative is the case which expresses the idea of "place where" when domus or the name of a city is used. See p. 262.

8. (1) Time when = abl. without a prep.: eōdem die.  
    (2) Time how long = acc. usually without a prep.: multōs dies.  
    (3) Time within which = abl. without a prep.: unō die.

9. Since an impersonal verb lacks the 1st and the 2nd persons sg. and pl., the 1st and the 3rd principal parts are given in the 3rd pers. sg. See p. 264, Vocabulary, s.v. licet and n. 1. Licet tibi ire.

10. (1) (for) one day | (7) in a few days | (13) home (= to home) |
    (2) in one day | (8) on the same night | (14) at/from Athens |
    (3) on that day | (9) (for) many days | (15) at home |
    (4) from Rome | (10) into the ship | (16) to Athens |
    (5) at Rome | (11) in the ship | (17) from home |
    (6) to Rome | (12) out of the ship | (18) (for) a few hours |

11. In a few hours we shall go to Rome. 12. We are going to the city; they are going home. 13. As we have often admitted, you may not (are not permitted to) go from Rome to Athens (it is, to go is not permitted to you). 14. Why did you leave home (go away from home) so quickly? 15. They are coming to Rome in order to go to Athens with my brother. 16. Do not go away from Rome. 17. When your brother had been killed at Rome, we kept urging you to return to Athens. 18. If he should go into the territory of the enemy at this time, he would perish in a few hours. 19. He said that he did not want to stay in that country of yours many days. 20. You said that you would return home from Athens in one hour. 21. I beg of you to return from the ship to the island in a short time. 22. In those days we were accustomed to be at Athens. 23. If they had injured his friends at Rome, he would have returned to Rome in a very short time. 24. Although my brother stayed at home, I nevertheless went away from home into new lands. 25. The Romans, if they wanted to say something bad, often used to say: "Go to the devil." 26. He is persuading them to study Latin.
27. (11) höris = abl.: time within which; Rōman = acc.: place to which; (12) domum = acc.: place to which; (13) Rōma = abl.: place from; Athenēs = acc.: place to; ēre = pres. inf.: subject of lice; (14) domō = abl.: place from; (15) Rōman = acc.: place to; (18) tempore = abl.: time when; ēt = pres. subj.: fut. less vivid; höris = abl.: time within; (19) velle = pres. inf.: ind. state.; diēs = acc.: time how long; (20) domum = acc.: place to; Athenēs = abl.: place from; hörā = abl.: time within; rediērūm esse = fut. inf.: ind. state.; (21) tempore = abl. time within; redeās = pres. subj.: jussive noun clause; (22) diēbus = abl.: time when; Athenēs = locative: place where; (23) amīcis = dat.: spec. verbs; Rōmae = locative: place where; redissent = plupf. subj.: past cont. to fact condit.; (24) domi = locative: place where; terrās = acc.: place to; domō = abl.: place from; (26) studiēant = pres. subj.: jussive noun clause.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 38

1. A relative clause with the indicative tells a fact about the antecedent.
2. A relative clause with the subjunctive tells a characteristic of the antecedent, indicates it to be a person or thing of such a sort. See p. 269.
3. See p. 270.
5. My friend who defended the consul was himself a very famous man. 6. But there was no one who would defend that base fellow. 7. What is there which men fear more than a tyrant? 8. Who is there who would hesitate between liberty and the command of a tyrant? 9. At ancient Rome there were those who loved money more than the state. 10. Let that evil man depart from his country—he who has endured the hatred of all good citizens. 11. Catiline, who had made such a great plot against the state, was driven from the city by Cicero. 12. What life can be pleasant for that leader as he goes off into exile? 13. Who is there who would be able to bear such pain? 14. If a person is not agreeable and good, he will not live a truly happy life, it seems to me. 15. They will not trust a consul who would do base deeds. 16. Do not trust a man who is harsh to his friends. 17. Cicero was a consul who would place the state before his own safety. 18. They knew why we wanted to follow such a brave consul. 19. I know nothing which could be easier for me. 20. I am seeking a leader whom all men would praise. 21. They were going to Rome to ask for freedom. 22. The Romans, who had captured ten Greek republics with their own armies, were themselves—amazing to say—taken captive by the Greek arts! 23. For the ancient men there was nothing which was better than courage and wisdom. 24. Nothing is to be feared which cannot injure the soul.

25. The qui . . . dēfendit states a fact about the amicus; it does not describe his character. The subjunctive clause in #6 tells what kind of person the imagined amicus might be.

26. Syntax: (7) metuat = pres. subj.: characteristic; (8) dubitet = pres. subj.: characteristic; (9) Rōmae = loc.: place where; amarent = impf. subj.: characteristic; (10) abeat = pres. subj.: jussive; passas est = perf. indic. rel. cl. of fact; (11) ōcerat = plupf. ind.: rel. cl. of fact; (12) duci = dat.: reference; potest = pres. ind.: main verb in a direct question; (13) possit = pres. subj.: characteristic; (14) erit = fut. indic.: simple fut. condit.; mihi = dat.: ref.; (15) consuli = dat.: spec. vbs;
Key to Exercises 433

(16) amicēs = dat.: dat. w. adj.s.; (17) salūtī = dat.: compound vb.; antēpāneret =
impl. subj.: characteristic; (18) velēāmus = impl. subj.: ind. quest.; (19) mihi =
dat.: ref.; possīt = pres. subj.: characteristic; (20) rogātum = acc. supine: pur-
pose; (22) cēperant = plupf. ind.: rel. cl. of fact; dīctū = abl. supine: respect;
(23) vāris = dat.: ref.; (24) animō = dat.: spec. vbs.; possīt = pres. subj.: charac-
teristic.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 39

(2) See p. 276.
(3) See p. 276-77.
(4) In its four cases it is used as a noun is used. See p. 277.
(5) The infinitive; see p. 277.
(2) The gerundive is an adjective.
(3) As an adjective it modifies a noun or pronoun and agrees with that noun or
pronoun in gender, number, and case.
(4) The gerundive (e.g., laudandus, -a, -um) is declined as magnum, -a, -um is. See
p. 276.
(5) Since the gerund has only the endings -i, -ērī, -um, -ērum, any feminine or any
plural ending on an -ad- base is bound to indicate a gerundive; and also, if an
-ad-form agrees with a noun as an adjectival modifier, it must be a gerundive.
3. (1) The Latin gerund is normally translated by the English gerund in -ing with
any attending noun constructions or adverbial modifiers.
(2) The gerundive is to be translated by the English as if it were a gerund with
an object and any adverbial modifiers. In other words, both the gerund and the
gerundive are to be translated in the same way. See p. 277-78.
(3) (A) We learn by reading with care.
(B) We learn by reading books with care.
4. We learn by experiencing. 5. They came to learn (for learning). 6. He gave
(devoted) himself to learning. 7. They came to your school to learn (for the
sake of learning). 8. The boy went to the school desirous of learning (eager to
learn). 9. The fear of dying kept terrifying him. 10. The hope of living after death
encourages many people. 11. By thinking (= by using his head) he overcame
them.
12. He devoted (gave) himself—(1) to seeking glory. (2) to waging war. (3) to mak-
ing money. (4) to getting peace. (5) to destroying states. (6) to following this
leader. (7) to saving his country. (8) to seeking peace. (9) to attacking wrongs.
(10) to writing books. (11) to reading books. (12) to learning philosophy. (13) to
learning Latin literature. (14) to understanding the truth. (15) to seeking wis-
dom. (16) to helping human beings.
13. He came to Rome—(1) to undertake this work. (2) to see the Roman games.
(3) to see the old buildings. (4) to seek peace. (5) for the sake of undertaking this
work (to undertake . . . ). (6) for the sake of learning philosophy (to learn . . .).
(7) for the sake of reading new books (to read . . . ). (8) to see the games.
14. He wrote a book—(1) about enduring pain. (2) about overcoming fear. (3) about
living a good life. (4) about managing the state. (5) about waging war. (6) about defending liberty. (7) about conquering the enemy. (8) about giving gifts.

15. We become wiser—(1) by reading Latin literature. (2) by learning philosophy. (3) by experiencing life. (4) by conquering fear. (5) by following truth.

16. We help our very selves—(1) by always reading good books. (2) by freeing unfortunate men from fear; (3) by offering aid; (4) by helping others.

17. He consumed much time—(1) in thinking (speaking, running). (2) in doing these tasks. (3) in finding the way. (4) in preparing an army. (5) in preparing supplies (troops).

18. He had time for writing this book only.

KEY FOR CHAPTER 40

2. Positive fear clauses are introduced by ne; negative clauses by ut.
3. The noun must itself be modified by an adjective.
4. I greatly fear that the general may not send us enough help. 5. She was a woman of the greatest courage and loyalty and in fact very like her mother. 6. Do not fear that all the men and women of great courage will depart from Rome. 7. This is, indeed, easy to say but difficult to do! 8. They came home to please their parents. 9. You do wish to hear something good, don't you? 10. Do you wish to have much wisdom? Study Latin! 11. He ordered the three soldiers to go to Rome to seek peace. 12. You do not hesitate to say this, do you, my friend? 13. You urge me to be of great courage and to have hope of safety, but I fear that I may be too weak. 14. For my part I place wealth ahead of wisdom. For I do not think that human beings can find a happy life without a great deal of money. 15. However, very many rich men experience much fear. 16. Poor men are often happier and have less fear. 17. Money itself is not bad; but the things of the mind and the soul offer more help for living happily. 18. Nine of the leaders urged us to supply more aid. 19. When five of the guards had been killed, my father fled into that free land with two of his sons and with a large number of friends. 20. Never will he have enough leisure; yet some leisure is better than nothing. 21. In our times we all have too much of fear and too little of hope. 22. Great faith and courage must be found by all men.
APPENDIX

SOME ETYMOLOGICAL AIDS
Two Rules of Phonetic Change
Prefixes
Suffixes
SUPPLEMENTARY SYNTAX
SUMMARY OF FORMS

SOME ETYMOLOGICAL AIDS

TWO RULES OF PHONETIC CHANGE

"Phonetic" derives from Greek phônê, sound, voice, speech (cp. phonograph, phonology, symphony, telephone). Consequently, phonetic change means a change which occurs in original speech sounds for one reason or another. Of the many instances of this in Latin, the following two rules of phonetic change are probably the most important ones for the beginner.

A. Vowel weakening usually occurs in the medial syllables of compounds according to the following outline.

1. ã > ï before a single consonant and before ng.
   ã > ê before two consonants.
cāpiō, cāptum: ac-cāpiō, ac-cāptum
fāciō, fāctum: per-fāciō, per-fāctum
fācilis: dif-fācilis
cādeo, cāsum: oc-cādeo, oc-cāsum (Note that long ā does not change.)
tāngō, tāctum: con-tāngō, con-tāctum
2. ē > ĩ before a single consonant.
   tōneō: con-tōneō (but contentum)
   prēmō: con-prēmō (but compressum)
3. ae > i.
   quaeō, quaesitum: re-quēō, re-quēsitum
   laedo, laesum: col-lāedo, col-lāesum
caedō, caesum: in-caedō, in-caesum; oc-caedō, oc-caesum
   aestimō: ex-iestimō
4. au > a.
   claudō: in-claudō, ex-claudō
   causor: ex-causō

B. Assimilation of the final consonant of a prefix to the initial consonant of the base word commonly occurs.
   ad-capiō > ac-capiō
   in-mor-tālis > im-mor-tālis
   dis-fācilis > dif-fācilis
   in-reō > ir-reō

PREFIXES

Listed here are important prefixes helpful in the analysis of both Latin words and English derivatives. The Latin prefixes have passed over into English unchanged except where indicated. Incidentally, most Latin prefixes were also used by the Romans as prepositions; but the few labeled “inseparable” appear only as prefixes.

ā-, ab-, away, from.
   ā-vocō, call away (avocation)
   ā-vertō, turn away (avert)
   ā-mittō, send away, let go, lose
   ab-sum, be away (absent)
   ab-cēō, go away
   ab-dācō, lead away (abduct)

ad- (by assimilation ac-, af-, ag-, al-, an-, ap-, ar-, as-, at-), to, towards, in addition.
   ad-vocō, call to, call (advocate)
   ad-dācō, lead to (adduce)
   ad-mittō, send to, admit
   ac-cēdō, go to, approach (accede)
   ac-capiō (ad-capiō), get, accept
   ap-pōnēō, put to (apposition)
   as-sentiō, feel towards, agree to, assent

ante-, before.
   ante-pōnēō, put before, prefer
   ante-cēdō, go before, precede: excel (antecedent)
circum-, around.
  circum-diō, lead around
  circum-venīō, come around, surround (circumvent)
  circum-stō, stand around (circumstance)
com- (com = cum; also appears as con-, cor-, cul-, co-), with, together; intensive force: completely, very, greatly, deeply, forcibly.
  con-vocō, call together (convoke)
  con-duēō, lead together (conduct)
  com-pōnō, put together, compose (component)
  com-mittō, send together; bring together, entrust (commit)
  cōn-sentīō, feel together, agree (consent)
  cō-gō (co-agō), drive together, force (cogent)
  com-plēō, fill completely; fill up (complete)
  cōn-servō, save completely, preserve (conserve)
  con-cēō, go completely, go away; yield, grant (concede)
  con-tendō, stretch greatly, strive, hurry (contend)
  cal-laudā, praise greatly or highly
  cor-rōborō, strengthen greatly (corroborate)
contra-, against, opposite. (Not common as a prefix in Latin but fairly common in English, especially in the form counter.)
  contrā-dicō, speak against or opposite, oppose, rely (contradict)
  contrā-venīō (late Latin), come against, oppose (contravene)
de-, down, away, aside, out, off; intensive force: utterly, completely.
  dē-diō, lead down or away, drawn down (deduce, deduct)
  dē-pōnō, put aside, lay aside, entrust (deponent, deposit)
  dē-mittō, send down, throw down, let fall (demit)
  dē-venīō, come from, arrive at, reach
  dē-vocō, call away or off
  dē-cēō, go away (decede)
  dē-mēns, out of one's mind, demented
  dē-certā, fight it out, fight to the finish
dis- (dif-, di-; inseparable), apart, away, not.
  dis-pōnō, put apart in different places; arrange (disposition)
  dis-cēō, go away, depart
  di-mittō, send away in different directions, let go (dismiss)
  dif-ferō, dif-ferātus, bear apart, scatter, put off, differ (different, dilate)
  dis-similis, not similar, unlike, dissimilar
  dif-ficilis, not easy, difficult
e-, ex- (ef-), from out, forth; intensive force: exceedingly, up.
  e-diō, lead out (educe)
  ex-cēō, go out, from, away; go beyond (exceed)
  e-mittō, send out, forth (emit)
  e-vocō, call out, forth (evoke)
  ex-pōnō, put out, set forth, explain (exponent, exposition)
  e-venīō, come out, forth; turn out, happen (event)
efficio, (ex-facii), produce, accomplish, perform (efficient, effect)
ex-pleo, fill up, complete
ex-aspero, roughen exceedingly, irritate (exasperate)
in- (im-, il-, ir-; sometimes on- or en- in Eng.), in, into, on, upon, against. (Also see in- below.)
in-vocii, call in, call upon (invoke)
in-ducii, lead in or into, introduce, impel (induce)
im-mittii, send into, send against, let loose against
im-pensii, put in, lay upon (impose)
in-venii, come upon, find (invent)
in-clodi, shut in, shut (include, enclose)
in-vidii, go into, move against (invade)
ir-ruii, rush into or upon
il-lo (in-laedii), strike or dash against
in-geniiuu (in + gen- from gignii, beget, give birth to), inborn nature, natural capacity, talent, character (engine, ingenious)
in- (im-, il-, ir-; inseparable prefix; cognate with Eng. un-), not, un-
in-certius, not certain, uncertain
in-fastiis, not just, unjust (cp. injustice)
in-finitii, not limited, unlimited (infinite)
in-firmii, not firm, weak (infirm)
in-mortaiis, not mortal, deathless (immortal)
il-litteraiis, unlearned, ignorant (illiterate)
in-revocabiliiis, not-call-back-able, unalterable (irrevocable)
inter-, between, among:
inter-veniiii, come between; interrupt (intervene)
inter-cedii, go between (intercede)
inter-mittii, place between, leave off (interrmitten)
inter-pensii, put between, bring forward (interpose)
inter-regiiiiii, period between two reigns (interregnum)
intriiiiii, within, in. (Also used as adv.)
intri-daci, lead in (introduce)
intri-mittii, send in
intri-spiciiii, look within (introspect)
ob- (oe-, of-, op-), towards to, opposite, against, over:
ob-daci, lead toward or against
ob-veniiii, come opposite, meet
oc-curriii, run to meet, meet (occur)
offeriiii, bear towards, furnish (offer)
op-pensii, put opposite, set against, oppose (opposition)
per- (pel-), through; intensive force: thoroughly, very, completely.
per-daci, lead through or along
per-veniiii, come through to, arrive at, reach
per-ferii, carry through, bear thoroughly, endure
per-mittii, let go through, entrust, allow (permit)
per-facio (-facio), do thoroughly, accomplish, finish (perfect)
per-facils, very easy
per-paucus, very small
pellicidus, shining through, transparent

post-, after.
  post-pnō, put after, esteem less, disregard (postpone)
  post-ferō, put after, esteem less, disregard (postpone)
  post-scribō, write after, add (postscript)

prae-, before, in front, forth; intensive force: very. (In Eng. also spelled pre-)
  prae-fero, bear before, set before, prepare

prae-, before, in front, forth; intensive force: very. (In Eng. also spelled pre-)
  prae-fero, bear before, set before, prepare

pro-, before, in front, forth, out, away, instead of, for. (Sometimes pu- in Eng.)
  pro-vocō, call forth or out, challenge, excite (provoke)
  pro-vidēō, see ahead, foresee, care for (provide, provision, purvey)
  pro-dēō, lead before or out, bring forth, prolong (produce)
  pro-cēō, go forward, advance (proceed)
  pro-pnō, put in front, set forth, declare (proponent, purpose)
  pro-mittō, send forth, assure (promise)
  prō-cōnsul, one who served in place of a consul (proconsul)

re- (red-; inseparable), back again.
  re-vocō, call back, recall (revoke)
  re-dēō, lead back (reduce)
  re-pnō, put back, replace, restore (repository)
  re-mittō, send back, give up (remit)
  red-dō, give back, restore, return
  red-eō, go back, return

se- (inseparable), apart, aside, without.
  se-dō, lead aside, separate (seduce)
  se-cēō, go apart, withdraw, retire (secede)
  se-pnō, put aside, select
  se-movēō, move aside, separate
  se-cūrō, without care, untroubled, serene (secure)

sub- (suc-, suf-, sag-, sup-, sur-, sus-), under, up (from beneath); rather, somewhat, a little, severely.
  sub-dō, draw from under, withdraw secretly
  suc-cēō, go under, go up, approach, prosper (succeed)
  sup-pnō, put under; substitute (supposition, supposititious)
  sub-venīō, come under; help (subvene, subvention)
  sus-tinēō (-teneō), hold up, support, endure (sustain)
super- (also sur- in Eng.), over; above.

super-pōnō, place over or upon, set over (superposition)
super-sedēō, sit above or upon, be superior to, be above, refrain from, desist (supercede)
super-sum, be over and above, be left, survive
superāō, be above, surpass, conquer (insuperable)
superbus, above others, haughty, proud (superb)
super-vīvō, survive
super-fícēs, surface

trans- (trā-), across, over.

trans-mittō, send across, cross over (transmit)
trans-dūcō, lead across (transduce)
trans-eō, go across (transition)
trans-dō, give over, surrender, hand down (tradition)

SUFFIXES

Of the very numerous Latin suffixes only a few of the more important ones are listed here with their English equivalents.

1. Suffix denoting the agent, the doer, the one who (-tor or -sor, m.; -trix, f.).

-tor or -sor (cp. Eng. -er)

victor (vincō, victum, conquer), conqueror, victor
scīptor (scribō, scriptum, write), writer
lēctor, lētrix (legō, lectum, read), reader
ōrātor (ōrō, orātum, [speak], plead), speaker, orator
reptor, reptrīx (reperiō, repertum, discover), discoverer
auctor (augō, auctum, increase), increaser, author
liberator (liberō, liberatum, free), liberator
tōnsor (tondō, tonsum, shave, clip), barber
amātor (amō, amatum, love), lover

These nouns have the same base as that of the perfect participle.

2. Suffixes denoting action or result of action (-or, -ium, -tis).

-or (Eng. -or)
amor (amō, love), love, amour
timor (timeō, fear), fear
dolor (doleō, suffer pain), pain, suffering, grief
error (errō, go astray, err), error
terror (terreō, frighten, terrify), fright, terror

-ium (Eng. -y; -ce when -ium is preceded by c or t)
studium (studeō, be eager), eagerness, study
colloquium (colloquor, talk with), talk, conference, colloquy
imperium (imperō, command), command, power
odium (ōdī, hate), hate
aedificium (aedificō, build) building, edifice
silentium (silēas, silentis, silent), silence
-tō, -tōnis, or -siō, -siōnis (Eng. -tion or -sion)

admonitō (admonēō, admonītum, admonish) admonition
ratō (reō, ratum, reckō, sītītik) reckoning, plan, reason (ration)
ōrītō (ōrē, ōrētum, [speak], plead), oration
nātītō (nāscor, nātum, be born), birth, nation
ōccāsitō (ōccīdīō, ōccāsum, fall down) a befalling, occasion, opportunity

3. Suffixes denoting quality, state, or condition (-ia, -tia, -tis, -tūdō).

-ia (Eng. -y)

misēria (miser, miserable), misery
insānia (insānus, insane), insanity
victōria (victor, victor), victory
invīdia (invīdus, envious), envy
inīuria (inīrus, wrong, unjust), injustice, injury

-tia (Eng. -ce)

amīcitia (amīcus, friendly), friendship
sapiēntia (sapiēns, wise), wisdom, sapience
scientia (scīens, knowing), knowledge, science
iūsītia (iūstus, just), justice
diligentia (diligēns, diligent), diligence

-tis, -tūdis (Eng. -ty)

libertās (liber, free), freedom, liberty
vēritās (vērus, true), truth, verity
paupertās (pauper, poor), poverty
cupiditās (cupīdus, desirous, greedy), greed, cupidity
gravitās (gravīs, heavy, grave), weight, seriousness, gravity
celeritās (celer, swift), swiftness, celerity

-tūdō, -tūdānis (Eng. -tude)

multitūdō (multus, much, many), multitude
magnitūdō (magnus, large, great), magnitude
pulchritūdō (pulcher, beautiful), beauty, pulchritude
sōlitudē (sōlus, alone), solitude
sollicitūdō (sollicitus, agitated, solicitōus), solicitude

4. Adjectival suffix meaning full of (-āsūs).

-āsūs, -āsa, -āsum (Eng. -ous or -ose)

studīōsūs (studīum, zeal), full of zeal, eager (studious)
impēriōsūs (impērium, command), full of command, imperious
periculōsūs (periculum, danger), full of danger, dangerous
vītōsūs (vītium, fault, vice), faulty, vitious
verbōsūs (verbūm, word), wordy, verbose

5. Adjectival suffix meaning able to be, worthy to be; sometimes able to (-bilis).

-bilis, -bile (Eng. -able, -ible, -ble)

laudābilis (laudō, praise), worthy to be praised, laudable
amābilis (amō, love), worthy to be loved, lovable, amiable
incredibilis (crēō, believe), not worthy to be believed, incredible
mōbilis (moveō, move), able to be moved, movable, mobile
inexpugnābilis (expugnō, conquer), unconquerable
stabilis (stō, stand), able to stand, stable

6. Adjectival suffixes denoting pertaining to (-ālis or -āris, -ānus, -icus).
-ālis, -āle, or -āris, -āre (Eng. -al or -ar)
    mortālis (mors, death), pertaining to death, mortal
    vitālis (vita, life), pertaining to life, vital
    fātālis (fātum, fate), fatal
    populāris (populus, people), popular
    vulgāris (vulgus, the common people), common, vulgar
-ānus, -āna, -ānum (Eng. -an or -ane)
    Rōmānus (Rōma, Rome), pertaining to Rome, Roman
    hūmānus (hōmē, man), pertaining to man, human, humane
    urbānus (urbs, city), urban, urbane
    mundānus (mundus, world), worldly, mundane
-icus, -īca, -īcum (Eng. -ic)
    domesticus (domus, house), pertaining to the house, domestic
    publicus (populus, people), pertaining to the people, public
    rusticus (rūs, country), rustic
    cīvics (cīvis, citizen), civic
    classicus (clāsis, class), pertaining to the classes, of the highest class; classic

SUPPLEMENTARY SYNTAX

The following constructions are listed for the benefit of students who plan to continue their study of Latin beyond the introductory year. A number of these constructions have already been encountered here and there in the 40 formal chapters of this book. However, although often these can be easily translated without benefit of syntactical labels, it seems wise to catalog them here along with the more difficult items.

GENITIVE OF MATERIAL

The genitive may indicate the material of which a thing is made.

pōculum auri, a goblet of gold
Numerus hostium crescit, the number of the enemy is increasing.
Mōns aquae secūtus est et tempestās tres nāvēs eōnixit aggere harēnae, a mountain of water followed and the storm surrounded three ships with a mound of sand.

OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

The objective genitive depends on a noun of verbal meaning and is used as the object of the verbal idea. It is sometimes translated by for.
amor laudis, love of praise (= amat laudem, he loves praise.)
cupiditatis pecuniae, greed for money (= cupit pecuniam, he longs for money.)
matus mortis, fear of death (= metuit mortiam, he fears death.)
spes salutis, hope for safety (= sperat salutem, he hopes for safety.)
Femina erat dux facti, a woman was the leader of the enterprise (= duxit factum.)
laudator temporis facti, a praiser of the past (= laudat tempus factum.)

**DATIVE OF PURPOSE**
The dative may express the purpose for which a person or thing serves. A dative of reference (Ch. 38) often appears in conjunction with the dative of purpose, and this combination is called the “double dative” construction.

Petitiō mea tibi (dat. of ref.) summae cœiae (dat. of purp.) est, my candidacy is (for) the greatest concern to you.

Ea res mihi (ref.) summae voluptātī (purp.) erat, that matter was for the greatest pleasure to me = gave me the greatest pleasure.

III miōr (ref.) auxilīō (purp.) vēnērunt, they came as an aid to us.

Hōs librēs dōnō (purp.) mītī, he sent these books as a gift.

Hoc mē nōvēt et mihi (ref.) melī (purp.) est, this gratifies me and is (as) honey to me.

Optant locum tēctō (purp.), they desire a place for a roof (building).

**DATIVE OF POSSESSION**
The dative can be used with sum to express the idea of possession.

Liber est mihi, a book is to me = I have a book.

(Contrast: liber est meus, the book is mine.)

III major turba clientium est, that man has a greater throng of retainers.

Sunt tibi animus et mōrēs, you have a soul and character.

Hae cēs semper crunt, they will always have these things.

Prudentia est III paellae, that girl has prudence.

Ō virgō, non tibi est vultus mortālis, O maiden, you do not have the face of a mortal.

Si unquam mihi filius erit . . . , if I ever have a son . . .

**ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION**
The ablative may be used to tell in what specific respect a verb or an adjective holds true.

III omnis linguae, institūtis, légibus inter sē differunt, these all differ from one another in language, customs, and laws.

III virtūte omnibus (dat.) praestābant, those men used to excel all in courage.

Id genus erat intractābilis bello, that race was unmanageable in war.

Quis est praestātor aut nōbilitātēs aut probitātēs aut studiō optimārum artium?

Who is more outstanding in nobility or integrity or the pursuit of the finest arts?

Ager bene cultus est über usū et ornātus speciē, a field well cultivated is rich in usefulness and beautiful in appearance.
Asia omnibus terris (dat.) antecellit übertäte agrorum et varietäte fructuum et multitudine aërim quae exportantur; Asia excels all lands in richness of fields and variety of fruits and large number of those things which are exported.

**ABLATIVE OF CAUSE**

The ablative can be used to indicate a cause or reason.

- Miser timore delirat, *the wretched man is insane with fear.*
- Corpora eorum multà debilia sunt, *their bodies are weak from fear.*
- Aper dentibus timetur, *the boar is feared because of his teeth.*
- Nihil ardum mortuibus est; caelum ipsum stultitië petimus, *nothing is (too) arduous for mortals; we seek the sky itself in our folly.*
- Odio tyrannus in exsilium fuit, *because of his hatred of the tyrant he fled into exile.*
- Boni amore virtutis peccare odœrunt, *good men because of their love of virtue hate to sin.*

**ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE**

With comparatives and adverbs suggesting comparison the ablative can be used to indicate the degree of difference in the comparison.

- Tantō melius, *the better by so much = so much the better.*
- Senex non facit ea quae iuvenis, at multō maiōra et meliōra facit, *an old man does not do the things which a young man does, but he does much greater and better things (greater by much).*
- Multō acris iam vigilabo, *I shall now watch much more keenly.*
- Romam pares post dierbus venistis, *you came to Rome a few days afterwards (afterwards by a few days).*
- Aberat ab ea urbe tribus milibus passuum, *he was three miles from that city (was away by three miles).*
- Bonae Athenae plus artis adierunt, *good Athens added a little more skill (more by a little).*

**SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE**

In indirect discourse, subordinate clauses regularly have verbs in the subjunctive mood, even though they had the indicative in the direct form.

- Lègit libros quos miseris, *he read the books which you had sent.*
- Dixit se legisse libros quos misisses, *he said that he had read the books which you had sent.*
- Et malit quis in urbe maneat infirmitate sine duce, *those evil men who remain in the city will be weak without their leader.*
- Putō eos malos qui in urbe manent infirmos futuros esse sine duce, *I think that those evil men who remain in the city will be weak without their leader.*
- Si id crédet, errabit. *If he believes this, he will be wrong.*
- Dicò si id crédat eum erratūrum esse. *I say that if he believes this he will be wrong.*
OBJECTIVE INFINITIVE

The complementary infinitive has no subject accusative (see Ch. 6). However, when an infinitive with subject accusative is used as the object of a verb, it is called an objective infinitive.

Volunt venire, *they wish to come* (compl. inf.)
Iussit eōs venire, *he ordered them to come* (obj. inf.)
Non possum loqui, *I cannot speak* (compl. inf.)
Non patitur me loqui, *he does not permit me to speak* (obj. inf.)
Non audeī ire, *he does not dare to go* (compl. inf.)
Coēgérunt eum ire, *they forced him to go* (obj. inf.)
**SUMMARY OF FORMS**

### NOUNS—DECLENSIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First</th>
<th>Second</th>
<th>Third</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>porta, -ae</td>
<td>amicus, -i</td>
<td>puer, -i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L., gate</td>
<td>m., friend</td>
<td>m., boy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m., boy</td>
<td>m., field</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n., gift</td>
<td>m., king</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n., body</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sg.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>port-a</td>
<td>amic-us</td>
<td>puer-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. port-ae</td>
<td>amic-1</td>
<td>agr-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. port-ae</td>
<td>amic-o</td>
<td>don-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. port-am</td>
<td>amic-um</td>
<td>don-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. port-ia</td>
<td>amic-o</td>
<td>reg-e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pl.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>port-ae</td>
<td>amic-1</td>
<td>puer-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. port-umbrum</td>
<td>amic-umbrum</td>
<td>agr-umbrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. port-is</td>
<td>amic-is</td>
<td>don-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. port-is</td>
<td>amic-0s</td>
<td>don-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. port-is</td>
<td>amic-is</td>
<td>reg-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pl. (1-Stems)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>civ-is</td>
<td>urb-s</td>
<td>mar-e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m., citizen</td>
<td>L., city</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n., sea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m., fruit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n., horn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m., day</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sg.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>civ-is</td>
<td>urb-s</td>
<td>mar-e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. civ-is</td>
<td>urb-is</td>
<td>mar-0s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. civ-i</td>
<td>urb-i</td>
<td>don-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. civ-em</td>
<td>urb-em</td>
<td>don-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. civ-em</td>
<td>urb-e</td>
<td>don-a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pl.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>civ-0s</td>
<td>urb-0s</td>
<td>mar-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. civ-ium</td>
<td>urb-ium</td>
<td>mar-ium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. civ-iBUS</td>
<td>urb-iBUS</td>
<td>mar-iBUS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. civ-0s</td>
<td>urb-0s</td>
<td>mar-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. civ-iBUS</td>
<td>urb-iBUS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fourth**

| cornu, -us |
| corn-0s |
| corn-um |
| corn-ibus |
| corn-0s |

**Fifth**

| dies, -ei |
| dies |
| dies |
| dies |
| dies |

Vis is irregular: Sg., N., vis, G. (vis), D. (vi), A. vI; Pl., N. virès, G. viriam, D. viribus, A. virès, Ab. viribus.

---

1 The vocative singular of nouns like amicus and of masculine adjectives like magnus ends in -e. The vocative singular of filius and of names in -ius ends in a single -i (Filii, Vergii); the vocative singular of the masculine adjective meus is mi; the vocative singular of masculine adjectives in -us ends in -i (Egregius; Egregie). Otherwise, the vocative has the same form as the nominative in all declensions.
### ADJECTIVES—DECLENSIONS

#### First and Second Declensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F. Singular</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F. Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. magnus</td>
<td>magna</td>
<td>magnum</td>
<td>liber</td>
<td>libera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. magnus</td>
<td>magnae</td>
<td>magni</td>
<td>liberi</td>
<td>liberae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. magnus</td>
<td>magnac</td>
<td>magnō</td>
<td>libertō</td>
<td>librēna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. magnum</td>
<td>magnam</td>
<td>magnum</td>
<td>liberum</td>
<td>libērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. magnō</td>
<td>magnā</td>
<td>magnō</td>
<td>libera</td>
<td>libēra</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. magni</td>
<td>magna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. magnōrum</td>
<td>magnārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. magnis</td>
<td>magnis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. magnōs</td>
<td>magnōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. magnis</td>
<td>magnis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Third Declension

**Two endings**

*fortis, forte*

*brave*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. fortis</td>
<td>forte</td>
<td>ācer</td>
<td>ācris</td>
<td>ācre</td>
<td>potēns</td>
<td>potēns</td>
<td>fortior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. fortis</td>
<td>ācris</td>
<td>potentiis</td>
<td>potentii</td>
<td>potentiem</td>
<td>potēns</td>
<td>fortioris</td>
<td>fortiori</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. fortī</td>
<td>ācri</td>
<td>potenti</td>
<td>potentii</td>
<td>potent trium</td>
<td>fortior</td>
<td>fortōrem</td>
<td>fortius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. fortem</td>
<td>fortē</td>
<td>ācrem</td>
<td>ācrem</td>
<td>potentiem</td>
<td>potēns</td>
<td>fortior</td>
<td>fortōre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. fortī</td>
<td>fortī</td>
<td>āctī</td>
<td>ācri</td>
<td>potenti</td>
<td>potent i</td>
<td>fortōris</td>
<td>fortōri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Three endings**

*acer, ācris, ācre*

*keen, severe*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. fortēs</td>
<td>fortia</td>
<td>ācrēs</td>
<td>ācria</td>
<td>potentiēs</td>
<td>potentiā</td>
<td>fortōrēs</td>
<td>fortōria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. fortium</td>
<td>ācrium</td>
<td>potentiōnum</td>
<td>potentībus</td>
<td>fortōriōnum</td>
<td>fortōriōbus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. fortibus</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
<td>potentiōbus</td>
<td>fortōriōbus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. fortiēs</td>
<td>fortia</td>
<td>ācriēs</td>
<td>ācria</td>
<td>potentiēs</td>
<td>potentiā</td>
<td>fortōrēs</td>
<td>fortōria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. fortibus</td>
<td>fortibus</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
<td>potentiōbus</td>
<td>fortōriōbus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Comparatives**

*fortior, fortius*

*braver*

**One Ending**

*potēns*

*powerful*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. fortēs</td>
<td>fortia</td>
<td>potentiēs</td>
<td>potentiā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. fortium</td>
<td>ācrium</td>
<td>potentiōnum</td>
<td>potentiōbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. fortibus</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
<td>potentiōbus</td>
<td>fortōriōbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. fortiēs</td>
<td>fortia</td>
<td>potentiēs</td>
<td>potentiā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. fortibus</td>
<td>fortibus</td>
<td>potentiōbus</td>
<td>fortōriōbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes

2 The plural follows the pattern of the singular except that it has the plural endings.

3 Present participles follow the declension of potēns except that they have -e in the ablative singular when used as genuine participles.

4 For -is (acc. pl.) see Ch. 16.

5 For irregular plurs see Ch. 27.
**PRONOUNS**

**Demonstrative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hic</td>
<td>haec</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>ille</td>
<td>illa</td>
<td>illud</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>illus</td>
<td>illus</td>
<td>illus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hic</td>
<td>hic</td>
<td>hic</td>
<td>illi</td>
<td>illi</td>
<td>illi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hanc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>illum</td>
<td>illam</td>
<td>illud</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>hæc</td>
<td>hæc</td>
<td>ille</td>
<td>illa</td>
<td>illa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Relative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>Interrogative*</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>Intensive</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>qui</td>
<td>qui</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quod</td>
<td>quis</td>
<td>quid</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>cuii</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>cuii</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsus</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td>ipsus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>cu</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quod</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsam</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qui</td>
<td>qui</td>
<td>quod</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsam</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The interrogative adjective qui? qua? quod? meaning what? which? what kind of? has the same declension as that of the relative pronoun.*
### PRONOUNS

#### Demonstrative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sg.</strong></td>
<td>is</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>id</td>
<td>idem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
<td>idem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>eius</td>
<td>eius</td>
<td>eius</td>
<td>eiusdem</td>
<td>eiusdem</td>
<td>eiusdem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>ei</td>
<td>ei</td>
<td>id</td>
<td>eidem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
<td>idem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>id</td>
<td>eundem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
<td>idem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>eō</td>
<td>eō</td>
<td>eō</td>
<td>eōdem</td>
<td>eōdem</td>
<td>eōdem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pl.</strong></td>
<td>el, ē</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>id</td>
<td>idem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>eōrum</td>
<td>eōrum</td>
<td>eōrum</td>
<td>eōrundem</td>
<td>eōrundem</td>
<td>eōrundem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>eis, ēs</td>
<td>eis, ēs</td>
<td>eis, ēs</td>
<td>eisdem</td>
<td>eisdem</td>
<td>eisdem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>eōs</td>
<td>eōs</td>
<td>eōs</td>
<td>eōsden</td>
<td>eōsden</td>
<td>eōsden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>eōs</td>
<td>eōs</td>
<td>eōs</td>
<td>eōsden</td>
<td>eōsden</td>
<td>eōsden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Irregular Adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th></th>
<th>Personal</th>
<th>Reflexive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sg.</strong></td>
<td>sōlus</td>
<td>sola</td>
<td>sōlum</td>
<td>ego</td>
<td>sui, himself; suī, herslef, itself</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>sōlīus</td>
<td>sōlīa</td>
<td>sōlīum</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>suī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>sōlī</td>
<td>sōlī</td>
<td>sōlī</td>
<td>mihi</td>
<td>sībi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>sōlum</td>
<td>sōlum</td>
<td>sōlum</td>
<td>mē</td>
<td>sī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>sōlō</td>
<td>sōlō</td>
<td>sōlō</td>
<td>mē</td>
<td>sī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pl.</strong></td>
<td>sōlīae</td>
<td>sōlīae</td>
<td>sōlīae</td>
<td>nōs</td>
<td>sīae</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>sōlīorum</td>
<td>sōlīorum</td>
<td>sōlīorum</td>
<td>nostrum</td>
<td>nostrum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>sōlīs</td>
<td>sōlīs</td>
<td>sōlīs</td>
<td>nōbīs</td>
<td>vōbīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>sōlīs</td>
<td>sōlīs</td>
<td>sōlīs</td>
<td>nōs</td>
<td>vōs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>sōlīs</td>
<td>sōlīs</td>
<td>sōlīs</td>
<td>nōbīs</td>
<td>vōbīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

7 Also idem.

8 Similarly unus, tōtus, illus, nūllus, alīus, alter, uter, neuter (see Ch. 9).

9 All forms of the pronouns of the first and second persons except the nom. sg. and the nom. pl. may also be used as reflexive pronouns.

10 These forms are reflexive only. The nonreflexive forms of the third person are supplied by is, ea, id (see Chs. 11, 13).

11 The form sēsē is also frequently found.
### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Regular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>longus, -a, -um (long)</td>
<td>longior, -ius</td>
<td>longissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortis, -e (brave)</td>
<td>fortior, -ius</td>
<td>fortissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>felix, gen. felicis, (happy)</td>
<td>felicius, -ius</td>
<td>felicissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sapiens, gen. sapientis (wise)</td>
<td>sapientior, -ius</td>
<td>sapientissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facilis, -e (easy)</td>
<td>facilius, -ius</td>
<td>facillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liber, -era, -erum (free)</td>
<td>liberius, -ius</td>
<td>liberius, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulcher, -chra, -chrum (beautiful)</td>
<td>pulchrior, -ius</td>
<td>pulcherrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acer, acris, acer (keen)</td>
<td>acrior, -ius</td>
<td>acerrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Irregular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bonus, -a, -um (good)</td>
<td>melior, -ius</td>
<td>optimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magus, -a, -um (large)</td>
<td>maior, -ius</td>
<td>maximus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malus, -a, -um (bad)</td>
<td>peior, -ius</td>
<td>pessimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus, -a, -um (much)</td>
<td>plus, -ius</td>
<td>plurimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus, -a, -um (small)</td>
<td>minor, minus</td>
<td>minime, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(prae, præ)</td>
<td>prior, -ius (former)</td>
<td>primus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superus, -a, -um (that above)</td>
<td>superior, -ius</td>
<td>summus (supremus), -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Regular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>longē (far)</td>
<td>longius</td>
<td>longissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortiter (bravely)</td>
<td>fortius</td>
<td>fortissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feliciter (happily)</td>
<td>felicitus</td>
<td>felicissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sapienter (wisely)</td>
<td>sapientius</td>
<td>sapientissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facile (easily)</td>
<td>facilius</td>
<td>facillimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liberē (freely)</td>
<td>liberius</td>
<td>liberius, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulchre (beautifully)</td>
<td>pulchriorius</td>
<td>pulcherrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ácriter (keenly)</td>
<td>ácrius</td>
<td>ácerrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Irregular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bene (well)</td>
<td>melius</td>
<td>optimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnopere (greatly)</td>
<td>magis</td>
<td>maximē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>male (badly)</td>
<td>peius</td>
<td>pessimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multum (much)</td>
<td>plius</td>
<td>plurimum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parum (little)</td>
<td>minus</td>
<td>minime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(prae, præ)</td>
<td>prìus (before)</td>
<td>primus; prīmō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diū (a long time)</td>
<td>diūtius</td>
<td>diūtissimē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NUMERALS

For the declension of finus see Ch. 9 or sohls above.
For duo, tria, and mille see Ch. 15.
The forms from trecenti through nongenti are declined in the plural like ducenti, -ae, -a.
The ordinals are declined like primum, -a, -um.
The other forms are indeclinable.
### CONJUGATIONS 1-4

#### Principal Parts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st: laudō</th>
<th>laudāre</th>
<th>laudāvi</th>
<th>laudātum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2nd: monēō</td>
<td>monēre</td>
<td>monēui</td>
<td>monētum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd: agō</td>
<td>āgerre</td>
<td>āgeri</td>
<td>āgerum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4th: audīō</td>
<td>audīre</td>
<td>audīvi</td>
<td>audītum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd (-ō): capiō</td>
<td>capīre</td>
<td>capīpī</td>
<td>capītum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Indicative Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudō</td>
<td>monēō</td>
<td>agō</td>
<td>audiō</td>
<td>capiō</td>
<td>audiōverō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudās</td>
<td>monēs</td>
<td>agis</td>
<td>audis</td>
<td>capīs</td>
<td>cēperō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudat</td>
<td>monet</td>
<td>āgit</td>
<td>audit</td>
<td>capīt</td>
<td>cēperit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāmus</td>
<td>monēmus</td>
<td>agēmus</td>
<td>audiēmus</td>
<td>capiēmus</td>
<td>cēperimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudātis</td>
<td>monētis</td>
<td>agētis</td>
<td>audiētis</td>
<td>capiētis</td>
<td>cēperītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudant</td>
<td>monēnt</td>
<td>agēnt</td>
<td>audiēnt</td>
<td>capiēnt</td>
<td>cēperunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābām</td>
<td>monēbām</td>
<td>agēbām</td>
<td>audiēbām</td>
<td>capiēbaum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābās</td>
<td>monēbās</td>
<td>agēbās</td>
<td>audiēbās</td>
<td>capiēbas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābat</td>
<td>monēbat</td>
<td>agēbat</td>
<td>audiēbat</td>
<td>capiēbat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābāmus</td>
<td>monēbāmus</td>
<td>agēbāmus</td>
<td>audiēbāmus</td>
<td>capiēbāmus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābātis</td>
<td>monēbātis</td>
<td>agēbātis</td>
<td>audiēbātis</td>
<td>capiēbātis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābant</td>
<td>monēbant</td>
<td>agēbant</td>
<td>audiēbant</td>
<td>capiēbant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābām</td>
<td>monēbām</td>
<td>agēam</td>
<td>audiām</td>
<td>capiam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābās</td>
<td>monēbās</td>
<td>agēas</td>
<td>audiās</td>
<td>capīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābat</td>
<td>monēbat</td>
<td>agēt</td>
<td>audiēt</td>
<td>capīt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābāmus</td>
<td>monēbāmus</td>
<td>agēmus</td>
<td>audiēmus</td>
<td>capiēmus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābātis</td>
<td>monēbātis</td>
<td>agētis</td>
<td>audiētis</td>
<td>capiētis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābant</td>
<td>monēbant</td>
<td>agēnt</td>
<td>audiēnt</td>
<td>capiēnt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāvī</td>
<td>monūt</td>
<td>ēgiatan</td>
<td>audiēvi</td>
<td>capiēpī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāvisīt</td>
<td>monūsit</td>
<td>ēgisit</td>
<td>audiēvisīt</td>
<td>cēpisīt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāvit</td>
<td>monūt</td>
<td>ēgit</td>
<td>audiēvit</td>
<td>cēpīt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāvimus</td>
<td>monūmus</td>
<td>ēgimus</td>
<td>audiēvimus</td>
<td>cēpīmus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāviatis</td>
<td>monūtis</td>
<td>ēgisitis</td>
<td>audiēvisitis</td>
<td>cēpītis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāvērunt</td>
<td>monūrunt</td>
<td>ēgerunt</td>
<td>audiēverunt</td>
<td>cēpērunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāveram</td>
<td>monuēram</td>
<td>ēgeram</td>
<td>audiēveram</td>
<td>cēperam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverās</td>
<td>monuēras</td>
<td>ēgerās</td>
<td>audiēverās</td>
<td>cēperās</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverat</td>
<td>monuērat</td>
<td>ēgerat</td>
<td>audiēverat</td>
<td>cēperat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverāmus</td>
<td>monuērāmus</td>
<td>ēgerāmus</td>
<td>audiēverāmus</td>
<td>cēperāmus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverātis</td>
<td>monuērātis</td>
<td>ēgerātis</td>
<td>audiēverātis</td>
<td>cēperātis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverant</td>
<td>monuērant</td>
<td>ēgerant</td>
<td>audiēverant</td>
<td>cēperant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**452 Wheelock’s Latin**
### Subjunctive Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>laudem</th>
<th>moneam</th>
<th>agam</th>
<th>audiam</th>
<th>capiam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>laudès</td>
<td>moneās</td>
<td>aḡās</td>
<td>audīās</td>
<td>capīās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>laudēt</td>
<td>moneat</td>
<td>aḡat</td>
<td>audiat</td>
<td>capiat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudēmus</td>
<td>moneāmus</td>
<td>aḡāmus</td>
<td>audīāmus</td>
<td>capīāmus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudētīs</td>
<td>moneātīs</td>
<td>aḡātīs</td>
<td>audīātīs</td>
<td>capīātīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudēnt</td>
<td>moneant</td>
<td>aḡant</td>
<td>audiant</td>
<td>capiant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>laudērem</th>
<th>moneārem</th>
<th>aḡerēm</th>
<th>audīerēm</th>
<th>caperēm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudērés</td>
<td>moneārés</td>
<td>aḡerēs</td>
<td>audīērés</td>
<td>caperēs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudēret</td>
<td>moneāret</td>
<td>aḡeret</td>
<td>audīēret</td>
<td>caperet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudērēmus</td>
<td>moneārēmus</td>
<td>aḡerēmus</td>
<td>audīērēmus</td>
<td>caperēmus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudērētīs</td>
<td>moneārētīs</td>
<td>aḡerētīs</td>
<td>audīērētīs</td>
<td>caperētīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudērent</td>
<td>moneārent</td>
<td>aḡerent</td>
<td>audīērent</td>
<td>caperent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>laudēverem</th>
<th>moneāverem</th>
<th>eḡerēverem</th>
<th>audīēverem</th>
<th>cēperēverem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudēvēris</td>
<td>moneāvēris</td>
<td>eḡerēvēris</td>
<td>audīēvēris</td>
<td>cēperēvēris</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudēverēt</td>
<td>moneāverēt</td>
<td>eḡerēverēt</td>
<td>audīēverēt</td>
<td>cēperēverēt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudēverēmus</td>
<td>moneāverēmus</td>
<td>eḡerēverēmus</td>
<td>audīēverēmus</td>
<td>cēperēverēmus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudēverētīs</td>
<td>moneāverētīs</td>
<td>eḡerēverētīs</td>
<td>audīēverētīs</td>
<td>cēperēverētīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudēverēnt</td>
<td>moneāverēnt</td>
<td>eḡerēverēnt</td>
<td>audīēverēnt</td>
<td>cēperēverēnt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>laudāvissem</th>
<th>moneāvissem</th>
<th>eḡisēvissem</th>
<th>audīēvissem</th>
<th>cēpisēvissem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudāvissēs</td>
<td>moneāvissēs</td>
<td>eḡissēs</td>
<td>audīēvissēs</td>
<td>cēpisēs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāviscēt</td>
<td>moneāviscēt</td>
<td>eḡisscēt</td>
<td>audīēviscēt</td>
<td>cēpisēcēt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāviscēmus</td>
<td>moneāviscēmus</td>
<td>eḡisscēmus</td>
<td>audīēviscēmus</td>
<td>cēpisēscēmus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāviscētīs</td>
<td>moneāviscētīs</td>
<td>eḡisscētīs</td>
<td>audīēviscētīs</td>
<td>cēpisēcētīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāviscēnt</td>
<td>moneāviscēnt</td>
<td>eḡisscēnt</td>
<td>audīēviscēnt</td>
<td>cēpisēcēnt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Present Imperative Active

| laudā | monē | age | audē | capē |
| laudāte | monēte | agite | audite | capite |

### Indicative Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>laudor</th>
<th>monētor</th>
<th>agor</th>
<th>audior</th>
<th>capior</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudāris(-re)</td>
<td>moneāris(-re)</td>
<td>aḡerēris(-re)</td>
<td>audīēris(-re)</td>
<td>cēperēris(-re)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudātur</td>
<td>moneātur</td>
<td>aḡītur</td>
<td>audīētur</td>
<td>capītur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāmūr</td>
<td>moneāmūr</td>
<td>aḡīmūr</td>
<td>audīēmūr</td>
<td>capīmūr</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāminī</td>
<td>moneāminī</td>
<td>aḡīminī</td>
<td>audīēminī</td>
<td>capīminī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudānuntur</td>
<td>moneānuntur</td>
<td>aḡīnuntur</td>
<td>audīēnuntur</td>
<td>capīnuntur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>laudābar</th>
<th>monēbar</th>
<th>aḡēbar</th>
<th>audīēbar</th>
<th>cāpiēbar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudābāris(-re)</td>
<td>moneābāris(-re)</td>
<td>aḡēbāris(-re)</td>
<td>audīēbāris(-re)</td>
<td>cāpiēbāris(-re)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābētūr</td>
<td>moneābētūr</td>
<td>aḡēbētūr</td>
<td>audīēbētūr</td>
<td>capībētūr</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābēmūr</td>
<td>moneābēmūr</td>
<td>aḡēbēmūr</td>
<td>audīēbēmūr</td>
<td>capībēmūr</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābēminī</td>
<td>moneābēminī</td>
<td>aḡēbēminī</td>
<td>audīēbēminī</td>
<td>capībēminī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābēnuntur</td>
<td>moneābēnuntur</td>
<td>aḡēbēnuntur</td>
<td>audīēbēnuntur</td>
<td>capībēnuntur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Future

| laudábor | monébor | agar | audiar | capiar |
| laudáberis(-re) | monéberis(-re) | agéri(-re) | audéri(-re) | capéri(-re) |
| laudábitur | monébitur | agéntur | audéntur | capéntur |
| laudábimur | monébimur | agéminur | audéminur | capéminur |
| laudábimini | monébimini | agéminini | audéminini | capéminini |
| laudábuntur | monébuntur | agéntur | audéntur | capéntur |

### Perfect

| laudátus | monitus | actus | auditus | captus |
| laudátes | monites | actes | audites | captes |
| laudátis sum | monitius sum | actius sum | auditus sum | captius sum |
| laudátis es | monites es | actes es | audites es | captes es |
| laudátis est | monites sumus | actius sumus | auditus sumus | captius sumus |
| laudátis estis | monites estis | actius estis | auditus estis | captius estis |
| laudátis sunt | monities sunt | actius sunt | auditus sunt | captius sunt |

### Pluperfect

| laudatátus eram | monitos eram | actus eram | auditus eram | captus eram |
| laudatátus eris | monitos eris | actus eris | auditus eris | captus eris |
| laudatátus erat | monitos erat | actus erat | auditus erat | captus erat |
| laudatátis crámus | monitos crámus | actus crámus | auditus crámus | captus crámus |
| laudatátis eratis | monitos eratis | actus eratis | auditus eratis | captus eratis |
| laudatátis erant | monities erant | actus erant | auditus erant | captus erant |

### Future Perfect

| laudátus erá | monitos erá | actus erá | auditus erá | captus erá |
| laudátus erás | monitos erás | actus erás | auditus erás | captus erás |
| laudátus erat | monitos erat | actus erat | auditus erat | captus erat |
| laudátis crámus | monitos crámus | actus crámus | auditus crámus | captus crámus |
| laudátis eratis | monitos eratis | actus eratis | auditus eratis | captus eratis |
| laudátis erant | monities erant | actus erant | auditus erant | captus erant |

### Subjunctive Passive

| audier | monier | ageier | audier | capier |
| laudéri(-re) | monérier(-re) | agéri(-re) | audéri(-re) | capéri(-re) |
| audietur | monéetur | agéntur | audéntur | capéntur |
| laudémur | monémur | agémur | audémur | capémur |
| laudémini | monéminti | agéminti | audéminti | capéminti |
| laudentur | monéentur | agéntur | audéntur | capéntur |

### Imperfect

| laudítis | monéitis | ageter | ageter | caperer |
| laudértis(-re) | monéértis(-re) | agetéri(-re) | agetéri(-re) | caperéri(-re) |
| laudértur | monéértur | ageténtur | ageténtur | caperéntur |
| laudérémur | monérémur | agetémur | agetémur | caperémur |
| laudéréminti | monéréminî | agetéminti | agetéminti | caperéminti |
| laudérentur | monérentur | ageténtur | ageténtur | caperéntur |

---

12 The participles laudátus (-a, -um), monitus (-a, -um), etc., are used as predicate adjectives, and so their endings vary to agree with the subject.
### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>monitus sim</th>
<th>actus sim</th>
<th>auditus sim</th>
<th>captus sim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudátus sim</td>
<td>monitus sim</td>
<td>actus sim</td>
<td>auditus sim</td>
<td>captus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudátus fíns</td>
<td>monitus fíns</td>
<td>actus fíns</td>
<td>auditus fíns</td>
<td>captus fíns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudátus sit</td>
<td>monitus sit</td>
<td>actus sit</td>
<td>auditus sit</td>
<td>captus sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudátus simus</td>
<td>monitus simus</td>
<td>actus simus</td>
<td>auditus simus</td>
<td>captus simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudátis sitís</td>
<td>monitus sitís</td>
<td>actus sitís</td>
<td>auditus sitís</td>
<td>captus sitís</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudáti sit</td>
<td>moniti sit</td>
<td>acti sit</td>
<td>auditi sit</td>
<td>capti sit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>monitus essem</th>
<th>actus essem</th>
<th>auditus essem</th>
<th>captus essem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudátus essem</td>
<td>monitus essem</td>
<td>actus essem</td>
<td>auditus essem</td>
<td>captus essem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudátus essés</td>
<td>monitus essés</td>
<td>actus essés</td>
<td>auditus essés</td>
<td>captus essés</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudátus esset</td>
<td>moniti esset</td>
<td>acti esset</td>
<td>auditi esset</td>
<td>capti esset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudátus essémus</td>
<td>moniti essémus</td>
<td>acti essémus</td>
<td>auditi essémus</td>
<td>capti essémus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudátis essétis</td>
<td>moniti essétis</td>
<td>acti essétis</td>
<td>auditi essétis</td>
<td>capti essétis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudáti essent</td>
<td>moniti essent</td>
<td>acti essent</td>
<td>auditi essent</td>
<td>capti essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Present Imperative Passive

In classical Latin, passive form imperatives are found chiefly in deponent verbs (for forms, see Ch. 34).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Participles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>monére</th>
<th>agere</th>
<th>auditere</th>
<th>capere</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Passive</td>
<td>monéisse</td>
<td>agéisse</td>
<td>auditéisse</td>
<td>capéisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>monítorus esse</td>
<td>actótorus esse</td>
<td>auditótorus esse</td>
<td>captótorus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>monitótorus esse</td>
<td>actótorus esse</td>
<td>auditótorus esse</td>
<td>captótorus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive</td>
<td>monéri</td>
<td>actri</td>
<td>auditri</td>
<td>captir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>monitus esse</td>
<td>actus esse</td>
<td>auditus esse</td>
<td>captus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>monítorum iri</td>
<td>actítorum iri</td>
<td>auditítorum iri</td>
<td>captítorum iri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### DEPONENT VERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principal Parts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st Conj.:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd Conj.:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd Conj.:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4th Conj.:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd (-iō):</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Indicative

### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>hortor</em></td>
<td>fateor</td>
<td>sequor</td>
<td>mōlior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortāris</em></td>
<td>fateāris(-re)</td>
<td>sequāris(-re)</td>
<td>mōliāris(-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortātur</em></td>
<td>fateātur</td>
<td>sequitur</td>
<td>mōlitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortāmur</em></td>
<td>fateāmur</td>
<td>sequāmur</td>
<td>mōlimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortāminī</em></td>
<td>fateāminī</td>
<td>sequāminī</td>
<td>mōlimīnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortantur</em></td>
<td>fateantur</td>
<td>sequantur</td>
<td>mōliuntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>hortābar</em></td>
<td>fateābar</td>
<td>sequēbar</td>
<td>mōliēbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortābaris</em></td>
<td>fateēbaris(-re)</td>
<td>sequēbaris(-re)</td>
<td>mōliēbaris(-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortābātur</em></td>
<td>fateēbātur</td>
<td>sequēbātur</td>
<td>mōliēbātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortābāmur</em></td>
<td>fateēbāmur</td>
<td>sequēbāmur</td>
<td>mōliēbāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortābāminī</em></td>
<td>fateēbāminī</td>
<td>sequēbāminī</td>
<td>mōliēbāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortābantur</em></td>
<td>fateēbantur</td>
<td>sequēbantur</td>
<td>mōliēbantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>hortābor</em></td>
<td>fateābor</td>
<td>sequār</td>
<td>mōliār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortāberis</em></td>
<td>fateēberis(-re)</td>
<td>sequēris(-re)</td>
<td>mōliēberis(-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortābūtūr</em></td>
<td>fateēbūtūr</td>
<td>sequēbūtūr</td>
<td>mōliēbūtūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortābūmur</em></td>
<td>fateēbūmur</td>
<td>sequēbūmur</td>
<td>mōliēbūmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortābūminī</em></td>
<td>fateēbūminī</td>
<td>sequēbūminī</td>
<td>mōliēbūminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortābuntur</em></td>
<td>fateēbuntur</td>
<td>sequēbuntur</td>
<td>mōliēbuntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>hortātus sum</em></td>
<td>fassus sum</td>
<td>secūtus sum</td>
<td>mōltus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortātus es</em></td>
<td>fassus es</td>
<td>secūtus es</td>
<td>mōltus es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortātus est</em></td>
<td>fassus est</td>
<td>secūtus est</td>
<td>mōltus es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortātus sumus</em></td>
<td>fassus sumus</td>
<td>secūtus sumus</td>
<td>mōltus sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortātus estis</em></td>
<td>fassus estis</td>
<td>secūtus estis</td>
<td>mōltus estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortātus sunt</em></td>
<td>fassus sunt</td>
<td>secūtus sunt</td>
<td>mōltus sunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>hortātus ex</em></td>
<td>fassus ex</td>
<td>secūtus ex</td>
<td>mōltus ex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortātus erās</em></td>
<td>fassus erās</td>
<td>secūtus erās</td>
<td>mōltus erās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortātus erat</em></td>
<td>fassus erat</td>
<td>secūtus erat</td>
<td>mōltus erat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortātus crāmus</em></td>
<td>fassus crāmus</td>
<td>secūtus crāmus</td>
<td>mōltus crāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortātus erātis</em></td>
<td>fassus erātis</td>
<td>secūtus erātis</td>
<td>mōltus erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortātus erant</em></td>
<td>fassus erant</td>
<td>secūtus erant</td>
<td>mōltus erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>hortātus erō</em></td>
<td>fassus erō</td>
<td>secūtus erō</td>
<td>mōltus erō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortātus erīs</em></td>
<td>fassus erīs</td>
<td>secūtus erīs</td>
<td>mōltus erīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortātus erīt</em></td>
<td>fassus erīt</td>
<td>secūtus erīt</td>
<td>mōltus erīt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortātus crīmus</em></td>
<td>fassus crīmus</td>
<td>secūtus crīmus</td>
<td>mōltus crīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortātus erītis</em></td>
<td>fassus erītis</td>
<td>secūtus erītis</td>
<td>mōltus erītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortātus erunt</em></td>
<td>fassus erunt</td>
<td>secūtus erunt</td>
<td>mōltus erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subjunctive


## Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>horter</em></td>
<td>fatear</td>
<td>sequar</td>
<td>mōliar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortēris</em></td>
<td>fateāris(-re)</td>
<td>sequāris(-re)</td>
<td>mōliāris(-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortētur</em></td>
<td>fateātur</td>
<td>sequētur</td>
<td>mōlitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortēmur</em></td>
<td>fateāmur</td>
<td>sequēmur</td>
<td>mōlimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortēminī</em></td>
<td>fateāminī</td>
<td>sequāminī</td>
<td>mōlimīnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>hortentur</em></td>
<td>fateantur</td>
<td>sequantur</td>
<td>mōliuntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


### Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>1st sing</th>
<th>2nd sing</th>
<th>3rd sing</th>
<th>1st pl</th>
<th>2nd pl</th>
<th>3rd pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hortārēris</td>
<td>fātērēris</td>
<td>sēquērēris</td>
<td>mōlērēris</td>
<td>paterēris</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fātērētur</td>
<td>sēquētur</td>
<td>mōlētur</td>
<td>paterētur</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fātērēmur</td>
<td>sēquērēmur</td>
<td>mōlērēmur</td>
<td>paterērēmur</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fātērēminī</td>
<td>sēquērēminī</td>
<td>mōlērēminī</td>
<td>paterērēminī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fātērentur</td>
<td>sēquērentur</td>
<td>mōlērentur</td>
<td>paterentur</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>1st sing</th>
<th>2nd sing</th>
<th>3rd sing</th>
<th>1st pl</th>
<th>2nd pl</th>
<th>3rd pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hortātus</td>
<td>fassus</td>
<td>secūtus</td>
<td>mōlitus</td>
<td>passus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sim</td>
<td>sim</td>
<td>sim</td>
<td>sim</td>
<td>sim</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātus</td>
<td>fassus</td>
<td>secūtus</td>
<td>mōlitus</td>
<td>passus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sīs</td>
<td>sīs</td>
<td>sīs</td>
<td>sīs</td>
<td>sīs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātus</td>
<td>fassus</td>
<td>secūtus</td>
<td>mōlitus</td>
<td>passus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortāti</td>
<td>fassīs</td>
<td>secūtīs</td>
<td>mōlitīs</td>
<td>passīs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simus</td>
<td>simus</td>
<td>simus</td>
<td>simus</td>
<td>simus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortāti</td>
<td>fassīs</td>
<td>secūtīs</td>
<td>mōlitīs</td>
<td>passīs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sītūs</td>
<td>sītūs</td>
<td>sītūs</td>
<td>sītūs</td>
<td>sītūs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortāti</td>
<td>fassītūs</td>
<td>secūtītūs</td>
<td>mōlitītūs</td>
<td>passītūs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essent</td>
<td>essent</td>
<td>essent</td>
<td>essent</td>
<td>essent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>1st sing</th>
<th>2nd sing</th>
<th>3rd sing</th>
<th>1st pl</th>
<th>2nd pl</th>
<th>3rd pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hortātus</td>
<td>fassus</td>
<td>secūtus</td>
<td>mōlitus</td>
<td>passus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esset</td>
<td>esset</td>
<td>esset</td>
<td>esset</td>
<td>esset</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātus</td>
<td>fassus</td>
<td>secūtus</td>
<td>mōlitus</td>
<td>passus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essēs</td>
<td>essēs</td>
<td>essēs</td>
<td>essēs</td>
<td>essēs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortātus</td>
<td>fassus</td>
<td>secūtus</td>
<td>mōlitus</td>
<td>passus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essēmus</td>
<td>essēmus</td>
<td>essēmus</td>
<td>essēmus</td>
<td>essēmus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortāti</td>
<td>fassītūs</td>
<td>secūtītūs</td>
<td>mōlitītūs</td>
<td>passītūs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essetis</td>
<td>essetis</td>
<td>essetis</td>
<td>essetis</td>
<td>essetis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortāti</td>
<td>fassītūs</td>
<td>secūtītūs</td>
<td>mōlitītūs</td>
<td>passītūs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essentis</td>
<td>essentis</td>
<td>essentis</td>
<td>essentis</td>
<td>essentis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Present Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>1st sing</th>
<th>2nd sing</th>
<th>3rd sing</th>
<th>1st pl</th>
<th>2nd pl</th>
<th>3rd pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hortāre</td>
<td>fātēre</td>
<td>sēquer</td>
<td>mōlēre</td>
<td>patere</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortāmini</td>
<td>fātēmini</td>
<td>sēquerini</td>
<td>mōlimini</td>
<td>patimini</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>1st sing</th>
<th>2nd sing</th>
<th>3rd sing</th>
<th>1st pl</th>
<th>2nd pl</th>
<th>3rd pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>fātēns</td>
<td>sēquēns</td>
<td>mōlēns</td>
<td>patēns</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>fassus</td>
<td>secūtus</td>
<td>mōlitus</td>
<td>passus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>fassūrus</td>
<td>secūtūrus</td>
<td>mōlitūrus</td>
<td>passūrus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ger.</td>
<td>fataendus</td>
<td>sequendus</td>
<td>mōliendus</td>
<td>patiendus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>1st sing</th>
<th>2nd sing</th>
<th>3rd sing</th>
<th>1st pl</th>
<th>2nd pl</th>
<th>3rd pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>fātēri</td>
<td>sēquēri</td>
<td>mōlēri</td>
<td>patīri</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>fassus</td>
<td>secūtus</td>
<td>mōlitus</td>
<td>passus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>fassūrus</td>
<td>secūtūrus</td>
<td>mōlitūrus</td>
<td>passūrus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fassūrus</td>
<td>secūtūrus</td>
<td>mōlitūrus</td>
<td>passūrus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IRREGULAR VERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principal Parts</th>
<th>1st sing</th>
<th>2nd sing</th>
<th>3rd sing</th>
<th>1st pl</th>
<th>2nd pl</th>
<th>3rd pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>esse</td>
<td>futūr</td>
<td>futūrum</td>
<td>(be)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possum</td>
<td>posse</td>
<td>potūr</td>
<td>potūrum</td>
<td>(be able, can)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volō</td>
<td>velle</td>
<td>volūr</td>
<td>(wish, be willing)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōlō</td>
<td>nōlē</td>
<td>nōlūr</td>
<td>(not to wish, be unwilling)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mālō</td>
<td>mālē</td>
<td>mālūr</td>
<td>(prefer)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eā</td>
<td>ēre</td>
<td>ērūr</td>
<td>ērum</td>
<td>(go)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Indicative

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>sum</th>
<th>es</th>
<th>est</th>
<th>sumus</th>
<th>estis</th>
<th>sunt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>volō</td>
<td>vis</td>
<td>vult</td>
<td>volumus</td>
<td>vultis</td>
<td>volunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noābō</td>
<td>nōn vis</td>
<td>nōn vult</td>
<td>nōbōmus</td>
<td>nōn vultis</td>
<td>nōhunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mālō</td>
<td>māvīs</td>
<td>māvult</td>
<td>mālāmus</td>
<td>māvultis</td>
<td>mālunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cō</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>imus</td>
<td>itis</td>
<td>eunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>eram</th>
<th>erās</th>
<th>erat</th>
<th>erāmus</th>
<th>erātis</th>
<th>erant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>poteram</td>
<td>poterās</td>
<td>poterat</td>
<td>poterāmus</td>
<td>poterātis</td>
<td>poterant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volēbam</td>
<td>volēbās</td>
<td>volēbat</td>
<td>volēbāmus</td>
<td>volēbātis</td>
<td>volēbant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōēbām</td>
<td>nōēbās</td>
<td>nōēbat</td>
<td>nōēbāmus</td>
<td>nōēbātis</td>
<td>nōēbant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mālēbām</td>
<td>mālēbās</td>
<td>mālēbat</td>
<td>mālēbāmus</td>
<td>mālēbātis</td>
<td>mālēbant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thām</td>
<td>Thās</td>
<td>Thāb</td>
<td>Thāmus</td>
<td>Thātis</td>
<td>Thānt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>erō</th>
<th>erōs</th>
<th>erēt</th>
<th>erimus</th>
<th>erētis</th>
<th>erunt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>poterō</td>
<td>poterōs</td>
<td>poterēt</td>
<td>poterōmus</td>
<td>poterōtis</td>
<td>poterunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volēm</td>
<td>volēs</td>
<td>volet</td>
<td>volēmus</td>
<td>volētis</td>
<td>volēunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōlēm</td>
<td>nōlēs</td>
<td>nōlet</td>
<td>nōlēmus</td>
<td>nōlētis</td>
<td>nōlēnt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mālēm</td>
<td>mālēs</td>
<td>mālēt</td>
<td>mālēmus</td>
<td>mālētis</td>
<td>mālēnt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thō</td>
<td>Thīs</td>
<td>Thīt</td>
<td>Thīmus</td>
<td>Thītis</td>
<td>Thīnt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>fuī</th>
<th>fuīs</th>
<th>faīt</th>
<th>faimus</th>
<th>faītis</th>
<th>faīrant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>potuī</td>
<td>potuīs</td>
<td>potuīt</td>
<td>potuīmus</td>
<td>potuītis</td>
<td>potuīrant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volūī</td>
<td>volūīs</td>
<td>volūīt</td>
<td>volūīmus</td>
<td>volūītis</td>
<td>volūīrant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōhūī</td>
<td>nōhūīs</td>
<td>nōhūīt</td>
<td>nōhūīmus</td>
<td>nōhūītis</td>
<td>nōhūīrant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mālūī</td>
<td>mālūīs</td>
<td>mālūīt</td>
<td>mālūīmus</td>
<td>mālūītis</td>
<td>mālūīrant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thī</td>
<td>Thīs</td>
<td>Thīt</td>
<td>Thīmus</td>
<td>Thītis</td>
<td>Thīnt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>fueram</th>
<th>fuerās</th>
<th>etc.</th>
<th>fueram</th>
<th>fuerās</th>
<th>etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>potueram</td>
<td>potuerās</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>volueram</td>
<td>voluerās</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōlueram</td>
<td>nōluerās</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>mālueram</td>
<td>māluerās</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mālueram</td>
<td>māluerās</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>fuerō</th>
<th>fuerōs</th>
<th>etc.</th>
<th>fuerō</th>
<th>fuerōs</th>
<th>etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>potuerō</td>
<td>potuerōs</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>voluerō</td>
<td>voluerōs</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōluerō</td>
<td>nōluerōs</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>māluerō</td>
<td>māluerōs</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>māluerō</td>
<td>māluerōs</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subjunctive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>sim</th>
<th>sis</th>
<th>sit</th>
<th>simus</th>
<th>sisus</th>
<th>sint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>possim</td>
<td>possis</td>
<td>possit</td>
<td>possimus</td>
<td>possitis</td>
<td>possint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velim</td>
<td>velis</td>
<td>velit</td>
<td>velimus</td>
<td>velitis</td>
<td>velit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōlim</td>
<td>nōlis</td>
<td>nōlit</td>
<td>nōlimus</td>
<td>nōlitis</td>
<td>nōlīnt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mālim</td>
<td>mālis</td>
<td>mālit</td>
<td>mālimus</td>
<td>mālitis</td>
<td>mālīnt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cam</td>
<td>cēs</td>
<td>cēt</td>
<td>cēmus</td>
<td>cētis</td>
<td>cēnt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Note that the verbs in this list have no passive voice (except for the idiomatic impersonal passive of esse, which is not used in this book).
### Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>esse</td>
<td>possem</td>
<td>vellem</td>
<td>nollem</td>
<td>mullem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>esse</td>
<td>posses</td>
<td>velle</td>
<td>nolle</td>
<td>malle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>esset</td>
<td>postet</td>
<td>veller</td>
<td>nollet</td>
<td>mallet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>essetis</td>
<td>possettis</td>
<td>vellestis</td>
<td>nollestis</td>
<td>mallestis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>essent</td>
<td>poscent</td>
<td>vellent</td>
<td>nollement</td>
<td>mallement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>fuere</td>
<td>potuerim</td>
<td>voluerim</td>
<td>noluerim</td>
<td>muluerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuereis</td>
<td>potueritis</td>
<td>volueritis</td>
<td>nolueritis</td>
<td>mulueritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>furet</td>
<td>potuerit</td>
<td>voluerit</td>
<td>noluerit</td>
<td>muluerit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>furetis</td>
<td>potueritis</td>
<td>volueritis</td>
<td>nolueritis</td>
<td>mulueritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>furent</td>
<td>potuerint</td>
<td>voluerint</td>
<td>noluerint</td>
<td>muluerint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>fuisse</td>
<td>potuisse</td>
<td>voluisse</td>
<td>noluisse</td>
<td>muluisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuisseis</td>
<td>potuisseis</td>
<td>voluisseis</td>
<td>noluisseis</td>
<td>muluisseis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuisset</td>
<td>potuisset</td>
<td>voluisset</td>
<td>noluisset</td>
<td>muluisset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuissetis</td>
<td>potuissetis</td>
<td>voluissetis</td>
<td>noluissetis</td>
<td>muluissetis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuiscent</td>
<td>potuiscent</td>
<td>voluiscent</td>
<td>noluiscent</td>
<td>muluiscent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Present Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>esse</td>
<td>nolit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esse</td>
<td>nolite</td>
<td>tue</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>esse</td>
<td>posse</td>
<td>velle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>fuisse</td>
<td>potuisse</td>
<td>voluisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut</td>
<td>futurus</td>
<td>potuitur</td>
<td>voluitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ger.</td>
<td>futurus esse</td>
<td>potuitur</td>
<td>voluitur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pr.</td>
<td>esse</td>
<td>posse</td>
<td>velle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pf.</td>
<td>fuisse</td>
<td>potuisse</td>
<td>voluisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fu.</td>
<td>futurus esse</td>
<td>potuitur</td>
<td>voluitur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IRREGULAR: ferō, ferre, lūtum, to bear, carry

### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Act.</td>
<td>ferō</td>
<td>feror</td>
<td>ferōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass.</td>
<td>fers</td>
<td>fersis(-re)</td>
<td>ferēbas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Act.</td>
<td>fort</td>
<td>fortur</td>
<td>ferēbat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass.</td>
<td>farris</td>
<td>farris - -</td>
<td>ferēbāris - -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Act.</td>
<td>ferrum</td>
<td>ferrimine</td>
<td>ferēbāris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass.</td>
<td>ferrunt</td>
<td>ferruntur</td>
<td>ferēbant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tuli</td>
<td>latus sum</td>
<td>tuleram</td>
<td>latus eram</td>
<td>tuleri</td>
<td>latus eri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tulisti</td>
<td>latus es</td>
<td>tulerat</td>
<td>latus erat</td>
<td>tulerit</td>
<td>latus erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuliit</td>
<td>latus est</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>feram</td>
<td>ferar</td>
<td>ferrem</td>
<td>ferrer</td>
<td>tulerim</td>
<td>latus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fertis</td>
<td>ferteris(-e)</td>
<td>ferreris(-e)</td>
<td>ferrer</td>
<td>tuleriis</td>
<td>latus sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fert</td>
<td>fertur</td>
<td>ferret</td>
<td>ferrerur</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fertimus</td>
<td>ferentur</td>
<td>ferreretur</td>
<td>ferrerum</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fertlis</td>
<td>ferentini</td>
<td>ferrerin</td>
<td>ferrerini</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fertant</td>
<td>ferantur</td>
<td>ferrerent</td>
<td>ferrerentur</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pres. Imper.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pres. ferens</td>
<td></td>
<td>ferre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferte</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td></td>
<td>ferrer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fut. laturus</td>
<td></td>
<td>laturus esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>latum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Indicative

### Infinitives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>latum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IRREGULAR: fieri, fieri, factus sum, to happen, become; be made, be done

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fieri</td>
<td>fieri</td>
<td>fieri</td>
<td>fieri</td>
<td>fieri</td>
<td>fieri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
An Arabic (1) in parentheses after a verb shows that this is a regular verb of the first conjugation with a sequence of principal parts ending in -āre, -āvi, -ātum. For prefixes and suffixes see the lists in the Appendix. For more complete definitions of the Latin words, see the Latin-English Vocabulary.
as, ut + indic.
as ... as possible, quam + superlative
Asia, Asia, -ae, f.
ask, rogō (1)

**assure** (I assure you, you may be assured), use
  personal pron. in dat. case (dat. of reference, e.g.,
  tibi)
  **at** (= ione), abl. of time: (= place), loc. of names
  of cities
  Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl.
attack, oppugnō (1)
author, auctōr, -ōris, m.
avert, avertō, -ere, -i, -versum
away from, ab + abl.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>as, ut + indic.</td>
<td>bad, malus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as ... as possible, quam + superlative</td>
<td>band, manus, -ūs, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia, Asia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>banish, expellō, -ere, -pulsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ask, rogō (1)</td>
<td>base, turpis, -c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assure (I assure you, you may be assured), use</td>
<td>be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>personal pron. in dat. case (dat. of reference, e.g.,</td>
<td>beard, barba, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tibi)</td>
<td>beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum; bellus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at (= ione), abl. of time: (= place), loc. of names</td>
<td>beauty, forma, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of cities</td>
<td>because, quod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl.</td>
<td>become, fīō, fierī, factum sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attack, oppugnō (1)</td>
<td>began, coepī, coepisse, eōptum (pres. system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>author, auctōr, -ōris, m.</td>
<td>supplied by incipio)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avert, avertō, -ere, -i, -versum</td>
<td>begun, incipīō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (see began</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>away from, ab + abl.</td>
<td>above)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but, sed, at</td>
<td>believe, crēdō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by (= agent), a or ab + abl.;</td>
<td>benefit, beneficium, -ī, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= means), simple abl.</td>
<td>best, optimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caesar, Caesar, -sarīs, m.</td>
<td>better, melior, -ius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call, vocō (1); appellō (1)</td>
<td>blind, caecus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can, possum, posse, potū</td>
<td>body, corpus, -porīs, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capture, capiō, -ere, cēptum</td>
<td>(be) born, nascor, -i, natus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>care, cūrā, -ae, f.</td>
<td>book, librō, -brī, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certain (definite, sure), certus, -a, -um;</td>
<td>both ... and, cl ... cl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(indef.) quidam, quaedam, quiddam (pron.) or</td>
<td>boy, puēr; puērī, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quoddam (I.)</td>
<td>brave, fortīs, -e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certainly, certē</td>
<td>brief, brevis, -e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>change, mūtō (1)</td>
<td>bright, clārus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character, mōrēs, mōrum, m. pl.</td>
<td>bring, ferō, ferre, tull, lātum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheer, recereō (1)</td>
<td>bring (back), referō, -ferre, -tullum, -lātum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnīs, m.</td>
<td>brother, frater, -trīs, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>citizen, cīvis, -īs, m. f.</td>
<td>bull, bōs, bovis, m. f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>citizenship, cīvitās, -tās, f.</td>
<td>but, sed, at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>city, urbs, urbīs, f.</td>
<td>call, vocō (1); appellō (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come, venīō, -ire, vēnī, ventum</td>
<td>can, possum, posse, potū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come back, revenīō, -ire, vēnī, -ventum</td>
<td>capture, capiō, -ere, cēptum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comfort, sōlāciōm, -ī, n.</td>
<td>care, cūrā, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>command (noun), imperium, -ī, n.;</td>
<td>certain (definite, sure), certus, -a, -um;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(indef.) quidam, quaedam, quiddam (pron.) or</td>
<td>(indef.) quidam, quaedam, quiddam (pron.) or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quoddam (I.)</td>
<td>quoddam (I.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(nō), imperō (1)</td>
<td>common, commūnis, -e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commonwealth, rēs publica, rēs publicae, f.</td>
<td>compare, comparō (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compare, comparō (1)</td>
<td>complain, queror, -i, questus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complain, queror, -i, questus sum</td>
<td>concerning, dē + abl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confess, fato, -ērī, fāssum sum</td>
<td>conquer, superō (1); vincō, -ere, viē, victum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conquer, superō (1); vincō, -ere, viē, victum</td>
<td>conspirators, confrater, -ārum, m. pl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constellation, sidus, -derīs, n.</td>
<td>consol, consūl, -ās, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consul, consūl, -ās, m.</td>
<td>country, patria, -ae, f.; terra, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>country, patria, -ae, f.; terra, -ae, f.</td>
<td>courage, virtūs, -tūs, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>courage, virtūs, -tūs, f.</td>
<td>create, creō (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create, creō (1)</td>
<td>custom, mōs, mōris, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>custom, mōs, mōris, n.</td>
<td>crime, scelus, -lerīs, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crime, scelus, -lerīs, n.</td>
<td>danger, periculum, -ī, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>danger, periculum, -ī, n.</td>
<td>dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum</td>
<td>daughter, filia, -ae, f. (dat. and abl. pl. filiābus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daughter, filia, -ae, f. (dat. and abl. pl. filiābus)</td>
<td>day, diēs, -ērīs, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day, diēs, -ērīs, m.</td>
<td>dear, carus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
death, mors, mortis, f.
dedicate, dēdīcō (I)
deed, factum, i, n.
defend, dēfendō, -ere, -i, -fēnsum
delay, mora, -ae, f.
delight, dēlectō (I)
deny, nēgo (I)
deprived of (be), dērīdī, -ere, -ī, -ītum
descent, nepos, -potis, m.
desire (vb.), cupio, -ere, -lvi, -ltum; desiderō (I);
(noun), voluptas, -tatis, f.
despise, contemno, -ere, -temptum
destroy, deleo, -ere, -evī, -etum
destruction, exitium, -1, 1.
die, mōriō, -1, mortuus sum
difficult, difficilis, -c

dignity, dignitas, -tatis, 1.
dine, ceno (1)
dinner, ĉina, -ae, f.
disc'm'er, reperiō, -Ire, -pertullum
disable, turpis, -c
dissimilar, dissimilis, -c
do, facio, -ere, fecī, factum; be done, fierī, factus sum
doctor, medica, -ae, f.; medicus, -I, m.
drag, traho, -ere, traxi, tractum
dread (vb.), metuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum (noun), metus, -us, m.;
dreaden, timor, -moris, m.
drive out, expello, -ere, -pullum, -pulsum

E

eagerness, studium, -i, 11.
ear, auris, -is, f.
ease, facilis, -e
eight, octō
either, uter, utra, utrum
either ... or, aut ... aut

eleven, ĉinque
emperor, imperator, -tōris, m.
end, finis, -is, m.
endure, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum; patior, -t, passus

English-Latin Vocabulary 463
entrust, committō, -ere, -mītī, -missum
envy, (be) envious, invadeō, -ere, -vidī, -visum + dat.
err, errō (I)
esteen, diligō, -ere, -lēctum
even, etiam; not even, nē ... quidem
ever, unquam
every(one), omnis, -e
evil (adj.), malus, -a, -um (noun), malum, -i, n.
exhibit, ostendō, -ere, -i, -tentum
expect, expectō (I)
expel, expellō, -ere, -pullum, -pulsum
eye, occlus, -i, m.

F

face, vultus, -ūs, m.
faitūs, fidēs, -ēs, f.
faithful, fidēlis, -e
fall, cadō, -ere, ceceīdī, casūrum
false, falsus, -a, -um
fame, fāma, -ae, f.
family, familia, -ae, f.
farmer, agricola, -ae, m.
father, pater, -tris, m.
fault, culpa, -ae, f.; vitium, -ii, n.
fear (vb.), timō, -ere, -ūt (noun), metus, -us, m.;
timor, -moris, m.
feel, sensō, -ere, sēnsī, sēnsum
feeling, sēnsus, -ūs, m.
fierce, acer, acris, acre;
ferōx, gen. ferōcis
fifth, quintus, -a, -um
finally, dēnique
find, invenio, -Ire, -venī, -ventum
first (adj.), primus, -a, -um; (adv.) primum, prīmo
five, quīnque
bee, fugiō, -ere, fugī, fugītūrum
follow, sequor, -i, secūtus sum
foolish, stultius, -a, -um
for (conj.), nam, enim; (= since, because), quod,
quoniam; (prep), prō + abl.; often simply the
dat. case.
force, vis, vis, f.
forces (troops), cópiæ, -ārum, f. pl.
forgive, ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum + dat.
former, prior, prīus
fortunate, fortūnātus, -a, -um
fortune, fortūna, -ae, f.
forum, forum, -i, n.
four, quattuor
free (vb.), liberō (I); (adj.), liber, -era, -erum.
freedom, libertas, -ātis, f.
freely, liberē
friend, amīca, -ae, f.; amīcus, -i, m.
friendly, amīcus, -a, -um
friendship, amicitia, -ae, f.
frail; (adj.), lībere (I)
freedom, libertas, -ātis, f.
freely, liberē
friend, amīca, -ae, f.; amīcus, -i, m.
friendly, amīcus, -a, -um
friendship, amicitia, -ae, f.
fruit, fructus, -us, m.
full, plenus, -a, -urn
G

game, ludus, -I, m.
gate, porta, -ae, f.
general, dux, ducis, m.; imperātor, -tōris, m.
gift, dōnum, -i, n.
girl, puella, mae, f.
give, dāre, datum (be) glad,
dare, dēlere, delētus

glory, gloria, mae, f.
go, éo, ire, ī,
go (away), ab; (out) ex; (down) de.
ground, humus, -ae, f.
guard, custodia, -ae, f.
goddess, dea, -ae, f.
god, deus, -i, m. (roc. sg. deus, nom. pl. dei or dī,
dat. and abl. pl. dis)
goodness, dea, -ae, f. (lat. and abl. pl. deābus)
good, bonus, -a, -um
gratitude, grātia, -ae, f.
great, magnus, -a, -um
greedy, avarus, -a, -um
Greek, Graecus, -a, -um; a Greek, Graecus, -i, m.
grieve, dolēre, -ère, -ui, -ītum
ground, humus, -i, f.; terra, -ae, f.
guard, custodia, -ae, f.

H

hand, manus, -ūs, f.
happy, béatus, -a, -um; fēlix, gen. fēlicis
harm, noceō, -ère, -ui, -ītum + dat.
harm, noceō, -ère, -ui, -ītum + dat.
hast, dūrus, -a, -um; acerbus, -a, -um
have, habēre, -ère, -ui, -ītum
he, is; often indicated only by the personal ending of
vb.
head, caput, -pitis, n.

healthy, sānus, -a, -um
hear, audīō, -ōre, -ōri, -ōrum
heart (in one’s), we personal pron. in dat. case (dat.
of reference, e.g. mihi, tibi)
heavy, gravis, -e
help (vb.), adiuō, -āre, -iūvi, -ītum;
(noun), auxilium, -i, n.
er (possessive) eius (not reflexive); suis, -a, -um
(reflexive)

herself, suī (reflexive); ipsa (intensive)
hesitate, dubīto (1)
high, altus, -a, -um
higher, altior, -i, superior, -ius
himself, suī (reflexive); ipsa (intensive)
his, eius (not reflexive); sui, -a, -um (reflexive)
hold, tenēre, -ère, -ītum
ten tum
home, domus, -ūs, f.; at home, domi;
to (to) home, domum; from home, domō

deon, honor, -noris, m.
despise (noun), spēs, -et, f.; (vb), spērō (1)
horn, cornu, -ōs, n.
horse, equus, -i, m.
hour, hōra, -ae, f.
house, casa, -ae, f.
house, domus, -ūs, f.; at home, domi;
to (to) home, domum; from home, domō
honorable, honor, -noris, m.
human, homō, -ūnis, m.
mortal, mortalis, -e
in, in + abl.
incredulous, dubius, -a, -um
innocent, innocēns, -a, -um
invade, invadō (1)
iron, ferrum, -i, n.
it, is, ea, id; often indicated only by personal ending
of vb.

I

I, ego, mei; often expressed simply by the personal
ending of vb.
if, si; if ... not, nisi
ill, malum, -i, n.
illustrious, clarus, -a, -um
immortal, immortālis, -e
in, in + abl.
infirmity, infirmīta, -ae, f.
insatiable, insatiēns, -a, -a
into, in + acc.
invite, invitō (1)
iron, ferrum, -i, n.
it, is, ea, id; often indicated only by personal ending
of vb.
Italy, Italia, -ae, f.

itself, sui (reflexive); ipsum (intensive)

J

join, iungō, -ere, iōnx, iōnctum
judge, iūdex, -dicis, m.
judgment, iūdicium, -ī, n.
just, iūstus, -a, -um

K

keen, acer, acris, acre
keenly, acri
ter
kindness, beneficium, -iI, 11.
king, rex, regis, m.
kiss, balsam, -iI, n.
knee, genu, -us, 11.
know, scio, -cre, -livI, -Hum;
not know, nescio, -cre, -tvI, -Hum
knowledge, scientia, -ae, f

L

labor, labor, -bōris, m.
lack, careō, -ère, -ui, -itturum + abl.
land, patria, -ae, f.; terra, -ae, f.
language, lingua, -ae, f.
large, magnus, -a, -urn
Latin, Latinus, -a, -urn
law, lex, légis, f.
lead, dúco, -ère, dúxi, ductum
leader, dúx, ductis, m.
learn (in the academic sense), discō, -ere, didicō;
(get information), cognōscō, -ere, nōvi, -natum
leave, abscō, -ère, -ii, -itum
left, sinister, -tra, -trum
leisure, otium, -ī, n.

let (someone do something), express this with jussive subj.

letter (epistic), litterae, -ārum, f. pl.
liberty, libertās, -ūtis, f.
life, vita, -ae, f.
light, lux, lēcis, f.
listen (to), audiō, -īre, -ívī, -itum
literature, litterae, -ārum, f. pl.
little, parvus, -a, -um; little book, libellus, -ī, m.
live, vivō, -ere, vixit, vīctum; live one's life, vitam
agō, -ere, ēgī, actuīm
long (for a long time), diū

lose, āmitter, -ere, -misī, -missum
love (vb), amō (1); (noun), amat, amōris, m.
loyal, fidēlis, -e
luck, fortūna, -ae, f.

M

make, facō, -ere, fecī, factum
man, vir, virī, m.; homō, -minis, m.;
often expressed by masc. of an adj.
mamy, multi, -ae, a
master, magister, -trī, m.; dominus, -ī, m.
may (indicating permission to do something), licet
+ dat. + inf.
me. See l.
memory, memoria, -ae, f.
mercy, clementia, -ae, f.
method, modus, -ī, m.
middle, medius, -a, -um
mind, mens, mentis, f.
mix, miscō, -āre, -ui, mixtum
mob, vulgus, -ī, n. (sometimes m.)
modest, pudicus, -a, -um
money, pecūnia, -ae, f.
monument, monumentum, -ī, n.
more, plūs, plūris; comp. of adj. or adv.
most, plūrisimus, -a, -um; superl. of adj. or adv.
mother, māter, -trīs, f.
mountain, mōns, montis, m.
move, moveō, -ère, movī, mōtum
much, multus, -a, -um
murder, necō (1)
must, debō, -ēre, -ui, -itum; or, for passive, use
passive periphrastic
my, meus, -a, -um (m. voc. sg. mī)
myself (reflexive), meī, mihi, etc.;
(intensive) ipsī, ipsa

N

name, nōmen, -minis, n.
narrate, narrō (1)
nation, gentis, genitis, f.
nature, nātūra, -ae, f.
neglect, neglegō, -cre, -glēxi, -glēctum
neighbor, vicīna, -ae, f.; victimus, -ī, m.
neither ... nor, neque ... neque
never, numquam
nevertheless, tamen
new, novus, -a, -um
night, nox, noctis, f.
nine, novem
nobody, no one, nēmō, m. f.; for decl. see Lat.-Eng. Vocab.
not, nōn; nē with jussive, jussive noun, and purp-
clauses; ut with fear clauses
nothing, nihil (indecl.), n.
now, nunc
number, numerus, -i, m.
not, non; ne

O
obey, pāreō, -ere, -uī + dat.
offer, offerō, -ferre, obtuli, obligāvī
office, officium, -ī, n.
often, saepe
old, antiquus, -a, -um; senex, senis
old man, senex, senis, m.
on (= place), in + abl.; (= time), simple abl.
on account of, propter + acc.
one, unus, -a, -um
only (adv.), tantum; (adj.), sōlus, -a, -um
opinion, scūntentia, -ae, f.; (in one's) opinion, use
personal pron. in dat. case (dat. of reference, e.g.,
mīhi, tibi)
opportunity, occāsiō, -onis, f.
or, aut
oration, orātiō, -onis, f.
oration, orātor, -toris, m.
order, iūbeō, -ere, iussī, iussum; imperō (1) + dat.
in order to, ut (+ subj.); in order not to, nē (+
subj.)
other, another, alius, alia, alīud;
the other (of two), alter, -era, -erum;
(all) the other, cēteri, -ae, -a
ought, dēbeō, -ere, -uī, -itum; or, for passive, use
passive periphrastic
our, noster, -tra, -trum
out of, ex + abl.
overcome, supe rō (1)
overpower, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum
own, his own, suus, -a, -um; my own, meus, -a, -um

P
pain, dolor, -lōris, m.
part, pars, partis, f.
passage, locus, -ī, m.
passion, cupidītās, -ātīs, f.
patience, patientia, -ae, f.
pay. See penalty.
peace, pīx, pācis, f.
penalty, poena, -ae, f.; pay the penalty, poenās
dare
people, populus, -ī, m.
perceive, sentīō, -ire, sentī, sentīsum
perhaps, fortasse
period (of time), aetas, -ātīs, f.
perish, perēō, -ere, -uī, -itum
permit, patior, -ī, passus sum;
it is permitted, licet, licēre, licuit (imper.:)
perpetual, perpetuus, -a, -um
persuade, persuādeō, -ere, -suasī, -suasum + dat.
philosopher, sapiens, -entis, m.; philosopha, -ae, f.;
philosophus, -i, m.
philosophy, philosophiae, -ae, f.
place, locus, -ī, m.; pl., loci, -ōrum, n.
plan, cōnsilium, -ī, n.
pleasant, iūcundus, -a, -um
please, placō, -ere, -uī, -itum + dat.; with a
request, annābō tē
pleasure, voluptās, -ātīs, f.
plebeian, plebs, -ebīs, f.
plot, insidiae, -arum, f. pl.
poem, carmen, -inis, n.
poet, poēta, -ae, m.
(as . . . as) possible (or greatest possible, brightest
possible, etc.), quam + superl. of adj. or adv.
power (command), imperium, -ī, n.
powerful, potēns, gen. potentis
praise (vb.), laudō (1); (noun), laus, laudis, f.
prefer, mālō, māle, māliū
prepare, parō (1)
preserve, cōnservō (1)
press, premō, -ere, pressī, pressum
pretty, bellus, -a, -um; pulcher, -chā, -chrum
priest, sacerdōs, -ōnis, m.
prohibit, prohibēō, -ere, -uī, -itum
promise, prōmitto, -ere, mittī, -missum
provided that, dummodo + subj.
pupil, discipula, -ae, f.; discipulus, -i, m.
pursuit, studium, -ī, n.
put, pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum

Q
queen, regina, -ae, f.
quick, celer, -crīs, -ere
quickly, celeriter, cito
raise, tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum
rather: express this with comp. degree of adj. or adv.
read, legō, -ere, legi, lectum
real, vērus, -a, -um
reason, ratiō, -ōnis, f.
receive, accipio, -ere, -cepit, -ceptum
recite, recito (1)
recognize, recognoscō, -ere, -novī, -nītum
refuse, recusō (1)
region, loca, -arum, 11.
remain, remanō, -ere, -mansī, -mansum
report, nuntio, -a, 11.
republic, res publica, res publicae, r
reputation, rama, -ae, r
rescue, eripio, -cre, -crepitum
rest, the rest, ceterus, -ae, -a
restrain, teneō, -ere, -uī, -tentum
return (go back), redde, -ere, -iī, -itum
return (in return for), pró + abl.
riches, dīvītiae, -arum, r
road, via, -ae, f.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um
Rome, Rōma, -ae, f.
rose, rosa, -ae, f.
rule (noun), regnum, -ī, n.; (vb), regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum
rumor, rūmor, -ōris, m.
rum, currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum
seek, petō, -ere, -ivi, -ītum; quaerō, -ere, -sūvi, -sūtum
seem, videor, -ēri, visus sum
seize, rapiō, -ere, -uī, raptum
senate, senātus, -ōs, m.
send, mittō, -ere, missī, missum
serious, gravis, -e
serve, serviō, -ere, -īvit, -ītum + dat.
service, officium, -ī, n.
seven, septem
she, ea; often indicated only by the personal ending
of vb.
ship, nāvis, -is, f.
short, brevis, -e
show, ostendō, -ere, -iī, -tentum
shun, vīto (1); fugio, -ere, fūgi, fugitārum
sign, signum, -ī, n.
similar, similis, -e
since, quoniam + indic.; cum + subj.; abl. abs.
sister, soror, -ōris, f.
six, sex
skill, ars, artis, f.
slave, servus, -I, n.; slavegirl, serva, -ae, f.
slavery, servitūs, -ātis, f.
sleep (vb), dormio, -ere, -īvit, -ītum; (noun), somnus, -ī, m.
some ... others, aliqua ... alī
son, fīlius, -ī, m.
sou, mox
sort, genus, -neris, n.
soul, animus, -ās, m.
sound, sōnus, -a, -um; salus, -a, -um
spare, parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsūrum + dat.
speak, dicō, -ere, dixi, dixit; loquor, -ī, locutus sum
spirit, spiritus, -ūs, m.
stand, stō, stāre, stātī, stātum
start, proficiscor, -ī, factus sum
state, civītās, -ātis, f.; res pública, res públicae, f.
story, Fabula, -ae, f.
street, via, -ae, f.
strength, ūrīs, -ītum, f. pl.
strong, fortis, -e; be strong, valeō, -ere, -iī, -itum
student, discipula, -ae, f.; discipulus, -i, m.
study (noun), studium, -ii, n.; (vb), studēō, -ēre, -uī + dat.
suddenly, subītō
summer, aēstās, -tātis, f.
sun, sōl, sōlia, m.
support, alō, -ere, -uī, altum
suppose, opinōr, -āri, -ātus sum; putō (1)
suppress, opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum
supreme power, imperium, -ī, n.
sure, certus, -a, -um
surrender, trūdo, -ere, -didī, -dictum
sweet, dulcis, -e
swift, celer, -eris, -ere
sword, ferrum, -1, n.; gladius, -i, m.
Syracuse, Syrācūsae, -arum, f. pl.

T
talk, loquor, -ī, -bitus sum
teach, docō, -ere, -ui, doctum
teacher, magister, -ī, m.; magistra, -ae, f.
tear, lacrima, -ae, f.
tell, dīcō, -ere, -dīxi, dictum
ten, decem
terrify, terreō, -ere, -uī, -atum
territory, finās, -iūm, m. pl.
than, quam; or simple abl.
thank, grātiās ago, -ere, ēgī, āctum + dat.
that (demonstrative), ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id;
that (of yours), iste, ista, istud
that (subord. conj.), not expressed in ind. state; ut (purp. and result); nē (fear)
that . . . not, nē (purp.), ut . . . nōn (result); ut (fear)
that (rel. pron.), quī, quae, quod
their, suus, -a, -um (reflexive); eōrum, eārum (not reflexive)
them. See he, she, it.
then, tum, deinde
there, ibi
therefore, igitur (postpositive)
these. See this, demonstrative.
they. See he, she, it; often expressed simply by the personal ending of vb.
thing, rēs, rī, f.; often merely the neut. of an adj.
think, putō (1); arbitror. -āri, -ātus sum
third, tertius, -a, -um
this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id
those. See that, demonstrative.
thousand, mīlia (indecl. adj. sg.), mīlia, -īōm, n.
(brown in pl.)

three, trēs, tria
through, per + acc.
throughout, per + acc.
thrōw, incīō, -ere, īcī, īctum
thus, sīc
time, tempus, -poris, n.; (period of) time, aetās,
-ūtis, f.
to (place to which), ad + acc.; (ind. obj.), dat.;
(purp.), ut + subj., ad + gerund or gerundive
today, hodie
tolerate, tolerō (1)
tomorrow, crās
too, nimis, nimium, or use comp. degree of adj. or adv.
touch, tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum
tavel (abroad), peregrinor, -āri, -ātus sum
trivial, levis, -e
troops, cōpiās, -ārum, f. pl.
Troy, Trōia, -ae, f.
true, vērus, -a, -um
truly, vērē
trust, crēdo, -ere, -didī, -dictum + dat.
true, vērītās, -tātis, f.
try, experior, -erī, experītus sum
turn, vertō, -ere, -t, versum
twenty, vigintī
two, duo, duae, duō
type, genus, -eris, n.
tyran, tyrannus, -ī, m.

U
unable (be) nōn possum
uncertain, incertus, -a, -um
under, sub + abl. (= place where),
+ acc. (= place to which)
understand, intelligō, -ere, -léxi, -lectum;
comprehendō, -ere, -i, -hēnsum
unfortunate, miser, -era, -erum
unless, nisi
unwilling (be), nōloi, nōlīte, nōlī
urban, urbāne, urbānus, -a, -um
urge, botto, -āri, -ātus sum
use, ëtōr, -ī, -sus sum + abl.

V
verse, versus, -us, m.
very, express this by the superl. degree of adj. or adv.
vice, vitium, -ī, n.
Virgil, Vergilius, -ii, m.
virtue, virtus, -tutis, f.

W
wage, ger‡, -ere, gessi, gestum
walls, moenia, -itum, n. pl.
want, vol‡, velle, voluü
war, bellum, -i, n.
warn, moneö, -ere, -ui, -itum
water, aqua, -ae, f.
we. See 1; often expressed simply by the personal
   ending of vb.
wealth, divitiae, -arum, f. pl.
weapons, arma, -orum, n. pl.
well, bene
what (pron.), quid; (adj.), qui, quae, quod
whatever, quisquis, quidquid
when, participial phrase: abl. abs.; cum + subj.
   (interrogative), quandö; (rel.), ubi
whence, unde, adv.
where, ubi
wherefore, quaeré
which (rel. pron. and interrogative adj.), qui, quae,
   quod
while, dum
who (rel.), qui, quae, quod; (interrogative), quis,
   quid
whole, totus, -a, -um
why, cur
wicked, malus, -a, -um
wife, uxor, uxöris, f.
willing (be), vol‡, velle, voluü
window, fenestra, -ae, f.
wine, vinum, -i, n.
wisdom, sapientia, -ae, f.
wise, sapiens, gen. sapientis
wisely, sapienter
wish, cupio, -ere, -iö, -itum; volö, velle, voluü
with, cum + abl.; abl. of means (no prep.)
without, sine + abl.
woman, femina, -ae, f.; often expressed by fem. of
   an adj.
word, verbum, -i, n.
work, labor, -boris, m.; opus, operis, n.
world, mundus, -i, m.
worse, peior, -ius
worst, pessimus, -a, -um
write, scribo, -ere, scriptum
writer, scriptor, -töris, m.

Y
year, annus, -i, m.
yesterday, heri
yield, cedo, -ere, cessi, cessum
you, tü, tui; often expressed simply by the personal
   ending of vb.
young man, adulösen, -centis, m.
your (sg.), tuus, -a, -um; (pl.), vester, -trum
yourself (reflexive), tui, tibi, etc.; (intensive), ipse,
   ipsa
youth, iuvenis, -is, m.
Latin-English Vocabulary

An Arabic numeral after a vocabulary entry indicates the chapter in which the word is first introduced as an item of required vocabulary. Arabic (1) in parentheses after a verb shows that this is a regular verb of the first conjugation with a sequence of principal parts ending in -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
For prefixes and suffixes see the lists in the Appendix.

A

a or ab, prep. + abl., from, away from; by (agent). 14
abēō, -ère, -ī, -ītum, go away, depart, leave. 37
absconditus, -a, -um, hidden, secret
absēns, gen. -sentis, adj., absent, away. 37
absum, -esse, āfāi, āfutūrum, be away, be absent
abundantia, -ae, f., abundance
ac. See atque.
accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, come near, approach. 36
acciπō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, take, receive, accept. 24
accommodō (1), adjust, adapt
accēsor, -ōris, m., accuser
accēsī (1), accuse
ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp, keen, eager, severe, fierce. 16
acerbitās, -ātis, f., harshness
acerbūs, -a, -um, harsh, bitter, grievous. 12
Achillēs, -is, m., Achilles, Greek hero, chief character in the Iliad
aciēs, -ēs, f., sharp edge, keenness, line of battle
acquīrō, -ere, -quisīvi, -quisītum, acquire, gain
ācriter, adv., keenly, fiercely. 32
ad, prep. + acc., to, up to, near to. 8
addiscō, -ere, -didicī, learn in addition
addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead to, induce
adēō, -ère, -ī, -ītum, go to, approach. 37
adferō, -ferre, attulī, attūrum, bring to. 31
adīcō, -ere, -ēcit, -sectum, affect, afflict, weaken
adiciō, -ere, -iēci, -iectum, add
adinvō, -āre, -invisī, -inītum, help, aid, assist; please. 4
admīrō, -ārī, -ātus sum, wonder at, admire
admittō, -ere, -misī, -missum, admit, receive, let in. 17
admoneō = moneō
adnō, -ere, -nūi, nod assent
adoptō (1), wish for oneself, select, adopt
adsum, -esse, -tuli, -tūritum, be near, be present, assist
adābāsī, -onis, f., fawning, flattery
adulēscēns, -entis, m. and f., young man or woman. 12
adulēscēntia, -ae, f., youth, young manhood; youthfulness. 5
adultus, -a, -um, grown up, mature, adult
adversus, -a, -um, facing, opposite, adverse. 34
aequitas, aequi, aegre, aedificium, -ii, advesperaect, adversus,
advenio, -ire, -veni, adoro, aes, aeris, ait, aiunt, agricul
tura, -ae, l, agriculture agricola, -ae, ago, ager, agri, aeternus, -a, -um, eternal aetas, -arum, aetatis, l, aestas,
Alexander, -drei, Agamemnon, -nonis, aliquo, altus, aliter,
alO, aliquus, alienus, aliqui, alioqui, aliquus, alius, aliud,
aliqua, aliquid, alius, aliquos, alia, aliae, alae, aliae, alia, antiquus, -a, -um, belonging to another (p. alius), altus, alii, alii, altum, nourish, support, sustain, increase; cherish. 13 alter, alter, alta, allad, other, another; alii, some... others. 9 alae, alae, altum, nourish, support, sustain, increase; cherish. 13 alter, alter, alta, alte...
472 Wheelock's Latin

_assentior_, -ōris, _m._, yes-man, flatterer
_astrum_, -ī, _n._, star, constellation
_at, conj._, but; but, mind you; but, you say; _a more emotional adversative than sed._ 19
_ätter_, ātra, ātrum, dark, gloomy
_Athēnac_, -ārum, _f._ _pl._, Athens. 37
_Athēnēnsis_, -ē, Athenian; _Athēnēnsēs_, -īnum, the Athenians
_atque or ac_, _conj._, and, and also, and even. 21
_auctor_, -ōris, _m._, increaser; _auctor_, originator. 19
_auctoritas_, -tātis, _f._, authority
_audivis_, -is, _f._, ear. 14
_aurum_, -ī, _n._, gold
_austrum_, -ī, _n._, star, constellation
_auxilia_, -ōrum, _n._ _pl._, aid, help. 31
_avaritia_, -ae, _f._, greed, avarice
_avarus_, -a, -um, greedy, avaricious. 3
_balbus_, -āris, _m._, stammering, stuttering
_barba_, -ae, _f._, beard
_bēcita_, -ānis, _m._, kiss. 4
_beātus_, -ā, -um, happy, fortunate, blessed. 10
_bellus_, -ā, -um, pretty, handsome, charming. 4
_bene_, _adv._ of _bonus_, well, satisfactorily, quite. 11
_(comp. _meius_; _superl._ _optimus._ 27)_
_bonitas_, -ātis, _f._, dearness, affection
_cestum, -ōrum_ + _abl._ of _separation_, be without, be deprived of, want, lack, be free from. 20
_cāritas_, -ātis, _f._, charity, kindness, favor. 19
_benevolentia_, -ae, _f._, good will, kindness
_bēstia_, -ae, _f._, animal, beast
_bibō_, -ere, bibi, drink. 30
_bis_, _adv._, twice

_bonos_, -ā, -um, good, kind. 4
_(comp. _meius_; _superl._ _optimus._ 27)_
_bōs_, bōvis, _m._ _f._, bull, ox, cow
_brevitas_, -ātis, _f._, shortness, brevity
_brivīter_, _adv._, briefly
_Britannia_, -ae, _f._, Britain
_Brundisium_, -ī, _n._, important seaport in S. Italy
_Brutus_, -ī, _m._, famous Roman name: L. Junius Brutus, who helped establish the Roman republic; M. Junius Brutus, one of the conspirators against Julius Caesar

C
_C._, abbreviation for the common name _Gáius_
_cado_, -ere, cecidi, _cāsum_, fall. 12
_caece_, _-a, -um_, blind. 17
_celestita_, -ē, _f._, heavenly, celestial
_cælum_, -ī, _n._, sky, heaven. 5
_Caesar_, -saris, _m._, Caesar, especially Gaius Julius Caesar
_Cæsar._ 12
_calumnītās_, -ātis, _f._, misfortune, disaster
_calculus_, -ī, _n._, pebble
_campana_, -ae, _f._, bell (late Lat.)
_canis_, -is (gen. _pl._ _canum_), _m._ _f._, dog
_canis_, -ere, cecidi, _cāmut_, to sing about
_cantō_ (1), sing
_capillus_, -i, _m._, hair (of head or beard)
_capio_, -ere, cēpī, _cāptum_, take, capture, seize, get. 10
_capitō_ (1), grab, seek to get, hunt for (legacies, etc.)
_caput_, -ētis, _n._, head; leader; beginning; life; heading, chapter. 11
_carbo_, -bonis, _m._, coal, charcoal
_carēs_, -ē, _f._, care, affection
_carō_, -ere, _cāpō_, _cāptum_, harvest, pluck; seize. 36
_Carthago_, -galis, _f._, Carthage (city in N. Africa). 24
_cārus_, -ā, -um, dear. 11
_casa_, -ae, _f._, house, cottage, hut. 21
_cāsus_, -īs, _m._, accident, chance
Catena, -ae, f. chain
Catilina, -ae, m. L. Sergius Catiline, leader of
the conspiracy against the Roman state in
63 B.C.

Catullus, -i, m., Gaius Valerius Catullus, 1st cen.
H.C.

Lyric poet

Cattus, -I, m., cat 
(lat. lvordfof classical !eies, -is)

Causa, -ae, / cause, reason; case, situation; causa
with a preceding gen., for the sake of, on
account of. 21

Caveo, -ere, cavi, cautum, beware, avoid

Cavus, -i, m., hole

Cedo, -ere, cessi, cessum, go, withdraw; yield to,
submit, grant. 28

Celer, -eris, -ere, swift, quick, rapid. 16

CELERITAS, -tatis, / speed, swiftness

CELERITUR, swiftly, quickly

Cena, -ae, / dinner. 26

Ceno (I), dine. 5

Centum, -indeel. adj., a hundred. 15

Cerno, -ere, crevi, crctum, distinguish, discern,
perceive. 22

CERN', certainly

Certus, -a, -um, definite, sure, certain, reliable. 19

Cerus, -I, m., stag, deer

Ceteri, -ae, -a, the remaining, the rest, the
other. 30

Ciceró, -onis, m., Marcus Tullius Cicero. 8

Civita, -ae, f., hemlock (poison)

Cinis, -neds, m., ashes

CIRCENSES, -iUOl, m. pl. (~'c. liidi), games in the
Circus

Cito, -ere, quickly. 17

Civilis, -c, civil, civic

Citis, -is, m. pl. citizen. 14

Civitas, -tatis, f., state, citizenship. 7

Clarus, -a, -um, clear, bright; renowned, famous,
illustrious. 18

Cludo, -ere, clausi, clausum, shut, close

Clementia, -ae, f., mildness, gentleness, mercy. 16

Coeptus, coepisse, coeptum (defective vb.; pres. system
supplied by incipit), began. 27

COERCUS, -ere, -uf, -itum, curb, check, repress

Cogito (1), think, ponder, consider, plan. 1

Cogno sco, -ere, -nōf, -nitum, become acquainted
with, learn, recognize; in perf. tenses, know. 30

Cogo, -ere, coegi, coactum, drive or bring together,
force, compel. 36

Coligo, -ere, -legi, -lectum, gather together, collect
Collocó (1), place, put, arrange

Columa, -I, n., neck

Color, -ōris, m., color

Commemoró (1), remind, relate, mention

Commisceo, -ere, -uf, -itum, intermingle, join

COMMUNIS, -e, common, general, offfor the
community. 20

Comparó (1), compare

Compóso, -ere, -positum, put together,
compose

Comprehendi, -ere, -headi, -hēsum, grasp, seize,
arrest; comprehend, understand. 30

Concedó, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, yield, grant, concede

Consilium, -ii, 17., counsel, advice, plan, purpose;
judgment, wisdom. 4

Consisto, -ere, -stiti, -stiturum + in, depend on

Consóli, -ere, -stit, -stātūrum + ex, consist of

Consensus, -e, -suēf, -suētum, become
acquainted

Consul, -sulis, m., consul. 11

Consuló, -ere, -suēf, -suētum, look out for; have
regard for

Consultum, -i, n., decree

Contempto, -ere, -tempf, -temptum, despise, scorn.
36

Contendó, -ere, -tendi, -teutum, strive, struggle,
contend, hasten. 29

Contineo, -ere, -tami, -teutum, hold together, keep,
enclose, restrain, contain. 21
contingo, -ere, -tigi, -tactum, touch closely, befall, fall to one's lot
contrā, prep. + acc., against. 19
contundō, -undere, -undī, -ūsum, beat, crush.
bruise, destroy. 36
conturbō (1), throw into confusion
converto, -ere, -verti, -versum, turn around, cause to turn
convocō (1), call together, convene
cōplā, -ae, f., abundance, supply; cōplae, -ārum, supplies, troops, forces. 8
cōpiōsē, adv. fully, at length, copiously
Corinthus, -i, Corinth
cornū, -us, n., horn. 20
corona, -ae, f., crown
corpus, -poris, n., body. 7
corfigo, -ere, -rexi, -rectum, make right, correct
corroboro (1), strengthen
corrumpo, -ere, -rupi, -ruptum, ruin, corrupt
cotidiē, adv., daily, every day. 36
eras, adv., tomorrow. 5
creator, -toris, m., creator
creatura, -ae, f., creature (late Lat.)
crebcr, -bra, -brum, thick, frequent, numerous
credo, -ere, credidi, creditum, believe, trust. 25; dat. 35
ereō (I), create. 12
crescō, -ere, crevī, cretum, increase. 34
credēlis, -e, cruel
crustulum, -i, n., pastry, cookie
cubiculm, -i, n., bedroom, room
culpa, -ae, f., fault, blame. 5
culpō (1), blame, censure. 5
cultura, -ae, f., cultivation
cum, conj. with subj., when, since, although; with ind., when. 31
cum, prep. + abl., with. 10
cunctātō, -onis, f., delay
cunctātor, -onis, m., delay

cunctor (I), delay
cupidītis, -tītis, f., desire, longing, passion; cupidity, avarice. 10
 cupidō, -dīnis, f., desire, passion. 36
cupidus, -a, -um, desirous, eager; fond; gen., desirous of, eager for. 39
cupīō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītum, desire, wish, long for. 17
cūr, adv., why. 18
cūra, -ae, f., care, attention, caution, anxiety. 4
cūrō (1), care for, attend to; heal, cure; take care. 36
curō, -ere, currū, currum, run, rush, move quickly. 14
cursus, -ūs, m., running, race; course. 28
curus, -a, -um, curved, crooked, wrong

custōlā, -ae, f., protection, custody; pl., guards. 32
custōs, -ōdis, m., guardian, guard

damō (1), condemn
Dāmocles, -is, m., Damocles, an attendant of Dionysus
dē, prep. + abl., down from, from; concerning, about. 3
defa, -ae, f. (lat. and abl. pl. deābus), goddess. 6
dēbō, -ere, -ūī, -ītum, owe, ought, must. 1
dēbilitō (1), weaken
dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, decide, settle, decree. 36
décentō (1), fight it out, fight to the finish, contend
decimus, -a, -um, tenth. 15
dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, deceive
decor, -ōris, m., beauty, grace
dēcrētum, -i, n., decree
dēdēcō (1), dedicate. 28
dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, ward off, defend, protect. 20
dēficīō, -ere, -fēcī, -fēctum, fail
dēgustō (1), taste
dēhinc, adv. then, next. 25
dēinde, adv., thereupon, next, then. 18
dēlectātiō, -onis, f., delight, pleasure, enjoyment. 27
dēlectō (1), delight, charm, please. 19
dēlecō, -ere, dēlevī, dēlētum, destroy, wipe out, erase. 17
dēlibērō (1), consider, deliberate
dēmēns, gen. -mentis, adj., out of one's mind, insane, foolish
dēmitō, -ere, -mītī, -mītum, let down, lower
dēmōnstrō (1), point out, show, demonstrate. 8
Dēmosthenēs, -is, m., Demosthenes, the most famous Greek orator, 4th cen. B.C.
dēnique, adv., at last, finally. 29
dēns, dentis, m., tooth
dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, put down, lay aside
dēportō (1), carry off
dēsiderērō (1), desire, long for. miss. 17
dēsidērōsus, -a, -um, lazy
dēsinō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītum, cease, leave off. 34
dēsiplā, -ere, act foolishly
destinatus, -a, -um, resolved, resolute, firm. 16
detrimentum, -i, n., loss, detriment. 4
dec, -i, m. (voc. sg. decus, nom. pl. dei or di, dat. and abl. pl. des), god. 6
devoc (1), call down or away. 20
dextero, -tra, -trum, right, right-hand. 20
diabolus, -I, devil. 37
dilexi, -ere, -stinctum, esteem, love. 13
dilectum, lead; consider, regard; prolong. 8
dulcis, -e, sweet, pleasant, agreeable. 16
domum, conj., while, as long as, at the same time that; until. 8

dummodo, conj., with subj. provided that, so long as. 32
dum, duae, duo, two. 15
duró (1), harden, last, endure. 32
durus, -a, -um, hard, harsh, rough, stern, unfeeling, hardy, tough, difficult. 29
dux, ducis, m., leader, guide, commander, general. 23

E

é. See ex.

ecclesia, -ae, f., church (ecclesiastical Lat.). 9
educô (1), bring up, educate. 23
ediscô, -ere, -duxi, -ductum, lead out. 8
eftero, -ferre, exitu, elatum, carry out; bury; lift up, exalt. 16
efficî, -ere, -fectum, accomplish, perform. 16
emoveo, -ere, move away, remove. 16
ego, mei, I. 11
eydidor, -T, -gressus sum, go out, depart. 34
eicio, -ere, -duxi, -ductum, lead out. 8
elephantus, -i, m., elephant. 31
elloquentia, -ae, f., eloquence. 16
emendô (1), correct, emend. 16
euno, -ere, emu, emptum, buy. 31
enumo, -ere, -movi, -mòtum, move away, remove. 31
enim, pospositive conj., for, in fact, truly. 9
Emilus, -i, m., Quintus Ennius, early Roman writer. 29
enumerô (1), count up, enumerate. 29
eò, -re, -I (or iú), infm., go. 37
epigramma, -mutis, n., inscription, epigram. 16
epistula, -ae, f., letter, epistle. 16
eques, equitis, m., horseman. 16
error, -roris, m., error, mistake

equitatus, -as, m., cavalry
equus, -i, m., horse. 23
erga, prep. + acc., toward. 38
ergo, adv. therefore
eripio, -ere, -ripui, -relltum, snatch away, take away, rescue. 22
erro (1), wander, err, go astray, make a mistake, be mistaken. 1
erro, -roris, m., a going astray, error, mistake
et, conj. and; even (= etiam); et ... et, both ... and. 2
etiam, adv., even, also. 1
ext, conj., even if (et-si), although. 38
exemplar, -plaris, n., model, pattern, original. 14
exemplum, -i, n., example, model
exeo, -ere, -ii, -itum, go out, exit. 37
exercitus, -is, m., army. 32
exigo, -igere, -egi, -actum, drive out, force out, extract, drive through, complete, perfect. 36
eximius, -a, -um, extraordinary, excellent
exitium, -i, n., death; often pl., the Fates. 29
exteriores, -eris, adv., outside, beyond, outside
familia, -ae, f., household, family. 19
fabula, -ae, f., story, tale; play. 24
facile, adv., easily. 32
facilis, -ae, f., easy; agreeable, affable. 16
facio, -ere, feci, factum, make, do, accomplish, 10; passive: fi, fieri, factus sum. 36
factum, -i, n., deed, act, achievement. 13
facultas, -tatis, f., ability, skill, opportunity, means
falsus, -a, -um, false, deceptive
fama, -ae, f., rumor, report; fame, reputation. 2
família, -ae, f., household, family. 19
fá (indecl.), n., right, sacred duty; fá est, it is right, fitting, lawful
fateor, -eri, fassus sum, confess, admit. 34
fatio (1), weary, tire out. 40
fatum, -i, n., fate; death; often pl., the Fates. 29
faucés, -ium, f. pl., jaws, narrow passage.
feliciter, adv., happily. 32
felix, gen. -félis, adj., lucky, fortunate, happy. 22
femina, -ae, f., woman. 3
fenestra, -ae, f., window. 21
ferél, adv., almost, nearly, generally
feró, ferre, tolli, fócutum, bear, carry, bring; suffer, endure, tolerate; say, report. 31
ferox, gen. -rócis, adj., fierce, savage. 25
ferrum, -i, n., iron, sword. 22
ferus, -a, -um, wild, uncivilized, fierce
festina, -tió, -tinis, f., haste
festinó (1), hasten, hurry
fides, -ei, f., faith, trust, trustworthiness, fidelity; promise, guarantee, protection. 22
flava, -ae, f. (flatus and obl. pl. flábus), daughter. 3
flixus, -i, m., son. 3
finis, -is, m., end, limit, boundary; purpose; finis, -iun (boundaries) territory. 21
flé, fieri, factus sum, occur, happen; become, be made, be done. 36
firmus, -a, -um, firm; strong; reliable. 38
fiamma, -ae, f., flame, fire
fleó, -ere, flevi, fletum, weep
fluctus, -ūs, m., billow, wave
flūmen, -inis, n., river
flōs, -cre, flōxī, flōxum, flour
for, fārī, fātus sum, speak (prophetically), talk, foretell.
foris, adv., out of doors, outside.
fortis, -a, -um, strong, brave.
forun, -a, f., form, shape, beauty.
formā, -ae, f., out of doors.
fors, forūs, -i, chance, fortune.
forsan, adv., perhaps.
forsūsc, m., perhaps.
fortēs, fortis, -a, -um, chance, fortune.
fortūnā, -ae, f., fortune, luck.
fortūnātus, -a,-um, fortunate, happy.
fortūnātus, -a,-um, lucky, fortunate, happy.
fortūne, adv., perhaps.
fortrīcius, -ae, f., form, shape, fashion.
fortūna, -ae, f., chance, fortune, luck.
fortīnus, -a,-um, fortunate, happy.
forum, -i, n., market place, forum.
frater, -tris, m., brother.
frons, frontis, f., forehead, brow, front.
frūctus, -ūs, m., fruit; profit, benefit, enjoyment.
frugalitas, -tatis, f., frugality.
frustrā, adv., in vain.
frugia, -ae, f., flight.
frugēs, -ae, f., flight, flighting, flight.
frugēs, -ae, f., flighting, flight.
frugiō, -ere, frugiōsum, flee, hurry away.
glus, -crēs, f., front, brow, forehead.
fulgère, fulsī, flash, shine.
fulgeō, -ere, fulgiōsum, flee, hurry away.
fulgūscus, -ae, f., flighting, flight.
glōria, -ae, f., glory, fame.
grādus, -ēs, -a, m., a Greek.
grātia, -ae, f., gratitude, favor, grātias agere + dat., to thank.
grāus, -a, -um, pleasing, agreeable; grateful.
gravis, -ēs, -a, m., heavy, weighty; serious, important;
severe, grievous.
grāvitas, -tatis, f., weight, seriousness, importance, dignity.
grāvis, -ēs, -a, m., heavy, weighty; serious, important;
severe, grievous.

G

Gaius, -ī, m., Gaius, a common praenomen (first name); usually abbreviated to C. in writing.
Gallus, -i, m., a Gaul. The Gauls were a Celtic people who inhabited the district which we know as France.
gaudēsc, gaudēre, gāvisus sum, be glad, rejoice.
gaudium, -i, n., joy, delight.
genius, -ae, -a, m., twin.
gēns, gentis, f., clan, race, nation, people.
genius, -ī, n., knee.
gēnus, generis, n., origin, kind, type, sort, class.
gērō, -ere, gēsī, gēstum, carry; carry on, manage, conduct, wage, accomplish, perform.
glādus, -ī, m., sword.
idem, eadem, idem, the same. 11

in,
iminitus, -a, -urn, unpunished, unrestrained,
immodicus, -a, -um, beyond measure, moderate,
immedius,
impressum, -ii, -sum, lead in, introduce,
imperiosus, -a, -um, powerful, domineering,
imperium, -i, n., power to command, supreme power, authority, command, control. 24

ineo, -ere, implevi, implētum, fill up, complete
imprēminis, adv., especially, particularly
imprōvīdis, -a, -um, improvident
implōdēns, gen. -dentis, adj., shameless, impudent
implōdēnter, adv., shamelessly, impudently
implōditus, -a, -um, unpunished, unrestrained, safe
in, prep. + abl. in, on, 3; + acc. into, toward, against. 9

inānis, -e, empty, vain
incertus, -a, -um, uncertain, unsure, doubtful
inciπū, -ere, -ēpī, -ceptum, begin, commence. 17
includēdō, -ere, -clīstis, -clīsum, shut in, inclose
incorruptus, -a, -um, uncorrupted, genuine, pure
incrēdibilis, -e, incredible
indicē (1), indicate, expose, accuse
indignus, -a, -um, unworthy
indicēdo, -ere, -duō, -ductum, lead in, introduce,
induce
industria, -ae, f., industry, diligence
industrius, -a, -um, industrious, diligent
ineo, -ere, -ītum, go in, enter. 37
infectō, -ere, play the fool, trifle
inexpugnābilis, -e, impregnable, unconquerable
infantium, -ae, f. infancy
inferē, -ōrum, m. pl., those below, the dead
inferō, -ferre, inuillum, bring in, bring upon,
inflict
infinitus, -a, -um, unlimited, infinite
infirmus, -a, -um, not strong, weak, feeble. 38
inflammō (1), set on fire, inflame
infortūnium, -i, n., misfortune, disaster. 10
infringēns, -e, -gentis, adj., huge. 16
infringō, -a, -um, unpleasant, ungrateful
iniciō, -ere, -iēci, -iectum, throw on or into, put on; inspire
inimicus, -i, m., (personal) enemy
iniquus, -a, -um, unequal, unfair, unjust
initium, -i, n., beginning, commencement. 33
infringō, -a, -um, injust. 10
inops, gen. -opis, adj., poor, needy
inquam. See inquit.
inquit, defective verb, he says, placed after one or more words of a direct quotation: other forms:
inquam, I say, inquis, you say. 22

insania, -ae, f., insanity, folly
insciēns, gen. -entis, unknowing, unaware
inscribō, -ere, scripsi, -scriptum, inscribe, entitle
insidiae, -arum, l., ambush, plot, treachery. 6
insōlita, -ae, f., insolent, untamed, rude, rude
insulā, -ae, i., island. 23
insurgō, -ere, -surrēxi, -surrēctum, rise up
integer, -gra, -grum, untouched, whole, unhurt
intellegō, -ere, -intus, -intum, understand. 11
interemptus, -a, -um, unquiet
inter, prep. + acc. between, among. 15
intercplō, -ere, -cplē, -cplētum, intercept
interdum, adv., at times, sometimes
interēa, adv., meanwhile
interfício, -ere, -fēci, -fectum, kill, murder. 37
interrogātīō, -ōnis, f., interrogation, inquiry
intrēō (l), walk into, enter
intrōdūcē, -ere, -ducētum, lead in, introduce
iunctus, adv., within
invādō, -ere, -vāsi, -vāsum, enter on, move against, assail
invenīō, -ère, -venītum, come upon, find. 10
inventor, -ōris, m., inventor
invenīō (l), track out, investigate
inventus, -a, -um, conquering; conquering
invidē, -ère, -vidī, -visum, be envious; be jealous
invidiā, -ātis, f., envy, jealousy, hatred. 31
invisus, -a, -um, unseen, invisible
intrecāssiō, -onis, f., intercept
introductus, -a, -um, introduced, admitted
interficiō, -ere, -ficiētum, kill, murder. 37
interdum, adv., meanwhile
it, n., it
itaque, adv., and so, therefore. 15
ius, iōris, n., right, justice, law. 14
it, iārum, -ādī, -ārandi, n., oath
iusūs, defective noun, abl. sg. only, m., at the
command of
iusus, -a, -um, just, right. 40
invenis, -is (gen. pl. inventum), m.f., a youth, young person
invē, -āre, -vēri, -vētum, help, aid, assist; please. 4

lābor, -ī, lápsus sum, slip, glide
labor, -ōris, m., labor, work, toil. 7
labōrō (l), labor; be in distress. 21
labus, -i, n., lip
laecessō, -ere, -ēvi, -ētum, harass, attack
lacrima, -ae, f., tear. 40
lacunār, -āris, n., paneled ceiling
lactāns, gen. -lactantis, adj., rejoicing
lactus, -a, -um, happy, joyful
Lātīnus, -a, -um, Latin. 22
ludātor, -ōris, m., praiser
laudō (l), praise. 1
laus, laudis, f., praise, glory, fame. 8
lector, -ōris, m., lector, -ae, f., reader. 36
lectus, -i, m., bed
legātus, -i, m., ambassador, deputy
legiō, -onis, f., legion
legō, -ere, -ligi, -licium, pick out, choose; read. 18
levis, -e, light, easy, slight, trivial. 37
lenta, adv., slowly
Lentulus, -ī, m., P. Cornelius Lentulus Sura, chief
conspirator under Catiline, left in charge of the
conspiracy when Catiline was forced to flee
from Rome
Lesbia, -ae, f., Lesbia, the name which Catullus
gave to his sweetheart
levīs, -ēri, light; easy, slight, trivial. 17
lēx, légis, f., law, statute. 26
libella, -e, m., little book. 17
libenter, adv., with pleasure, gladly. 38
liber, -era, -erum, free. 5
liber, -erī, m., book. 6
libelūlis, -e, of, relating to a free person; worthy of
a free man, decent, liberal, generous. 39
liberūlis, -ūlatis, f., generosity, liberality
liberator, -ōris, m., liberator
liberō, adv., freely. 32
libēri, -ōrum, m.pl., (one's) children
libēri (l), free, liberate. 19
libertas, -ātis, f., liberty, freedom. 8
mīrō, -āri, -ātus sum, marvel at, admire, wonder. 35
mīrūs, -a, -um, wonderful, surprising, extraordinary
mīscēō, -ere, miscēi, mixtum, mix, stir up, disturb. 18
misen, -era, -erum, wretched, miserable, unfortunate. 15
miserē, adv., wretchedly
misericordia, -ae, /, pity, mercy
mitesco, -cre, become or grow mild
mitis, -e, mild, gentle; ripe
mitto, -ere, misi, missum, send, let go. II
modo, adv., now, just now, only; modo ... modo, at one time ... at another
modus, m., measure, bound, limit, manner, method, mode, way. 22
moenia, -ium, n. pl., walls of a city. 29
molclus: -a, -11m, troublesome, disagreeable, annoying
mollis, -e, soft, mild, weak
moneo, -ere, -uī, -itum, remind, warn, advise, 1;
monitum ut + subj. 36
monitiō, -onis, I, admonition, warning
mons, montis, m., mountain. 20
monstrum, -I, fl., portent; monster
monumentum, -i, n., monument.

mora, -ac, I, delay. 4
morbus, -I, m., disease, sickness. 9
moriōl', -I, mortuus sum, die. 34
mors, mortis, I, death. 14
mortālis, -e, mortal. 18
mortuos, -a, -um, dead. 28
mōs, moris, m., habit, custom, manner;
mūrēs, mūrōrum, habitats, morals, character. 7
moveō, -ere, mōvēi, mōtum, move; arouse, affect. 18
mox, adv., soon. 30
muller, -cris, f., woman. 39
multō (1), punish, fine
multum, adv., much
(mcomp. plius; superl. plūrimus). 32
multus, -a, -um, much, many. 2
(mcomp. plius; superl. plūrimus. 27)
mundus, -i, m., world, universe. 21
mūnimentum, -i, n., fortification, protection
mūniō, -ere, -ivī, -itum, fortify, defend; build (a road)
mīmus, -meris, n., service, office, function, duty;
gift
mīs, mūris, m./f., mouse
Mīsa, -ae, f., a Muse (one of the goddesses of poetry, music, etc.)
mūtātūs, -ōnīs, f., change
mūtō (1), change, alter; exchange. 14

N
nām, conj. for. 13
nārō (1), tell, narrate, report. 24
nāscor, -I, aitus sum, be born, spring forth, arise. 34
nāsus, -I, m., nose. 40
nāta, -ae, f., daughter. 29
nātālis, -is (a: diēs), m., birthday
nātūra, -ae, f., nature. 10
nauta, -ae, m., sailor. 2
navigātūs, -ōnis, f., voyage, navigation
navigō (1), sail, navigate. 17
nāvīs, -is, f., ship. 21
nē, conj. with subj. that ... not, in order that ... not, in order not to, 28, 36; that, 40; adv. in nē ... quidem, not ... even. 29
-ne, enclitic added to the emphatic word at the beginning of a question the answer to which may be either “yes” or “no.” It can be used in both direct and indirect questions. 5
 nec. See neque.
necessarius, -a, -um, necessary
necessa, indecl. adj., necessary, inevitable. 39
 nectar (1), murder, kill. 7
nefēs (indecl.), n., wrong, sin
neglegō, -ere, -ēxī, -ēctum, neglect, disregard. 17
negō (1), deny, say that ... not. 25
nēmōs (nullius), nēmīnī, nēminus, (nūllō, -ā), m./f., no one, nobody. 11
nepōs, -pōs, m., grandson, descendant. 27
neque or nec, conj., and not, nor;
neque ... neque, neither ... nor. 11
nesciō, -ire, -ivi, -itum, not to know, be ignorant. 25
neuter, -tra, -trum, not either, neither. 9
nēve, and not, nor (used to continue ut or nē + subj.)
niger, -gra, -grum, black
nīhil (indecl.), n., nothing, 1, 4
nīhilum, -ī, n., nothing
nīmis or nīminum, adv., too, too much, excessively. 9
nīsit, if ... not, unless, except. 19
nīvecus, -a, -um, snowy, white
noccō, -ēre, nocui, noctūm + dat., do harm to, harm, injure. 35
nōsō, nōle, nōtus, not . . . wish, be unwilling. 32
nōmen, nōmīnis, n., name. 7
nōs, adv., not. 1
nōndum, adv., not yet
nōnme, interrog. adv., which introduces questions expecting the answer "yes." 40
nōnnōlus, -a, -um, some, several
nōnus, -a, -um, ninth
nōs. See ego.
nōsēa. See cogōnōsēa.
osten, -ēra, -trum, our, ours. 5
notārīus, -ī, m., writer of shorthand, stenographer
notūm, indirect. adj., nine. 15
novus, -a, -um, new, strange. 7
nōx, Noctis, I, night. 26
nobes, -is, /, cloud. 14
nōbō, -ere, nōpsi, nūlturn, cover, veil; + dat. (of a bride) be married to, marry. 35
nōllnfillus, -3, -um, some, several
nōllns, -a, -um, ninth
nōnumquam, sometimes
nōmē, interrogative adv.: (1) introduces direct questions which expect the answer "no"; (2) introduces indirect questions and means whether. 40
nōmēr, -īs, /, number. 3
numquam, adv., never. 8
nunc, -ē, now, at present. 6
num, adv., now, present. 6
numīō (1), announce, report, relate. 25
nūstium, -ī, m., messenger, message
nūper, adv., recently. 12
nūtrītus, -āre, -ītus, nourish, rear
no, -ere, nocē, nocētiūm, do harm to, harm, injure. 35
nocē, -āre, nocētiūm, do harm to, harm, injure. 35
ōdī, ōdissē, ōsūm (ěfective vb.), hate. 20
ōdium, -ī, n., hatred. 38
ōdipūs, -ōdis, m., Oedipus, Greek mythical figure said to have murdered his father and married his mother
officīō, -īs, oblūtum, offer. 31
officium, -ī, n., duty, service, 4
ōlim, adv., at that time, once, formerly; in the future. 13
omittō, -ere, -nūssī, -missūm, let go, omit
omnīus, adv., wholly, entirely, altogether. 40
omnipotēns, gen. -entīs, adj., all-powerful, omnipotent
omnis, -ē, every, all. 16
ōmerō (1), burden, load
ōmus, onerīs, n., burden, load
ōpera, -ae, f., work, pains, help
ōpinor, -āri, -atūs, suppose. 40
ōpertūtus, -āre, -pūsitum, set against, oppose
opportūnē, adv., opportunely
opportūnum, -ā, -um, fit, suitable, advantageous, opportune
oprīnō, -ere, -pressī, -pressūm, suppress, overwhelm, overpower, check. 23
opprobriō, -īs, n., reproach, taunt, disgrace
oppugnō (1), fight against, attack, assault, assail. 39
ops, opīs, f., help, aid, opēs, opium, power, resources, wealth. 33
optīmus. See bonus
optō (1), wish for, desire
ōpus, operīs, n., a work, task; deed, accomplishment. 38
ōrātō, -ānis, f., speech. 38
ōrātor, -ōris, m., orator, speaker. 23
ōrbēs, -ēs, n., circle, orb; orbīs terrūrum, the world, the earth
ōrdō, ōrdinis, m., rank, class, order
ōrī, -īri, orūs sum, arise, begin, proceed, originate
ōrsō (1), equip, furnish, adorn. 39
ōrō (1), speak, plead; beg, beseech, entreat, pray. 36
ōs, ōris, n., mouth, face. 14
ōsculum, -ī, n., kiss. 29
ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentūm, exhibit, show, display. 23
ōstium, -ī, n., entrance, door

O

ō, interjection, Oh! Oh! 2
obēbē (1), be hard, persist, endure
obōe, -ere, -ī, -itum, go up against, meet; die. 37
ōbicē, -ere, -ābē, -āctum, offer; cite (as grounds for condemnation)
oblectō (1), please, amuse, delight; pass time pleasantly. 36
obbruō, -ere, -rūtum, overwhelm, destroy
oblēquīum, -ī, n., compliance
obstinātus, -ā, -um, firm, resolved
occē, -ēnīs, f., occasion, opportunity. 28
occōdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cāsūm (cadō, fall), fall down; die; set (of the sun). 31
occōdiō, -ere, -cītūm, -cāsūm (cadō, cut), fall down; kill, slay
occultē, adv., secretly

occupō (1), seize
ōculus, -ī, m., eye. 4
ōdī, ōdissē, ōsūm (ěfective vb.), hate. 20
ōdium, -ī, n., hatred. 38
ōdipūs, -ōdis, m., Oedipus, Greek mythical figure said to have murdered his father and married his mother
officīō, -īs, oblūtum, offer. 31
officium, -ī, n., duty, service, 4
ōlim, adv., at that time, once, formerly; in the future. 13
omittō, -ere, -nūssī, -missūm, let go, omit
omnīus, adv., wholly, entirely, altogether. 40
omnipotēns, gen. -entīs, adj., all-powerful, omnipotent
omnis, -ē, every, all. 16
ōmerō (1), burden, load
ōmus, onerīs, n., burden, load
ōpera, -ae, f., work, pains, help
ōpinor, -āri, -atūs, suppose. 40
ōpertūtus, -āre, -pūsitum, set against, oppose
opportūnē, adv., opportunely
opportūnum, -ā, -um, fit, suitable, advantageous, opportune
oprīnō, -ere, -pressī, -pressūm, suppress, overwhelm, overpower, check. 23
opprobriō, -īs, n., reproach, taunt, disgrace
oppugnō (1), fight against, attack, assault, assail. 39
ops, opīs, f., help, aid, opēs, opium, power, resources, wealth. 33
optīmus. See bonus
optō (1), wish for, desire
ōpus, operīs, n., a work, task; deed, accomplishment. 38
ōrātō, -ānis, f., speech. 38
ōrātor, -ōris, m., orator, speaker. 23
ōrbēs, -ēs, n., circle, orb; orbīs terrūrum, the world, the earth
ōrdō, ōrdinis, m., rank, class, order
ōrī, -īri, orūs sum, arise, begin, proceed, originate
ōrsō (1), equip, furnish, adorn. 39
ōrō (1), speak, plead; beg, beseech, entreat, pray. 36
ōs, ōris, n., mouth, face. 14
ōsculum, -ī, n., kiss. 29
ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentūm, exhibit, show, display. 23
ōstium, -ī, n., entrance, door
paedagogus, -i, m., slave who attended children
(particularly at school)
pagānisus, -i, m., a countryman, peasant; pagan
pallam, adv., openly, plainly
pallia, -ae, f., palm
pānis, -is, m., bread
pār, gen. pāris, adj., equal, like. 32
parco, -ere, -uici, -vi, -virum + dat., be lenient
to, spare. 35
parens, -eundi, m., parent. 28
pareo, -ere, -i, -ici, be obedient to, obey. 35
paries, -ietis, f., wall
parīō, -ere, -uici, -vitum, beget, produce
paro (I), prepare, provide; get, obtain. 19
pars, partis, f., part, share; direction. 14
parum, adv., little, too little, not very (much)
(comp. minus; superl. minimē). 32
parvus, -a, -urn, small, little, (comp.
minor; superl. minimus). 32
pater, -eris, m., father. 12
patientia, -ae, f., suffering; patience, endurance. 12
patiōr, -i, -icis, m., suffer, endure; permit.
34
patris, -ae, f., fatherland, native land, (one's)
country. 2
patronus, -i, m., patron, protector
pauca, -ae, f., a few, a few. 3
pauper, gen. -peris, adj., of small means, poor. 32
panpertūs, -tūs, f., poverty, humble
circumstances. 32
pāx, pācis, f., peace. 7
pecō (I), sin, do wrong
pecus, -toris, n., breast, heart. 35
pecūnia, -ae, f., money. 2
pecor. See malus.
peelu, -ere, pepullus, pulsus, strike, push; drive out,
banish. 24
P
per, prep. + acc., through; with reflex. pron. by. 13
perciplō, -ere, -cipi, -ceptum, gain, learn, perceive
perdō, -ere, perdīdi, pendītum, destroy, ruin, lose
perēdu, -ere, -itum + dat., be pleasing to,
please. 35
philosophia, -ae, f., philosophy, love of wisdom. 2
philosophus, -i, m., philosopher.
33
piger, -ogra, -grum, lazy, slow, dull
pīpiō (I), chirp, pipe
piscator, -toris, m., fisherman
piscis, -is, m., fish
placeā, -ere, -ui, -itum + dat., be pleasing to,
please. 35
plicā (I), placate, appease
plánē, adv. plainly, clearly
platea, -ae, f., broad way, street
Platā, -ōnis, m., Plato, the renowned Greek
philosopher
plēbs, plēbis, f., the common people, populace,
plebeians. 33
plēnus, -a, -um, full, abundant, generous. 6
plūtum. See multus.
plūs. See multus.
poēta, -ae, f., poem
possum, posse, be able, can, have power. 6
post, prep. + acc., after, behind. 7
posteā, adv. afterwards. 24
postspōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, put after, consider
secondary
postquam, conj., after
posttrēnum, adv. after all, finally; for the last
time. 40
potēns, gen. -tantis, pres. part. of possum as adj.,
able, powerful, mighty, strong. 16
potēstās, -ōnis, f., power, ability, opportunity
potior, -īri, potius sum + gen. or abl., get
possession of, possess, hold
potius, adv. rather, preferably
prae, prep. + abl., in front of, before. 26
praebeā, -ere, -ūl, -ātum, offer, provide. 32
praecāptum, -i, n., precept
praecławrus, -a, -um, noble, distinguished, famous,
remarkable
praecferō, -ferre, -tuli, -ātum, bear before, display;
place before, prefer
praecātādo, -ere, -āctā, -āctum, put in charge of
praemittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, send ahead or
forward
praｅcium, -ī, n., reward, prize. 35
praesidium, -ī, n., guard, detachment, protection
praestō, -āre, -stāt, -stātum, excel (+ dat.); exhibit,
show, offer, supply. 28
praesum, -esse, -fui, be at the head of, be in
charge of
praeter, prep. + acc., besides, except; beyond,
past. 40
praetereō, -ere, -ātum, go by, pass, omit
praelocitus, -a, -um, perf. part. of praetereō as adj.,
past
premō, -ere, presūl, presuum, press; press hard,
pursue. 23
pretium, -ī, n., price, value, reward
prex, precis, f., prayer
prōnō, adv. at first, first, at the beginning. 30
primūm, adv., first, in the first place; quam
primūm, as soon as possible
primus. See prior. 27
princeps, gen. -cipis, chief; m. f. noun, leader
 prince, emperor. 28
principium, -ī, n., beginning. 12
prior, prūs, comp. adj., former, prior; primus, -a,
-um, first, foremost, chief, principal. 27
prītius, -a, -um, ancient, former, previous. 38
prīus, adv. before, previously
privātus, -i, m., private citizen
prō (1), deprive
prō, prep. + abl., in front of, before, on behalf of,
in return for, instead of, for, as. 12
probitās, -ōnis, f., uprightness, honesty, probity. 18
probō (1), approve; recommend; test. 27
prōconsul, -ūnis, m., proconsul, governor of a
province
prōditor, -ōris, m., betrayer, traitor
praelium, -ī, n., battle
prōferō, -ferre, -tuli, -ātum, bring forward,
produce, make known, extend
prōficiō, -āre, -fectus sum, set out, start. 34
profer, -āri, -ātus sum, speak out
prōfūndō, -ere, -fūdi, -fūsum, pour forth
prohibēō, -ere, -ūl, -ātum, prevent, hinder, restrain,
prohibit. 20
prōlicēō, -ere, -lēcī, -lēctum, throw forward or out
prōmissīō, -mītere, -missī, -missum, send forth,
promise. 32
prōnuntiō (1), proclaim, announce; declaim;
pronounce. 20
prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, put forward,
propose
properus, -a, -um, one’s own, peculiar, proper,
personal, characteristic
proper, prep. + acc., on account of, because of. 5
prōtius, adv. immediately. 22
prōvideō, -ere, -vidī, -visum, foresee, provide, make
provision
prōximus, -a, -um (superl. of propior), nearest, next
prōxīnus, gen. -śe, -ātis, adv. wise, prudent
prōudenter, adv. wisely, discreetly
seductor, seriōs, senectus, semel, Socrates, singultim, sicut, servo

silva, -ae, j., forest, wood

sidus, -deris, signum, -i, 11., sign, signal, indication; seal.

si, servitus, simplex, socius, -ii, sitiōs, sinister, -tra, -trom, left, left-hand; harmful, ill-omened.

sitio, -ire, -ivi, be thirsty

socius, -ii, m., companion, ally

Sócrates, -is, m., Socrates
sui (sibi, se, se), reflex. pron. of 3rd pers. himself, herself, itself, themselves. 13
sum, esse, fut, futurum, be, exist. 4; est, sum may mean there is, there are. 1
sumus, -ae, f., highest part, sum, whole
sumus, -a, -um. See superus.
sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmpsum, take, take up, assume
sūmpsum, -us, expense, cost
suppel·lex, -lectilis, f., furniture, apparatus
supерbus, -a, -um, arrogant, overbearing, haughty, proud. 26
superior. See supems.
superno (1), be above, have the upper hand, surpass, overcome, conquer. 5
superus, -a, -um, above, upper; superi, -orum, the gods (comp. superior, -ius, higher; superl. supremus, -a, -um, last, or summus, -a, -um, highest). 27
supplicium, -ii, punishment
supra, adl. and prep. + acc., above
suprēmus. See supems.
surculus, -i, m., shoot, sprout
surgo, -ere, surgii, surgum, get up, arise. 29
suscipio, -ere, -cepi, -ceptum, undertake. 25
suspendo, -ere, -pendi, -pensum, hang up, suspend; interrupt. 38
sustilleo, -ere, -ui, -ten tum, hold up, sustain, endure
suus, -a, -um, reflexive possessive (13rd pers., his own, her own, its own, their own. 13
synagoga, -ae, l, synagogue Syrachae, -ae, f. pl., Syracuse. 37
T
tabella, -ae, f., writing tablet; tabellae, -arum, letter, document
taceo, -ere, -ui, -itum, be silent, leave unmentioned. 28
tāllo, -e, such, of such a sort. 34
tam, adv. used with adv. and adv. so, to such a degree; tam . . . quam, so . . . as. 29
tamen, adv. nevertheless, still. 8
tamenquam, adv., as it were, as if, so to speak. 29
tandem, adv., at last, finally
tangō, -ere, tētīgī, tēctum, touch. 21	tantum, adv., only. 26	tātus, -a, -um, so large, so great, of such size. 29
tardus, -a, -um, slow, tardy
tēctum, -tum, roof, house
tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctum, cover, hide, protect
temerītās, -śūtis, f., rashness, temerity
temperantia, -ae, f., moderation, temperance, self-control
tempestās, -śūtis, f., period of time, season; weather, storm. 15
templum, -i, n., sacred area, temple
temptātiō, -onis, trial, temptation
tempestas, -pords, n., time; occasion, opportunity. 7
tendō, -ere, tendit, tenta or tentam, stretch, extend; go
teneō, -ere, -ui, tentum, hold, keep, possess, restrain. 14
tenē, -ere, tīvī, tīvum, rub, wear out
terra, -ae, f., earth, ground, land, country. 7
tereō, -ere, -ui, -itum, frighten, terrify. 1
terrēus, -a, -um, third. 15
tēmes, -ătis, n., theme Themistocles, -is, m. Themistocles, celebrated Athenian statesman and military leader who advocated a powerful navy at the time of the Persian Wars
timē, -ēre, -ui, fear, be afraid of, be afraid. 15
timin, -ōrīs, m., fear. 10
titulus, -i, m., label, title; placard
toga, -ae, f., toga, the garb of peace
tolerō (1), bear, endure, tolerate. 6
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sustulatum, raise, lift up; take away, remove, destroy. 22
tondēō, -ere, totondii, tōnsum, shears, clip
tondor, -ōrīs, m., barber
tōnūrīus, -a, -um, of or pertaining to a barber, barber’s
tot, indecl. adj., that number of, so many. 40
tūtus, -a, -um, whole, entire. 9
tractō (1), drag about; handle, treat, discuss
trādō, -ere, -diū, -ditum, give over, surrender, hand down, transmit, teach. 33
tragēdia, -ae, f., tragedy
trahō, -ere, trāxi, trāctum, draw, drag; derive, acquire. 8
trāns, prep. + acc., across. 14
trānsnēsēō, -ere, -īi, -itum, go across, cross; pass over, ignore. 39
trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -tātum, bear across, transfer, convey
trānsitus, -ūs, m., passing over, transit, transition. 39
trādēcum, indecl. adj., thirteen. 15
tremō, -ere, tremūi, tremble
trepidē, adv. with trepidation, in confusion
très, tria, three. 15
triginta, indecl. adj., thirty
tristis, -e, sad, sorrowful; joyless, grim, severe. 26
triumphus, -i, m., triumphal procession, triumph
Trolli, -ae, f., Troy. 23
Trojanus, -a, -um, Trojan
tu, tui, you. 11
Tullius, -ii, m., Cicero’s family name
tum, adv., then, at that time; thereupon, in the next place. 5
tumulus, -i, m., mound, tomb
tum, tii, tui, you. 11
Tumulus, -ii, m., mound, tomb
turba, -ae, l., uproar, disturbance; mob, crowd, multitude. 14
turpis, -e, ugly; shameful, base, disgraceful. 26
tumultus, -i, m., tumult, uproar, disturbance
turris, -ae, l., tower, castle, fortress
utilitas, -tatis, l., usefulness, advantage
ut, conj.; A. with subj., introducing (1) purpose, in order that, that, to (28); (2) result, so that, that (29); (3) passive noun clauses, to, that (36); (4) fear clauses, that ... not (40); B. with indic. just as, as, when. 24
utus, -usus sum, enjoy, experience. 34
utrum ... an, conj., whether ... or. 30
uxor, -onis, f., wife. 7

V
vaco (1), be free from, be unoccupied
vacus, -a, -um, empty, devoid (of), free (from)
vacus, -a, -um, empty, devoid (of), free (from)
vaec, -ere, -ui, -itrum, be strong, have power; be well, fare well; vale (valēte), good-bye. 1
valētūdō, -onis, f., health, good health, bad health
varius, -a, -um, various, varied, different
vehēmēns, gen. -entis, adj., violent, vehement, emphatic, vigorous
vehō, -ere, vexi, vector, carry, convey
vel, conj. or (an optional alternative)
velāx, gen. -ēlis, adj., swift
vēndō, -ere, vēndidi, vēnditum, sell. 38
venia, -ae, f., kindness, favor, pardon
vēniō, -ere, vēni, vēnum, come. 10
ventiō, -i, come often
ventus, -i, m., wind. 30
Venus, -ēnis, f. Venus, goddess of grace, charm, and love
verba, -rum, n. pl., blows, a beating
verbērum, -i, m., word. 5
verē, adv., truly, really, actually, rightly
vercor, -ēri, veritus sum, show reverence for, respect, be afraid of, fear. 40
Vergilius, -ii, m., Virgil, the Roman epic poet
vērtīs, -ālis, f., truth. 10
vērsō, adv., in truth, indeed, to be sure, however. 29
versus, -ās, m., line, verse. 20
vestīs, -āris, l., cocoon, cloak
vestum, -i, m., undertaker
vestor, -era, -ārum, your, yours (pl.). 6
vestīs, -āris, l., cloak
vestus, gen. -eris, adj., old. 34
via, -ae, f., road, street, way. 10
vicius, -i, m., vicina, -ae, f., neighbor. 21
vicissituödō, -onis, f., change, vicissitude
victor, -ōris, m., victor
victōris, -ae, f., victory. 8
victus, -ās, m., living, mode of life
vidēō, -ere, vidī, visum, see, observe;
understand, 1; videor, -ēri, visus sum, be seen, seem, appear. 18
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vigilō (1)</td>
<td>be awake, watch, be vigilant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vigor, -gōris</td>
<td>m., vigor, liveliness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>villa, -ae, f.</td>
<td>villa, country house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vincō, -ere, vici, victum</td>
<td>conquer, overcome. 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vinculum, -i, n.</td>
<td>bond, chain. 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vīsum, -i, n.</td>
<td>wine. 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vir, virī, m., man, hero.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virgō, -ginis, j.</td>
<td>maiden, virgin. 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virtūs, -tūtis, f.</td>
<td>manliness, courage; excellence,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtue, character, worth. 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vis, visum, f.</td>
<td>force, power, violence; virēs, virium,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>strength. 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vita, -ae, f.</td>
<td>life, mode of life. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vitīōsus, -a, -um</td>
<td>full of vice, vicious. 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vitium, -i, n.</td>
<td>fault, vice, crime. 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vītō (1)</td>
<td>avoid, shun. 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vivō, -ere, vīxt, viecum</td>
<td>live. 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vivus, -a, -um</td>
<td>alive, living. 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vīx, adv.</td>
<td>hardly, scarcely, with difficulty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocō (1)</td>
<td>call, summon. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volō, velē, volūt, wish, want, be willing, will.</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volō (1)</td>
<td>fly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voluntārius, -a, -um</td>
<td>voluntary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voluntās, -tātis, f.</td>
<td>will, wish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voluptās, -tātis, f.</td>
<td>pleasure. 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vōs.</td>
<td>See th.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vōx, vocis, f.</td>
<td>voice, word. 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vulgus, -i, n.</td>
<td>(sometimes m.), the common people, mob, rabble. 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vulnus, -neris, n.</td>
<td>wound. 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vultus, -ūtis, m.</td>
<td>countenance, face. 40.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

X

Xenophōn, -phonitis, m. Xenophon, Greek general and author
Abbreviations

Authors and Works Cited

Aug., St. Augustine (Confessions)
Caes., Caesar
   B.C., Bellum Civile
   B.G., Bellum Gallicum
Catull., Catullus (Poems)
Cic., Cicero
   Am., De Amicitia
   Arch., Oratio pro Archia
   Att., Epistulae ad Atticam
   Cat., Orationes in Catilinam
   De Or., De Oratore
   Div., De Divinatione
   Fam., Epistulae ad Familiares
   Fin., De Finibus
   Inv., De Inventione Rhetorica
   Leg., De Legibus
   Marcell, Oratio pro Marcello
   Off., De Officiis
   Or., Orator
   Phil., Orationes Philippicae in M. Antonium
   Pis., Oratio in Pisonem
   Planc., Oratio pro Plancio
   Q. Fr., Epistulae ad Q. Fratrem

Rep., De Re Publica
Sen., De Senectute
Sex. Rosc., Oratio pro Sex. Roscio
Sull., Oratio pro Sulla
Tusc., Tusculanae Disputationes
Verr., Actio in Verrem
Enn., Ennius (Poems)
Hor., Horace
   A.P., Ars Poetica (Ep. 2.3)
   Ep., Epistulae
   Epod., Epodes
   Od., Odes (Carmina)
   Sat., Satires (Sermones)
Juv., Juvenal (Satires)
Liv., Livy (Ab Urbe Condita)
Lucr., Lucretius (De Natura Rerum)
Martial, Martial (Epigrams)
Macr., Macrobius (Saturnalia)
Nep., Nepos
   Att., Atticus
   Cim., Cimon
   Mil., Miltiades
   Ov., Ovid
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ger.</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gk.</td>
<td>Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ibid.</td>
<td>in the same place (Lat. <em>ibidem</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>id.</td>
<td>the same (Lat. <em>idem</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.e.</td>
<td>that is (Lat. <em>id est</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imper.</td>
<td>imperative mood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impers.</td>
<td>imperf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperf.</td>
<td>imperfect tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ind. quest.</td>
<td>indirect question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ind. state.</td>
<td>indirect statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indecl.</td>
<td>indeclinable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indef.</td>
<td>indefinite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indic.</td>
<td>indicative mood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inf.</td>
<td>infinitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interj.</td>
<td>interjection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introd.</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irreg.</td>
<td>irregular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It.</td>
<td>Italian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L.A.</td>
<td><em>Locif Antiquif</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lat.</td>
<td>Latin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L.I.</td>
<td><em>Locif Immunitif</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lit.</td>
<td>literally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>locative case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m./M./masc.</td>
<td>masculine gender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mid.</td>
<td>middle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n./N./neut.</td>
<td>neuter gender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no(s).</td>
<td>number(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>nominative case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj.</td>
<td>object or objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p.</td>
<td>page(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part.</td>
<td>participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass.</td>
<td>passive voice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>perfect (present perfect) tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pers.</td>
<td>person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plupf.</td>
<td>pluperfect (past perfect) tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.R.</td>
<td>Practice and Review (sentences)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prep.</td>
<td>preposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>present tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pron.</td>
<td>pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purp.</td>
<td>purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ref.</td>
<td>reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel.</td>
<td>relative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russ.</td>
<td>Russian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sc.</td>
<td>supply, namely (Lat. <em>sic</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sent.</td>
<td>sentence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sg.</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sp.</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spec.</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.A.</td>
<td><em>Sententiae Antiquae</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.S.</td>
<td>Supplementary Syntax (p. 442-45)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj.</td>
<td>subjunctive mood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superl.</td>
<td>superlative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s.v.</td>
<td>under the word (Lat. <em>sub verbum</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vb(s).</td>
<td>verb(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>vocative case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocab.</td>
<td>Vocabulary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vs.</td>
<td>as opposed to, in comparison with (Lat. <em>versus</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w.</td>
<td>with</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

Page references to illustrations are italicized.

Ab
  with ablative of personal agent, 118–19, 143
  in place constructions, 256
Ablative case
  absolute, 155–57
  of accompaniment, 92, 142
  as adverbial case, 10
  with cardinal numerals, 99, 143
  of cause, 444
  of comparison, 173
  of degree of difference, 444
  of description, 285
  forms of. See Declension
  of manner, 92, 142, 143
  of means or instrument, 91–92, 143
  of personal agent, 118–19, 143
  of place from which, 130, 262
  of place where, 142, 262
  with prepositions, 18n, 58n
      summary of uses, 142–43
  without prepositions, summary of uses, 143
  of separation, 130–31
  with special deponent verbs, 237–38
  of specification, 443–44
  of time when or within which, 99–100, 143,
      263
  usage of, 91–92
Accents, xlv, 4
Accompaniment, ablative of, 92, 142
Accusative case
  as direct object, 10
  of duration of time, 263
  forms of. See Declension
  infinitive in indirect statement with, 164–66
  of place to which, 262
Achilles, 87

Active periphrastic, 204
Active voice, 2
  deponent verbs, 234–38
  infinitive, 162–63
  participles, 147–48
  perfect system. See Perfect system, active voice
  personal endings for, 2–3
  present system
      1st and 2nd conjugation, 3–5, 31–33
      3rd conjugation, 49–51, 62–64
      4th conjugation, 62–63
  subjunctive, 187, 194
Ad
  with gerundive or gerund, 278
  in place constructions, 262
Adjectives
  1st declension, 11–12, 14, 25–26, 33, 57–58
  2nd declension, 17–18, 24–26, 33, 57–58
  3rd declension, 104–06, 172–73
  agreement of, 12, 23
  comparison of, 171–73. See also Superlatives, of
      adjectives
      declension, 172–73, 181
      formation, 171–72
      irregular formation, 180–81
      summary of forms, 450
      usage and translation, 172–73
  dative case with, 245–46
  demonstrative, 55–57
      idem, eadem, idem, 70–71
      is, ea, id, 70
  with genitive ending in -ius and dative ending in
      -i, 57–58
  interrogative, 124–25
  predicate, 26–27
  reflexive possessives, 84
Adjectives (cont.)

- substantive, 27
- summary of forms, 447
- verbal. See Gerundive; Participles
- word order and, 19, 20

Adverbs, 19

- ablative case and, 10
- comparison of, 220–21
  - irregular, 220–21
- summary of forms, 450
- definition of, 10
- formation of, 219–20

Aeneas, 154, 288–91

Agamemnon, 53

Agent
- ablative of, 118–19, 143
- dative of, 157–58

Agreement
- of adjectives, 12, 25–26
- of relative pronouns, 110–12
- subject-verb, 13

Alexander the Great, 87, 232

Allobroges, 133, 259

Alma-Tadema, Sir Lawrence, 114

Alphabet, xxxix–xli

Anglo-Saxon language, xxviii–xxxi

 Antony, Marc, 72, 288

Apposition, 19

Archaising Period, xxxvii

Aristotle, 232

Arria, 281

Articles, 1 La, 60

Athena (Minerva), 154

Auditi, conjugation of, 63

Augustan Period, xxxv–xxxvi, 25

Augustine, Saint, xxxvii

Augustus, xxxv–xxxvi, 21, 23, 159, 161, 217

Bacon, Francis, xxxviii

Bede, Caedmon's Anglo-Saxon Verses and the Difficulties of Translation, 301–02

Browne, Sir Thomas, xxxiv

Brutus, Lucius, 79

Caecina Paetus, 281, 348

Caesius (Rufus), 183

Caesar, xxxv 79, 128, 161, 176, 266, 272, 274
  - The Nations of Gaul, 176

Cesar of Heisterbach, The Devil and a Thirteenth-Century Schoolboy, 302–03

Capio, conjugation of, 64

Cardinal numerals, 97–99, 451
  - ablative with, 99, 143
  - genitive with, 99

Carthage, 40, 154, 159, 290

Cases
- definition of, 9
  - of nouns, 9–11, 13. See also Ablative case; Accusative case; Dative case; Genitive case; Locative case; Nominative case; Vocative case

Catharine (Lucius Sergius Catilina), 73, 95, 133, 208, 210, 218, 240, 258–59

Catullus, xxxiii–xxxiv, 201, 209, 266, 304–07
  - Alley Cat, 183
  - Ask Me if I Care, 273
  - Bids a Bitter Farewell to Lesbia, 128
  - Bids His Girlfriend Farewell, 15
  - B.Y.O.B., etc., etc., 231–32
  - Death of a Pet Sparrow, 305–06
  - Dedicates His Poetry Book, 47
  - A Dedication, 304–05
  - Disillusionment, 292–93
  - Frater Ave, Alque Velé, 306–07
  - Give Me a Thousand Kisses!, 216
  - How Many Kisses?, 199, 305
  - I Love Her . . . I Love Her Not, 258
  - On Lesbia's Husband, 242–43
  - Promises, Promises!, 281
  - Thanks a Lot, Tully!, 183–84

Causi, with genitive phrase, 278

Cause, ablative of, 444

Characteristic, relative clauses of, 269–70

  - The Aged Playwright Sophocles Holds His Own, 127

Alexander the Great and the Power of Literature, 87

On Ambition and Literature, Both Latin and Greek, 146

anecdotes from, 322–25

The Arrest and Trial of the Conspirators, 311–16

The Authority of a Teacher's Opinion, 87

On Contempt of Death, 319–20

Cyrus' Dying Words on Immortality, 101

Death of a Puppy (Example of an Omen), 322

Denounces Catilina in the Senate, 73

Derivation of "Philosophus" and Subjects of Philosophy, 294–95
Cicero (cont.)

De Vilia et Marte, 316-20
On the Ethics of Waging War, 54
Evidence and Confession, 208-09
Fabian Tactics, 102
Get the Tuscan Country House Ready, 325
How Demosthenes Overcame His Handicaps, 293
Imagines the State of Rome Itself Urging Him to Punish the Catilinarian Conspirators, 95
The Incomparable Value of Friendship, 66
Literature: Its Value and Delight, 320-22
Marcus Quinto Fratri S., 267
A More Positive View About Immortality, 317-19
The Most Pitiful Speech I've Ever Heard!, 273
The Nervousness of Even a Great Orator, 200
Oh, Give Me a Figgy Sprig, 273
On the Pleasures of Love in Old Age, 114
Quam Multa Nono Desiderari, 323
The Rarity of Friendship, 29
Socrates' "Either-Or" Belief, 316-17
Sorry, Nobody's Home!, 251
The Sword of Damocles, 294
Testimony Against the Conspirators, 258-59
Themistocles; Fame and Expediency, 324-25
Thermopylae: A Soldier's Humor, 35-36
Too Conscientious (An Example of Irony), 322-23
Two Examples of Roman Wit, 273
Two Letters to, 274
The Tyrant Can Trust No One, 293-94
Urges Catiline's Departure from Rome, 133
On the Value and the Nature of Friendship, 295-96
The Value of Literature, 290
Vitriolic Denunciation of the Leader of a Conspiracy Against the Roman State, 307-11
On War, 296-97
What Makes a Good Appetite, 323-24
Your Loss, My Gain, 232-33
Ciceronian Period, xxxiii-xxxv
Cimon, 225
Cincinnatus, 168
Circus Maximus, 120
Claudius, 247
Clauses
participial phrases translated as, 159
subjunctive, 186
conditional sentences, 229
cum, 211-12
fear, 285
indirect questions, 204
jussive, 188

Clauses (cont.)

jussive noun, 253
proviso, 223
purpose, 189, 196, 253
relative clause of characteristic, 269
result, 196-97
subjunctive, 124
in indirect discourse, 444
Cleopatra, 273
Cognate languages, xxviii-xxvii
Collatinus, 47
Commands
imperative, 5, 50, 51, 63, 188, 213, 223, 237, 261
jussive noun clauses, 253-54
jussive subjunctive, 188
negative, noli and, 223
Comparison (comparative degree)
ablative of, 173
of adjectives, 171-73. See also Superlatives, of adjectives
declension, 172-73, 181
formation, 171-72
summary of forms, 450
usage and translation, 172-73
of adverbs, 220-21
irregular, 220-21
summary of forms, 450
Complementary infinitive, 38-39
Compound verbs, dative case with, 247-48
Conditional sentences, 228-30
indicative, 228-29
subjunctive, 229
Conjunction. See also First conjunction; Fourth conjunction; Second conjunction; Third conjunction
definition of, 2
of deponent verbs, 234-37
personal endings for. See Personal endings
summary of forms of, 452-60
Conjunction, cum as, 211
Consonants, pronunciation of, xlii-xliii
Constantine, 88
Cornelius Nepos, 47
Cum, with ablative case, 92, 142
Cum clauses, 211-12
Cyrus the Great, 101
Dante, xxviii
Dative case
with adjectives, 245-46
Dative case (cont.)
  of agent, 157-38
  with compound verbs, 247-48
  forms of. See Declension
  general use of, 10
  of possession, 443
  of purpose, 443
  of reference or interest, 270
  with special verbs, 246-47

De
  ablative case with, 99, 143
  in place constructions, 262

Declension, xxxvii
  1st, 11-12, 14n
    adjectives, 11-12, 25-26, 33, 57-58
  2nd, 17-19
    adjectives, 33, 57-58
    masculines ending in -cr, 18
    masculines ending in -us, 17-18
    neuters, 24-26
  3rd, 43-44
    adjectives, 104-06, 172-73
    i-stem nouns, 89-91, 105
  4th, 129-30
  5th, 141-42
  of adjectives, summary of forms, 447
  definition of, 11
  of gerund, 276-77
  of participles, 148-49
  of pronouns
    demonstratives, 55-56, 70-71
    intensive, 85
    personal, 67-68
    reflexive, 82-83
    relative, 110
  use of term, 11n

Definite article, 11a, 60

Degree of difference, ablative of, 444

Demonstratives
  hic, ille, iste, 55-57
  idem, eadem, idem, 70-71
  is, ea, id, 70
  usage and translation of, 56-57

Demosthenes, 132, 189

Deponent verbs, 234-38
  ablative case with, 237-38
  definition of, 234
  principal parts and conjugation of, 234-37
  semideponent, 237
  summary of forms of, 455-57

Derived languages, xxviii-xxxii

Descartes, 30

Description, genitive and ablative of, 285-86

Dies Irae, 146

Dionysius, 40, 101, 113, 183, 266

Diphthongs, pronunciation of, xli

Direct object, 2, 19
  accusative case and, 10

Direct questions, -ne, num, and nonne, 284

Domus, in place constructions, 262

Dufresnoy, Charles, 208

Dummodo, 223

Early Period of Latin literature, xxxii-xxxiii

Ego/ego
  declension of, 67-68
  usage of, 68-70

Endings
  1st declension, 11-12, 19
  2nd declension, 17-19, 24-25
  3rd declension, 43-44, 105
  4th declension, 129-30
  5th declension, 141
  1-stem, 89-91, 105
  personal
    deponent verbs, 234
    perfect system active, 77
    present system active, 2
    present system passive, 116-17

English language, xxvii-xxxii

Ennius, 102, 251

Eo, conjugation of, 260-61

-er adjectives, 1st and 2nd declension, 33

Erasmus, xxviii

Etruria, 227

Etymology. See also last section of each chapter
  definition of, 15-16

Ex
  ablative case with, 99, 143
  in place constructions, 262

Fabius Maximus, Quintus, 102, 232-33

Fear clauses, 285

Fero, conjugation of, 212-13

Fifth declension, 141-42
  summary of forms of, 446

Finite verbs, 82

Fio, conjugation of, 254-55

First conjugation
  future indicative
First conjugation (cont.)
active, 31–32
passive, 117
imperative, 5
imperfect indicative
active, 31–32
passive, 117
present indicative
active, 4
passive, 116–17
present infinitive
active, 3
passive, 117
subjunctive, 186–87, 194, 202–03
summary of forms of, 452–55
First declension, 11–12, 14
2nd declension compared with, 19
adjectives, 11–12, 25–26
ending in -er, 33
summary of forms of, 446–47
Fourth conjugation, 62–63
future indicative
active, 63
passive, 135–36
imperative, 63
imperfect indicative
active, 63
passive, 136
present indicative
active, 62
passive, 135
present infinitive
active, 63
passive, 136
subjunctive, 186–87, 194, 202–03
summary of forms of, 452–55
Fourth declension, 129–30
summary of forms of, 446
Fronto, xxxvii
Fundanus, Minicius, 80
Future indicative
deponent verbs, 235
of possum, 38
of sum, 37
Future indicative active
1st and 2nd conjugation, 31–32
3rd conjugation, 49, 50
4th conjugation, 63
Future indicative passive
1st and 2nd conjugation, 117
Future indicative passive (cont.)
3rd and 4th conjugation, 135–36
Future passive participle. See Gerundive
Future perfect
active, 77–78
deponent verbs, 235
passive, 122
Future tense, translation of, 32

Gaul, 176
Gellius, xxxvii
Gender
1st declension, 12
2nd declension, 17–18
neuters, 24–26
3rd declension, 44, 90
4th declension, 129
5th declension, 141
Genitive case
with cardinal numerals, 99
of description, 285
forms of. See Declension
general use of, 10
of material, 442
objective, 69n, 442–43
partitive (of the whole), 69n, 98–99
possessive, 10
of the whole (partitive genitive), 69n, 98–99
Gerundive (future passive participle), 147, 276, 281
gerund compared with, 277
in passive periphrastic, 155, 157
phrases, 277–78
Gerunds, 276–78, 281
decension of, 276–77
gerundive compared with, 277
phrases, 277–78
gladiators, 243–44
Golden Age, xxxiii–xxxv, xxxviii
Greek alphabet, xxxix
Greek literature, xxxiii

Hannibal, 102, 281
Hannibal, 102, 281–82
Hic
decension of, 55, 56
is compared with, 56
use and translation of, 56–57
Homer, 87, 114, 145
Horace, xxxv, 7, 185, 291, 337-43
Aurea Mediocritas—The Golden Mean, 338-40
Autobiographical Notes, 298-99
“Carpe Diem,” 337
Contemplates an Invitation, 7
De Cupidititate, 159-60
Dies Festus, 342
The Grass Is Always Greener, 22
Integer Vitae, 337-38
Labuntur Annis, 340-41
Longs for the Simple, Peaceful Country Life on His Sabine Farm, 299
A Monument More Lasting than Bronze, 290, 342-43
The Satirist’s Modus Operandi, 160
A Sense of Balance in Life, 341-42
Who Is Truly Free?, 258
Humes, in place constructions, 262
Idem, eadem, idem, 70-71
Ille
declension of, 55, 56
cytymology and, 60
is compared with, 70
use and translation of, 56-57
Imperative, 188
1st and 2nd conjugation, 5
3rd conjugation, 50, 51, 63
4th conjugation, 63
definition of, 2
of deponent verbs, 237
nōs, 223
Imperfect indicative
deponent verbs, 235
of possum, 38
of sum, 37
Imperfect indicative active
1st and 2nd conjugation, 31-33
3rd conjugation, 50-51, 63
4th conjugation, 63
Imperfect indicative passive
1st and 2nd conjugation, 117
3rd and 4th conjugation, 136
Imperfect subjunctive, 194-95
deponent verbs, 236
usage and translation of, 195-96
Imperfect tense
perfect (present perfect) tense compared with, 77-78
translation, 32-33
Impersonal verbs, 264n
In
with ablativus case, 142
in place constructions, 262
Indefinite article, 11n, 60
Indicative, xxxviii
definition of, 2
future. See Future indicative; Future indicative active; Future indicative passive
imperfect. See Imperfect indicative; Imperfect indicative active; Imperfect indicative passive; Imperfect tense
present. See Present indicative; Present indicative active; Present indicative passive
subjunctive compared with, 186
Indicative conditional sentences, 228-29
Indirect command (jussive noun clauses), 253-54
Indirect object, 10, 19
Indirect questions, 204
Indirect statement (indirect discourse)
definition of, 164
infinitive in, with accusative subject, 164-66
list of verbs followed by, 167
subordinate clauses in, 444
Indo-European languages, xxviii-xxx, xxxii
Infinitive, 162-66
complementary, 38-39
definition of, 3n
of deponent verbs, 236-37
to distinguish the conjugations, 3, 50
in indirect statement, with accusative subject, 164-66
irregular verbs
possum, posse, potui, 38
sum, 26
objective, 445
present passive, 117, 136
usage of, 163
Instrument (means), ablative of, 91-92
Intensive pronouns, 85
Interest, dative of, 270
Interrogative adjectives, 124-25
Interrogative pronouns, 123-24
Intransitive verbs, 26. See also sum
-sī verbs
conjugation of, 62-64
participles, 148
subjunctive, 186-87, 194
Ipse, ipsa, ipsum, 85
Irregular verbs
ēb, 260-61
fērīb, 212-13
Irregular verbs (cont.)

- fit, 254–55
- milō, 222
- nōlō, 222–23
- passum, 38, 195
- sum, 26, 37, 157, 195
  summary of forms of, 457–60
- volō, 221–22

Is, ea, id
  declension of, 58
  as demonstrative, 70
  usage of, 68–70

Isidore of Seville, xxxviii
  The Days of the Week, 192

Iste, declension of, 56
I-stem nouns of 3rd declension, 89–91, 105
Iubeō, with jussive noun clauses, 254

Jerome, Saint, xxxvii
Johnson, Samuel, xxxvii
Jussive noun clauses, 253–54
Jussive subjunctive, 188
Juvenal, xxxvi–xxxvii, 36, 210
  Explains His Impulse to Satire, 109

Latin language, in linguistic history, xxvii–xxxii
Latin literature
  brief survey of, xxxii–xxxix
  "vulgar," xxvii, xxxvii–xxxviii

Lentulus, 208, 258–59
Leonidas, 35–36
Lesbia, 183, 199, 216, 242
Linking verbs, intransitive, 26. See also sum
Livy, xxxv
  On the Death of Cicero, 326
  Laments the Decline of Roman Morals, 40–41
  The Rape of Lucretia, 47
Locative case, 262
Lucretia, rape of, 47
Lucretius, xxxiii

Maccari, Cesare, 73
Macrobius, Facétiae (Witticisms), 217
Macrons, xli, 4
Maecenas, 7, 21
Mann
  conjugation of, 222
  with jussive noun clauses, 254
Manlius, 133
Manner, ablative of, 92, 142, 143

Martial, xxxvi, 353–54
  A Covered Dish Dinn'er, 209
  Dianulus Still Buries His Clients, 81
  Even Though You Do Invite Me—I'll Come!, 354
  Fake Tears, 354
  The Good Life, 177
  To Have Friends One Must Be Friendly, 192
  His Only Guest Was a Real Boar, 35
  "I Do," "I Don't!," 251
  "I Do Not Love Thee, Doctor Fell," 40
  I Don't Cook for Cooks!, 258
  Issa, 355
  It's All in the Delivery, 114
  Large Gifts—Yes, but Only Bait, 301
  A Legacy-Hunter's Wish, 209
  Maronilla Has a Cough, 251
  Message from a Bookcase, 128
  Note on a Book by Lucan, 273
  Note on a Copy of Catullus' Carmina, 209–10
  Oh, I'd Love to Read You My Poems... Not!, 258
  The Old Boy Dyed His Hair, 353
  Paete, Non Dolet, 281
  Please... Don't!, 226
  Please Remove My Name from Your Mailing List!, 191
  Pretty Is as Pretty Does, 242
  Procrastination, 354
  The Quality of Martial's Book, 257
  The Rich Get Richer, 232
  Ringo, 217
  Store Teeth, 94–95
  Summer Vacation, 252
  On a Temperamental Friend, 109
  Thanks... but No Thanks!, 266
  A Vacation... from You!, 226
  And Vice Is Not Nice!, 242
  A Visit from the Young Interns, 145
  What's in a Name?, 335
  When I Have... Enough!, 59
  You're All Just Wonderful!, 200

Material, genitive of, 442
Matthew, The Lord's Prayer, 301
Means (instrument), ablative of, 91–92, 143
Medieval Period, xxxvii–xxxviii
Middle English, xxxii
Milo, 215
Milton, John, xxxvii
Minerva (Athena), 154
Mood
  definition of, 2
  imperative, 2, 5, 50, 63, 237
Mood (cont.)
indicative, 2
subjunctive, 2, 186-87

More, Sir Thomas, xxxviii
Mycenae, 53

-ae, num, nōmine, in direct questions, 284-85
Nepos, xxxv, 47, 327-37
Aristides the Just, 333-35
The Character of Cimon, 225
Hannibal; The Second Punic War, 297-98
Hannibal and the Beginnings of the Second Punic War, 281-82
Miltiades and the Battle of Marathon, 327-30
Themistocles and the Battle of Salamis, 330-33
Timoleon, 335-37
Newton, Sir Isaac, xxxviii

Nātā
conjugation of, 222-23
with jussive noun clauses, 254
negative commands and, 223

Nominative case
forms of. See Declension
as subject, 10

Nouns
1st declension, 11-12
2nd declension, 17-19, 24-25
3rd declension, 43-44, 89-91
4th declension, 129-30
5th declension, 141-42
in apposition, 19
cases of, 9-11, 13. See also Ablative case; Accusative case; Dative case; Declension; Genitive case; Nominative case; Vocative case

Predicate, 26-27
substantive adjectives as, 27
summary of forms, 446-47

Verbal. See Gerund; Infinitive; Supine

Number, 1, 13

Numerals, 97-98, 451
cardinal, 97-99, 451
ablative case, 99, 143

ordinal, 98, 451

Objective genitives, 69, 442-43

Objective infinitive, 445

Object of verb
direct, 2, 10, 19
indirect, 10, 19

Odo de Cerlinton, Who Will Put the Bell on the Cat’s Neck!, 302

Ordinal numerals, 98, 451
Orestes, 192
Ovid, xxxvi, 291

Asks the Gods to Inspire His Work, 250-51
On Death and Metamorphosis, 121

Paetus, Caecina, 281
Pannini, Giovanni, 96

Paradigms
meaning and use of, 3
said aloud, 3-4

Participles (participial phrases), 147-53. See also Gerundive
ablative absolute, 155-57
decension of, 148-49
of deponent verbs, 236-37
passive periphrastic, 155, 157
translation of
as clauses, 150
as verbal adjectives, 147, 149-50

Partitive genitive, 69

Passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum), 155, 157

Passive voice, 2
definition of, 118
infinitive, 162-63
participles in, 147-48
perfect system, 122

subjunctive, 203
usage and translation, 123

present system
1st and 2nd conjugation, 116-18
3rd and 4th conjugation, 135-36

subjunctive, 188, 194

Patristic Period, xxxvii

Perfect indicative
active, 77
deponent verbs, 235
passive, 122

imperfect tense compared with, 77-78
translation of, 77-78

Perfect subjunctive
active, 202
deponent verbs, 236
passive, 202-03

Perfect system
active voice, 75-78

perfect active stem and, 76-77
principal parts, 75-76
usage, translation and distinction from the imperfect, 77-78

definition of, 75
Perfect system (cont.)
  passive voice, 122–23
    usage and translation, 123
  subjunctive, 202–03
Periodic style, 19–20
Periphrasis, definition of, 157n
Persia, 35–36, 132, 215
Persius, 291
Person, 1, 13
Personal agent, ablative of, 118–19, 143
Personal endings
  active voice, 2–3, 77
  passive voice, 116
Personal pronouns, 67–70
  declension of, 67–68
  definition of, 67
  reflexive pronoun compared with, 83–84
  usage of, 68–70
Petrarach, xxxviii
Petrarchus, xxxvi
  Trimalechito's epitaph, 266–67
Phaedrus, 343–46
  The Ass and the Old Shepherd, 345
  De Cupiditâte, 160
  The Fox and the Tragic Mask, 343–44
  The Fox Gets the Raven's Cheese, 344–45
  The Other Person's Faults and Our Own, 343
  Sour Grapes, 343
  The Stag at the Spring, 344
  The Two Mules and the Robbers, 345–46
Phonetic change, 435–36
Phrases
  gerund and gerundive, 277–78
  participial
    ablative absolute, 155–57
    translation, 150
Pittoni, Giovanni, 102
Place constructions, 261–62
  from which, 130, 143, 262
  to which, 262
  where, 142, 262
Plato, 152
Plautus, xxxiii, xxxvii
Pliny, xxxvi, 346–53
  On Behalf of a Penitent Freedman, 351–52
  Concern about a Sick Freedman, 350–51
  Delights of the Country, 346–47
  Endows a School, 300
  Faithful in Sickness and in Death, 348–49
  Happy Married Life, 347–48
  Selection of a Teacher, 352–53
Pliny (cont.)
  A Sweet, Brave Girl, 349–50
  What Pliny Thinks of the Races, 300
  Why No Letters?, 300
  Writes to Marcellinus about the Death of Fundanus' Daughter, 80–81
Pluperfect (past perfect), usage of, 78
Pluperfect indicative
  active, 77
  deponent verbs, 234
  passive, 122
Pluperfect subjunctive, 202–03
  deponent verbs, 236
Plûs, declension of, 181
Polyphemus, 108
Pompeii, 40, 42, 209
Pompey, 274
Pontilianus, 191
Possession
  dative of, 443
  genitive case and, 10
Possessives, reflexive, 84
Possium
  with complementary infinitive, 38–39
  conjugation of, 38
  subjunctive, 195
Postpositive word, 34
Præeneste, 139
Predicate, definition of, 26
Predicate adjectives, 26–27
Predicate nouns, 26–27
Prefixes, 436–40
Prepositions, xxxvii
  with ablative case, 10–11, 18n, 68n, 142–43
  with accusative case, 10
  definition of, 10n
  object of, 10
  in place constructions, 261–62
Present imperative active
  1st and 2nd conjugation, 5
  3rd conjugation, 50, 51, 63
  4th conjugation, 63
Present imperative passive, deponent verbs, 237
Present indicative
  deponent verbs, 235
  of possium, 38
  of sum, 26
Present indicative active
  1st and 2nd conjugation, 4
  3rd conjugation, 49, 50, 62
  4th conjugation, 62
Present indicative passive
1st and 2nd conjugation, 116-17
3rd and 4th conjugation, 135-36
Present stems. See Stems of verbs, present
Present subjunctive
congjugation of, 186-87
deponent verbs, 235
of possum, 195
of sum, 195
translation of, 188-89
Present system
1st and 2nd conjugation
imperative, 5
indicative, 3-4, 31-32, 116-18
subjunctive, 186-87, 194
3rd conjugation
imperative, 50, 51
indicative, 49-51, 62-64, 135-36
subjunctive, 186-87, 194
4th conjugation
imperative, 63
indicative, 62-63, 135-36
subjunctive, 186-87, 194
definition of, 75
Pronouns
demonstrative
hie, illa, iste, 55-57
idem, eadem, solum, 70-71
is, ea, id, 70
intensive, 85
interrogative, 123-24
personal, 67-70
decision, 67-68
definition of, 67-68
reflexive pronouns compared with, 83-84
usage, 68-70
reflexive, 82-84
personal compared with, 83-84
relative, 110-12
decision, 110
interrogative adjectives compared with,
124-25
usage and agreement, 110-11
summary of forms of, 448-49
Pronunciation, xxxix-xliv
accent and, xlii-xliv
of consonants, xli
of diphthongs, xli
syllables and, xlii-xliv
of vowels, xli, 4
Propertius, xxxvi

Proviso clauses, 223
Publilius Syrus, xxxv
Purpose, dative of, 443
Purpose clauses, 189, 196
jussive noun clauses compared with, 253
Pylades, 192
Pyrrhus, 168, 170
Pythagoras, 87-88
Quam
with comparative and superlative adjectives, 173
with comparative and superlative adverbs, 220
Questions
direct, -ne, num, and nonae, 284
indirect, 204
Qui, quae, quod
as interrogative adjectives, 124-25
as relative pronouns, 110-12
Quidam, 99
Quintilian, xxxvi
Aristotle, Tutor of Alexander the Great, 232
Raphael, 88
Reading passages. See specific authors
Reference, dative of, 270
Reflexive possessives, 84
Reflexive pronouns, 82-84
personal pronouns compared with, 83-84
Regulus, 280
Relative clauses of characteristic, 269-70
Relative pronouns, 110-12
decision of, 110
interrogative adjectives compared with, 124-25
usage and agreement, 110-12
Result clauses, 196-200
Romance languages, xxix, xxxvii, 441
etymology and, 22, 29-30, 48, 60, 73, 95, 102, 114,
139, 146, 178, 184-85, 193, 200, 275, 282
Rome, 6, 96, 265
Rubicon river, 128, 274
Rūs, in place constructions, 262
Salinator, Marcus Livius, 232-33
Schoenfeld, Johann, 282
Scipio Nasica, 251
Second conjugation
future indicative
active, 31-32
passive, 117
imperfect indicative
active, 31-32
Second conjugation (cont.)
  passive, 117
  present indicative
  active, 4
  passive, 116-17
  present infinitive
  active, 3
  passive, 117
  subjunctive, 186-87, 194, 202-03
  summary of forms of, 452-55
Second declension, 17-19
  1st declension compared with, 19
  adjectives, 25-26
    in -or, 33
    masculines in -is, 17-18
    neuters, 24-26
    summary of forms of, 446-47
Semi-deponent verbs, 237
Seneca, xxxvi, 60
  Claudius’ excremental expiration, 241
  When I Have ... Enough!, 59-60
Separation, ablative of, 130-31, 143
Shakespeare, William, xxxiii
Silver Age, xxxvi-xxxvii
Socrates, 152, 168, 208
Solon, 257
Sophocles, 79, 127
Specification, ablative of, 443-44
Stems of participles, 147-48
Stems of verbs
  perfect active, 76-77
  present
    1st and 2nd conjugation, 3, 5
    3rd conjugation, 50
    4th conjugation, 63
Sub
  with ablative case, 142
  in place constructions, 262
Subject, 19, 26n
  agreement of with verb, 13
  of indicative, accusative case, 164-66
  nominative case as, 10
Subject-object-verb (SOV) pattern, 5
Subjunctive (cont.)
  proviso, 223
  purpose, 189, 196, 253
  relative clause of characteristic, 269
  result, 196-97
  subjunctive by attraction, 258
  definition of, 2, 186
  of deponent verbs, 235-36
  imperfect, 194-97
  usage and translation, 195-96
  perfect, 202-03
  pluperfect, 202-03
  of possum, 195
  present, 186-87, 195
  of sum, 195
  translation of, 188, 195-96, 203
Subordinate clauses, 124
  in indirect discourse, 444
Substantive adjectives, 27
Suffixes, 440-42
Sum
  conjugation of
    future and imperfect indicative, 37
    present indicative, 26
    subjunctive, 195
  with gerundive, 155, 157
  with predicate nouns or adjectives, 26-27
Superlatives
  of adjectives
    declension, 172
    irregular formation, 179-80
    peculiar formation, 178-79
    regular formation, 171-72
    usage and translation, 172-73
  of adverbs, 220-21
Supine, 270-71
Syllables, xliii-xliv
Synopsis, 136
Syntax, 13
Tacitus, xxxvi
Tarquinius Superbus, 47, 159
Tarquinius, Sextus, 47
Tense(s)
  definition of, 2
  future, 31-32, 37, 38, 49, 50, 63, 75, 117, 135-36
  future perfect, 77, 78
  imperfect, 75
  indicative, 31-33, 37, 38, 50-51, 63, 117, 136
  subjunctive, 194-97
  infinitive, 163, 165
Tense(s) (cont.)
participles, 147-48
perfect
indicative, 71-78
subjunctive, 202-03
pluperfect
indicative, 77, 78
subjunctive, 202-03
present, 26, 38, 75
imperative, 5
indicative, 3-5, 38, 49, 50, 62, 116-17, 135
subjunctive, 186-87, 195
sequence of, 204-06
subjunctive, 186
Terence, xxxiii, 48
An Uncle's Love for His Nephew and Adopted Son, 184
Themistocles, 132, 215
Thermopylae, 35-36, 168
Third conjugation, 49-51
future indicative
active, 49, 50
passive, 135-36
imperfect indicative
active, 50-51
passive, 136
-iO verbs, 62-64
present indicative
active, 49, 50
passive, 135
present infinitive
active, 50, 62
passive, 136
subjunctive, 186-87, 194, 202-03
summary of forms of, 452-55
Third declension, 43-44
adjectives, 104-06
usage, 106
i-stem nouns, 89-91, 105
summary of forms of, 446-47
Time constructions, 263
Time when or within ablative of, 99-100, 143, 263
Transitive verbs
definition of, 2
infinitive, 162
participles of, 147
voice and, 2
Translation, 5

Translation (cont.)
of comparative adjectives, 172-73
of demonstratives, 56-57
of future tense, 32
of imperfect tense, 32-33
of is, ea, id, 70
of perfect passive system, 123
of perfect tense, 77
of relative pronouns, 112
of subjunctive, 188, 195-96, 203
Troy, 152-54, 168-70, 191, 289-90

Trends
declension of, 67-68
usage of, 68-70

Unus, etymology and, 60
UNUS NAUTA, 57-58

Verbs. See also Conjugation; Mood; Tense(s); Voice agreement of with subject, 13
auxiliary, xxxviin
characteristics of, 1-2
dative case with compound verbs, 247-48
special verbs, 246-47
depotent, 234-38
summary of forms of, 455-57
finite, 82
intransitive, 26. See also sum
infinitive, 162
irregular. See Irregular verbs transitive, 2
infinitive, 162
participles, 147
word order and, 5, 19-20
Virgil, xxxv, 7, 154, 209, 290-91
The Death of Laocoon . . . and Troy, 168-69
Jupiter Prophesies to Venus the Future Glory of Rome, 288-89
Laocoon Speaks Out Against the Trojan Horse, 152-53
Messianic Elegy, 139
Vis, declension of, 91
Vocative case, forms of. See Declension Voice. See also Active voice; Passive voice
definition of, 2
Volae conjugation of, 221-22
with jussive noun clauses, 254
Vowels, pronunciation of, xli, 4
Vulgate, xxviin, xxxv

West, Benjamin, 192
Whole, genitive of the (partitive genitive), 98–99
Wilson, Thomas, xxxiiin
Word order, 13. 19

Xenophon, 138
Xerxes, 36
Location of the Sententiae Antiquae

1. (1) Pers., Sat. 6.27. (2) Plaut., Most. 1.3.30.
   (3) Suet., Aug. 25. (4) Hor., Sat. 1.2.11.
   (5) Sen., Clem. 1.2.2. (6) Cic., Sest. 67.141.
   (7) Cic., Cat. 4.3. (8) Virg., Aen. 3.121 and
   4.173 and 184. (9) Ter., Heaut. 190 ed didas.
   (10) Cic., Fam. 2.164. (11) Hor., Sat.
   1.9.78. (12) Hor., Sat. 1.10.81–83.
   (13) Cic., Cat. 1.12.30. (14) Cic., Inv. 1.1.1.

2. (1) Plaut., Stich. 5.2.2. (2) Virg., Aen. 3.121.
   (3) Ter., Ad. 5.9.937. (4) Cic., Marcell. 4.12.
   (5) Cic., Ver. 2.4.54. (6) Hor., Sat. 2.7.22–24.
   (9) Cic., Fin. 3.1.2. (10) Sen., Ep. 8.5.
   11.5.16. (14) Hor., Od. 3.11.45. (15) Cic.,
   Fls. 10.22.

3. (1) Cic., Cat. 4.1. (2) Hor., Sat. 2.6.41.
   (3) Phaedr., Fab. I. Prologus 4. (4) Cic.,
   Tusc. 5.3.9. (5) Hor., Sat. 2.7.84 and 88.
   (6) Nep., Cim. 4. (7) Hor., Ep. 1.2.56.
   (8) Sen., Ep. 94.43. (9) Publil. Syc. 56.

4. (1) Cic., Am. 15.54. (2) Ter., Heaut. 2.3.295–
   296. (3) Ter., Ad. 5.9.961. (4) Hor., Sat.
   1.4.114. (5) Proverbial; ep. Cic., Phil. 12.2.5.
   (6) Hor., Od. 2.16.27–28. (7) Sen., De Ira II
   18ff. and III init.; ep. Ter., Phor. 1.4.185.
   (8) Virg., Eck. 5.61. (9) Hor., Sat. 1.1.25.
   (10) Ter., Ad. 4.5.701–702. (11) Catull. 5.7.
   (12) Vulg., Ecleses. 1.15. (13) Cic., Am.
   21.79. (14) Pers., Sat. 6.27. (15) Cic.,
   Cat. 1.4.9.

5. (1) Cic., Cat. 1.9.23. (2) Cic., Cat. 1.13.31.
   (3) Cic., Off. 1.20.68. (4) Ov., Hor. 1.35.
   (5) Cic., Fam. 14.3.1. (6) Ter., Ad. 5.9.937.
   (7) Ter., Ad. 5.9.992–993. (8) Cic., Att. 2.2.
   (9) Sen., Cons. Polyb. 9.6. (10) Ter., Ad.
   5.78. (13) Hor., Ep. 2.3.445–446 (Ars Poetica).

6. (1) Cic., Tusc. 5.20.57. (2) Cic., Tusc. 5.21.61.
   (3) Cic., Cat. 3.1.13. (4) Cic., Cat. 3.12.29.
   (7) Cic., Arch. 3.5. (8) Sen., Ep. 73.16.
   (11) Liv. 27.102. (12) Cic., Cat. 3.12.29.

7. (1) Ter., Heaut. 1.1.77. (2) Vulg., Ecleses. 1.10.
   (3) Hor., Od. 3.1.2–24. (4) Hor., Sat. 2.7.22–23.
   (5) Hor., Ep. 1.16.52. (6) Mart.
   12.6.11–12. (7) Hor., Sat. 1.6.15–16.
   (8) Cic.; ep. graffiti. (9) Sen., Ep. 82.2.
   (10) Cic., Phil. 10.10.20. (11) Hor., Sat.
   1.9.59–60. (12) Cic., Cat. 3.12.29.

8. (1) Ter., Ad. 5.4.863. (2) Ter., Heaut. 3.1.432.
   (3) Laberius; see Macr. 2.7. (4) Cic., Cat.
   3.1.3. (5) Publil. Syc. 507; also Macr. 2.7.
   26.50.1. (9) Cic., Tusc. 1.42.98. (10) Cic.,
   Arch. 11.26. (11) Cic., Marcell. 5.15.
   (12) Hor., Ep. 2.2.65–66. (13) Hor., Ep.

9. (1) Ter., Phor. 4.5.727. (2) Ter., Phor. 4.3.670.
   (3) Ter., Heaut. 4.3.709. (4) Cic., Am.
   27.102. (5) Ter., Phor. 3.3.539. (6) Cic.,
   Cat. 1.13.31. (7) Cic., Cat. 1.4.9. (8) Mart.
   10.72.4. (9) Liv. 22.39.10.

10. (1) Cic., Off. 1.20.68. (2) Ter., Ad. 4.3.593.
    (3) Ter., Ad. 3.2.340. (4) Mart. 6.70.15.
    (5) Cic., Clu. 18.51. (6) Lucr. 6.93–95.
    (13) Cic., Am. 24.89.

11. (1) Hor., Sat. 2.5.33. (2) Ter., Ad. 1.1.49.
    (5) Ter., Hec. 1.2.197. (6) Cic., Cat. 1.8.20.
    (7) Cic., Marcell. 11.33. (8) Cic., Fam.
    1.5.6.2. (9) Liv. 120. (10) Hor., Ep. 2.2.58.

12. (1) Vulg., Gen. 1.1 and 27. (2) Suet., Caes. 37.
    (3) Cic., Cat. 3.5.641. (4) Cic., Sen. 19.68.
    1.1.1. (10) Laberius in Macr. 2.7.

    (3) Cic., Cat. 3.10. (4) Cic., Am. 21.80.

    (3) Virg., Ecl. 2.33. (4) Hor., Sat. 1.1.33–


ABOUT THE AUTHORS

Frederic M. Wheelock (1902–1987) received the A.B., A.M., and Ph.D. degrees from Harvard University. His long and distinguished teaching career included appointments at Haverford College, Harvard University, the College of the City of New York, Brooklyn College, Cazenovia Junior College (where he served as Dean), the Darrow School for Boys (New Lebanon, NY), the University of Toledo (from which he retired as full Professor in 1968), and a visiting professorship at Florida Presbyterian (now Eckerd) College. He published a number of articles and reviews in the fields of textual criticism, palaeography, and the study of Latin; in addition to Wheelock's Latin (previously titled Latin: An Introductory Course Based on Ancient Authors), his books include Wheelock's Latin Reader (previously titled Latin Literature: A Book of Readings) and Quintilian as Educator (trans. H. E. Butler, introd. and notes by Prof. Wheelock). Professor Wheelock was a member of the American Classical League, the American Philological Association, and the Classical Association of the Atlantic States. Biographies of Professor Wheelock authored by Professor Ward Briggs appear in his book, A Biographical Dictionary of American Classicists (Westport, CT: Greenwood Press, 1994), as well as in the Winter, 2003, issue of the Classical Outlook.

Richard A. LaFleur received the B.A. and M.A. in Latin from the University of Virginia and the Ph.D. in Classical Studies from Duke. He has taught since 1972 at the University of Georgia, where he served for 21 years as head of one of the largest Classics programs in North America and has held since 1998 the chair of Franklin Professor of Classics. He has numerous publications in Latin language, literature, and pedagogy, including the books The Teaching of Latin in American Schools: A Profession in Crisis, Latin Poetry for the Beginning Student, Love and Transformation: An Ovid Reader, Latin for the 21st Century: From Concept to Classroom, A Song of War: Readings from Vergil's Aeneid (with Alexander G. McKay), Wheelock's Latin (revised 5th and 6th eds.), Wheelock's Latin Reader (revised 2nd ed.), and (with Paul Comeau) Workbook for Wheelock's Latin (revised 3rd ed.). Professor LaFleur also served as editor of The Classical Outlook (1979–2003) and is past President of the American Classical League (1984–1986). He has been recipient of over one million dollars in grants from the National Endowment for the Humanities and other agencies, and of state, regional, and national awards for teaching and professional service, including, in 1984, the American Philological Association's award for Excellence in the Teaching of Classics.
Wheelock's Latin is better than ever!

Wheelock's Latin, Sixth Edition, Revised
Frederic M. Wheelock • Revised by Richard A. LaFleur

The new, revised sixth edition of Wheelock’s Latin has all the features that have made it the best-selling single-volume beginning Latin textbook: forty chapters with grammatical explanations and readings based on ancient Roman authors • self-tutorial exercises with an answer key for independent study • extensive English-Latin/Latin-English vocabularies • supplementary original Latin readings — unlike other textbooks which contain primarily made-up sentences and passages • etymological aids • maps of the Mediterranean, Italy, and the Aegean area • numerous photographs illustrating aspects of classical culture, mythology, and historical and literary figures presented in the chapter readings.

Also new to the sixth edition, revised, are: further expansion of the English-Latin vocabulary • audio for the chapter vocabularies and other pronunciation aids, online at www.WheelocksLatin.com • an online teacher’s guide and answer key, available to instructors only and password/gatekeeper-protected at www.HarperAcademic.com.

Workbook for Wheelock’s Latin, Third Edition, Revised
Paul T. Comeau • Revised by Richard A. LaFleur

From two of the country’s leading Latinists comes this updated edition of the Workbook for Wheelock’s Latin. Each of the forty lessons presented in this newly revised edition begins with a detailed set of objectives and continues with a series of questions designed to focus directly on the newly introduced grammar, a variety of transformation drills, word and phrase translations, and other exercises designed to test and sharpen the student’s skills. A section on word power focuses on vocabulary and derivatives, and the final section includes reading comprehension questions and sentences for translation practice. Lessons are presented in an easy to read, clear layout, with perforated pages for hand-in homework assignments and space for the student’s name and date.

Wheelock’s Latin Reader, Second Edition
Frederic M. Wheelock • Revised by Richard A. LaFleur

This second edition marks the first time this classic book has ever been significantly revised. Featuring expanded notes, and all new photos and maps, Wheelock’s Latin Reader is the ideal intermediate Latin reader to follow the best-selling Wheelock’s Latin and other introductory texts. It includes extensive selections from writers such as Cicero, Livy, Ovid, Pliny, the Vulgate, Bede, and others, along with useful introductions, translation notes, and a full Latin-English vocabulary.

"[Wheelock’s Latin Reader] is a solid companion to [Wheelock’s Latin] and deserves wide circulation as a practical introduction to the humanism of Ancient Rome."
— The Classical Bulletin

www.WheelocksLatin.com

VOCABULARY CARDS FOR WHEELOCK’S LATIN: Cards for all Wheelock vocabulary plus handy grammar summary available from Bolchazy-Carducci Publishers, 1000 Brown Street, Unit 101, Wauconda, IL 60084 / www.bolchazy.com / orders@bolchazy.com / 847-626-4344
WHEN PROFESSOR FREDERIC M. WHEELOCK'S LATIN first appeared in 1956, the reviews extolled its thoroughness, organization, and conciseness; at least one reviewer predicted that the book "might well become the standard text" for introducing students to elementary Latin. Now, five decades later, that prediction has certainly proved accurate.

The revised sixth edition of Wheelock's Latin has all the features that have made it the best-selling single-volume beginning Latin textbook, many of them improved and expanded:

- 40 chapters with grammatical explanations and readings based on ancient Roman authors
- Self-tutorial exercises with an answer key for independent study
- A newly enlarged English-Latin/Latin-English vocabulary
- A rich selection of original Latin readings—unlike other textbooks, which contain primarily made-up Latin texts
- Etymological aids

Also included are maps of the Mediterranean, Italy, and the Aegean area, as well as numerous photographs illustrating aspects of classical culture, mythology, and historical and literary figures presented in the chapter readings.

Praise for the New Edition

"Generations of students have learned Latin successfully from Wheelock's venerable text. LaFleur preserves the best features of the original book, while adapting it to meet twenty-first-century demands."

—PROFESSOR ANNE H. GROTON, St. Olaf College

"The new edition makes a world of difference."

—PROFESSOR ROBERT A. KASTER, Princeton University

"For those long familiar with [Wheelock's Latin], the new edition shows the continuing vitality of a venerable pedagogical classic."

—PROFESSOR WILLIAM HYLAND, St. Norbert College